

**A PRACTICAL GUIDE
TO
ENGLISH LINKERS**

© Peter Matejov
2014

PREFACE

Have you ever wondered why your spoken and written interaction lags behind other speakers when obviously you have studied all the grammar and vocabulary necessary to make you a fluent English speaker? You might even have noticed that your friends and acquaintances pick all those juicy words and phrases that make their speech and writing quite unique, and thus manage to get their messages across much more easily and with a lot more emphasis than you do. You have probably noticed other speakers and writers use a wide range of linkers which give their messages the special touch you feel in their words, yet fail to convey yourself.

So why is that you are still feeling restricted to using *and*, *or*, *but* and *because* as the sole linking devices when there are so many more you could be using instead? Why stop at the gate of knowledge and look back at the small garden you have just walked through when you are positive there is a huge meadow just waiting for you to make the first step and explore a realm of limitless possibilities?

For one thing, you have probably never been taught there is anything beyond those four handy words that even a beginner student can master in less than a few hours of mediocre practice without actually breaking a sweat.

For another thing, most teachers will pamper their students and convince them that there are far more important aspects of a language to study than some linkers which you can do without anyway since you already know the four basic ones from your L1. Simply use whatever you learnt and picked up in your native language classes and you will do just fine in English as well. Voila!

Right, been there, done that. By now, you have probably realised the world is slightly bigger and you may have a hard time impressing anybody just by recycling the same—simple—words time and time again. If that is the case, then you have just found a guidebook that will help you take the plunge and make the first step to actually exploring the realm of limitless possibilities—as far as conjunctions are concerned, anyway.

The Author

CONTENTS

PREFACE	2
CONTENTS	3
1 COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	6
1.1 And	7
1.2 But	11
1.3 Or	14
1.4 Nor	18
1.5 Yet	21
1.6 So	24
1.7 For	27
1.8 Grammar Comprehension	30
2 CORRELATIVE COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	34
2.1 Either ... or	35
2.2 Both ... and	37
2.3 Neither ... nor	40
2.4 Not only ... but also	43
2.5 Grammar Comprehension	46
3 SINGLE-WORD SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	50
3.1 After	51
3.2 Although	53
3.3 As	56
3.4 Because	58
3.5 Before	61
3.6 Directly	64
3.7 For	66
3.8 If	68
3.9 Immediately	72
3.10 Lest	75
3.11 Like	77
3.12 Once	80
3.13 Since	83
3.14 That	85
3.15 Though	87
3.16 Till	89
3.17 Unless	91

3.18 Until	94
3.19 When	96
3.20 Whenever	100
3.21 Where	102
3.22 Whereas	105
3.23 Whereupon	107
3.24 Wherever	110
3.25 While	112
3.26 Whilst	115
4 MULTI-WORD SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	119
4.1 As if	120
4.2 Assuming that	122
4.3 As though	125
4.4 As far as	127
4.5 As long as	130
4.6 As soon as	132
4.7 But that	135
4.8 Considering that	136
4.9 Except that	139
4.10 Excepting that	142
4.11 For all that	142
4.12 Forasmuch as	144
4.13 Given that	144
4.14 Granted that	147
4.15 Inasmuch as	149
4.16 Insofar as	151
4.17 Insomuch as	153
4.18 In case	155
4.19 In that	158
4.20 In order that	160
4.21 Insofar that	163
4.22 In the event that	164
4.23 Now that	166
4.24 Provided that	169
4.25 Save that	171
4.26 Seeing that	174
4.27 So that	177

4.28 Such that	179
4.29 Supposing that	181
5 CORRELATIVE SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	185
5.1 As ... so	185
5.2 As ... as	187
5.3 So ... as	190
5.4 Such ... as	192
5.5 So ... that	194
5.6 Such ... that	196
5.7 Less ... than	199
5.8 More ... than	201
5.9 No sooner than	203
5.10 Barely ... when	206
5.11 The ... the	209
5.12 Whether ... or	211
6 MARGINAL SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	215
6.1 Even if	215
6.2 Every time that	217
6.3 If only	219
6.4 The minute that	222
6.5 The moment that	225
6.6 The instant that	228
6.7 The second that	231
KEY	235
BIBLIOGRAPHY	309

1 COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

A **conjunction** (abbreviations: *conj*, *cnj*) is a part of speech as well as a unit of grammar which joins words, phrases, clauses, and sentences. Consequently, a **coordinating conjunction**—a **coordinator** for short—is an element of grammar cutting across the layers of morphology and syntax, and thus linking words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of the same syntactic level, for example independent clauses.

To jog your memory, think about the fun phrase ‘fan boys’ and the seven English coordinators, namely *for-and-nor-but-or-yet-so*, will never slip your mind.

Clearly, different coordinators have different morphological and syntactic make-up, and thus we can observe differences between coordinators themselves. As a rule, most grammarians label *and* and *or* as central coordinators while *but* is commonly considered to stand on the periphery of the class and is, in fact, only loosely related to *and* and *or* as it displays distinctly different linguistic properties.

As for the syntactic properties of central coordinators, many of which also apply to other coordinating conjunctions, there are five notable features which apply to *and*, *or* and, to some extent, to *but* as well.

1 Position in a Sentence

Central coordinating conjunctions, just like most coordinators and subordinators, tend to come in the initial position in the second clause. As the sequence of both clauses is fixed by both grammar rules and logics, the coordinated clause cannot be shifted in front of the other clause without producing nonsensical sentences.

- *The DJ is playing great music, **and** the club guests are dancing wildly.*
- *The analyst has already given me the latest figures, **but** I don't seem to remember where I put them.*

2 Mutual Exclusivity

Central coordinators are mutually exclusive and do not allow any other conjunctions to precede them either.

3 Connecting Various Morphological Units

Central coordinators can join elements of morphological structure smaller than a clause. In fact, they may connect words and phrases as well as clauses.

- *The two guys over there are Phillip **and** Matthew.*
- *I'd like to have some hot coffee **or** some lukewarm tea.*
- *I'm pretty sure I've met you before, **but** I don't remember meeting your brother.*

4 Linking both Independent and Dependent Clauses

Central coordinators can join both independent, ie main, clauses and subordinate clauses alike.

- *His name's John **and** he works for a software manufacturer.*
- *He works for a software manufacturer, **and because** he's so good at his work, he's soon to be promoted.*

5 Simple and Multiple Coordination

The coordinating conjunctions *and* and *or* can join either two clauses into a simple coordination or a number of clauses into a multiple coordination. The conjunction *but* cannot produce a connection of more than two clauses at the most, though.

- *Right, so there may be a loose or broken cable, the router may be malfunctioning, **or** there is some sort of issue with the computer that does not make it possible for you to establish a fully functioning Internet connection.*

1.1 And

The coordinating conjunction **and** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction can **join** several syntactic elements, namely **words, phrases, and clauses**.
 - *David **and** Sarah have known each other for over twenty years now.*
*Dávid **a** Sára sa poznajú už vyše dvadsať rokov.*
 - *The man with the black hat **and** the woman with the red scarf seem to know each other.*
*Zdá sa, že ten muž s čiernym klobúkom **a** tá žena s červenou šatkou sa poznajú.*
 - *The friends kissed **and** waved goodbye to each other.*
*Priatel'ia sa pobožkali **a** zakývali si na rozlúčku.*
- 2 The conjunction can **join** independent clauses as well as **sentences**.
 - *The students are writing an exam **and** the teacher is reading a magazine.*
*Študenti píšu test **a** učiteľ si číta časopis.*
 - *The chef was cooking a soup **and** the waiter was serving the guests.*
*Kuchár varil polievku **a** čašník obsluhoval hostí.*
 - *John's wife always wears smart clothes in public **and** pays a lot of attention to her looks.*
*Jankova manželka je na verejnosti vždy elegantne oblečená **a** venuje veľkú pozornosť svojmu vzhľadu.*

Language Note 1:

Although most grammar guides suggest that **and** should not be used to start a sentence, this rule is not true and is in fact a grammar myth. There are, in fact, quite a few instances when the conjunction can readily start a sentence.

- *My father works in the local factory. **And** so do I.*
*Môj otec pracuje v miestnej továrni. **A** ja tiež.*
- *The government is trying to decrease the national debt. **And** what about economic growth?*
*Vláda sa usiluje o zníženie štátneho deficitu. **A** čo bude s ekonomickým rastom?*
- *A: My name is Clara. – B: **And** I'm Donald.*
*A: Volám sa Klára. – B: **A** ja som Donald.*

Language Note 2:

Make sure to avoid the 'comma splice' by not using **and** in situations when such a use would sound improper or incorrect even. A comma splice is a type of run-on sentence in which a comma is used to splice together two complete clauses or sentences when that isn't the function of a comma.

- *I hear the computer giant is going to buy the local software producer, we should not pass up the opportunity and buy the shares of the company right now. (example of coma splice)*
*I hear the computer giant is going to buy the local software producer **and (thus)** we should not pass up the opportunity and buy the shares of the company right now.*
*Dopočul som sa, že počítačový gigant sa chystá kúpiť miestneho softvérového producenta, **a preto** by sme si nemali nechať túto príležitosť a okamžite by sme si mali kúpiť akcie tejto spoločnosti.*
- *The brilliant private detective has once again managed to solve a most mysterious crime, the police are still wondering what had actually happened. (example of coma splice)*
*The brilliant private detective has once again managed to solve a most mysterious crime **and** the police are still wondering what had actually happened.*
*Geniálnemu súkromnému detektívi sa opäť raz podarilo vyriešiť nesmierne tajomný zločin **a** polícia sa stále zamýšľa nadtým, čo sa vlastne stalo.*

For further information about the coma splice, feel free to consult a reliable grammar book.

Exercise 1: Insert the conjunction *and* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Mr Mrs Davidson got married in 2013. 2 The cleaning lady is doing the third fourth floor this week.
3 All the guests spent the whole night dancing drinking. 4 My girlfriend makes some sandwiches I get
the drinks. 5 The up-and-coming athlete finished his muscle training went to have a shower. 6 Can you
try find out whether one Mr Balmer has already signed up, Calvin? 7 Jo will go see if there are still
some free seats at the front. 8 Come in have a beer, Dave. 9 Most young children cry wolf all the time
then it's quite hard to believe them even when they're telling the truth. 10 The siege seems to be
getting more more tighter. 11 The submarine fleet has been in operation for decades decades now. 12
How much is sixty-eight forty-two? 13 The brand new tablet will cost you seven hundred fifty-six
bucks. 14 So far, the bikers are entering the third part of the contest there's only five of them left. 15 I
suppose Mike is trying trying but he doesn't seem to be able to get the grasp of chemistry at all.

Exercise 2: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *and* and the words from the sentences given.
Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Chris loves ice-cream. Moreover, he's really fond of chocolate.

Chris _____.

2 There are some beautiful paintings on display here. Why not have a look at the gallery too?

There are _____.

3 The teachers keep talking, but nobody's listening to them, are they?

The teachers _____?

4 What do you get when you add twenty to thirty-six?

What is the sum _____?

5 The fighter is getting very tired by the minute!

The fighter _____!

6 The speaker finished his speech. Then, the audience clapped their hands. Afterwards, he left.

The speaker _____.

7 Come to see us on Saturday night, Clara.

Come _____.

8 You carry the heavy bags. The secretary will take the basket over there.

You _____.

9 The PA is answering the phone while her colleague is taking notes for the COO.

The PA _____.

10 Dr Galwald will operate on the patient. He will be assisted by Dr Simmons and Dr Rotlage.

Dr Galwald will operate _____.

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The receptionist speaks five languages and she can also type really fast. **moreover**

The receptionist speaks five languages; _____ .

2 The dentist pulled out my left canine tooth and one of the teeth at the back. **as well as**

The dentist pulled out _____ .

3 The child is getting extremely stubborn. **and**

The child is getting more _____ .

4 Just come and see for yourself what's going on around here. **to**

Just come _____ .

5 Daria does the washing-up while her boyfriend cleans up the kitchen. **and**

Daria does the washing-up _____ .

6 The gardener is watering the flowers and his apprentice mows the garden. **whilst**

The gardener _____ .

7 The governor lied to the judge and now the judge does not believe a single word the governor says.

The governor lied to the judge and _____ **consequently** .

8 I'll try and look up the strange word in a good dictionary. **to**

I'll try _____ .

9 Both the people in the UK and the people in the US speak English. **as well as**

The people _____ .

10 Sixty and forty makes a hundred. **plus**

Sixty _____ .

Exercise 4: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Pyramída v Gíze a Taj Mahal v Indii sú dva divy antického sveta, ktoré si chcem rozhodne pozrieť. 2 Stavať domy v blízkosti priehrad a riek je tá najväčšia hlúposť, akú som kedy počul. 3 Richard sa stará o marketing a Martin o účtovníctvo. 4 Policajti sa budú snažiť vypátrať ukradnuté šperky čo najskôr. 5 Novovymenovaný generálny riaditeľ spoločnosti odišiel na obed a jeho kolegovia pracovali ďalej. 6 Ja upravím obývačku a moja sestra kuchyňu. 7 Príď nás navštíviť v Madride. 8 Desať a desať je dvadsať. 9 Za nové náramkové hodinky som zaplatil tisícpäťstodvadsaťosem eur. 10 Po ničivom tajfúne trvalo ľuďom roky rokúce, kým opravili svoje domy a byty. 11 Projektový manažér nepočítal s tak vysokými nákladmi a teraz mu chýba na dokončenie projektu takmer šesťtisícosemstodvadsať eur. 12 Pracujeme a pracujeme, ale peňazí máme stále málo. 13 Na kúpu novej haly bude treba peňazí a peňazí. 14 Člen predstavenstva sa postavil a odišiel z rokovacej sály. 15 Pestúnka deťom varila, čítala rozprávky a dokonca ich stráži aj v noci, keď sa rodičia zabávali na oslavách.

1.2 But

The coordinating conjunction **but** is used in the following ways:

1 The conjunction can **join** several syntactic elements, namely **words, phrases, and clauses**.

- *The soldier is strong **but** not strong enough.*
*Vojak je silný, **ale** nie dostatočne.*
- *I'm Thomas **but** call me Tom.*
*Volám sa Tomáš, **ale** môžete ma volať Tom.*
- *My grandfather is almost 90 years old **but** he still has a very active lifestyle.*
*Môj dedko má už takmer 90 rokov, **ale** stále žije aktívnym životným štýlom.*

Language Note:

Although a lot of prescriptive grammar guides suggest that a grammatically correct English sentence should not start with conjunctions, for example *but*, *and*, *or*, this is not true. You may well consider this a linguistic myth that still survives in modern English, though it is perfectly unreasonable. In fact, sometimes it may be more prudent to start a sentence with **but** than **however**.

- *Why don't you go out and have some fun with your friends? **But** don't say anything to your mother when she's back home.*
*Chod' von so svojimi priateľmi a dobre sa zabavte. **Ale** keď sa mama vráti domov, tak jej nič nehovor.*
- *The product manager has all the plans and data you are asking about. **But** what do you need it all the information for?*
*Produktový manažér má všetky plány a údaje, na ktoré sa pýtate. **Ale** načo sú Vám všetky tieto informácie?*

2 The conjunction expresses **contrasts** by stating that the second idea or statement is different from the first or that the second point mentioned does not match the first fully.

- *I'm crazy **but** not insane.*
*Som bláznivý, **ale** nie šialený.*
- *Mr Satan is not the strongest fighter in the universe **but** definitely one of the strongest.*
*Pán Satan nie je najsilnejším zápasníkom na svete, **ale** rozhodne je jedným z najsilnejších.*
- *The owner is not going to sell the ship **but** he still wants to make money from it somehow.*
*Majiteľ svoju loď nepredá, **ale** napriek tomu z nej chce nejakým spôsobom vytĺcť peniaze.*

Language Note:

This conjunction often carries the connotation of surprise, astonishment or amazement which is conveyed by the second idea or statement.

3 The conjunction is used in replies to rejections and refusals to express **surprise, astonishment, dissatisfaction, annoyance, disappointment**, etc.

- *A: I'm afraid I won't be here for your big match on Saturday, Lucas.*
*B: **But** you promised to come, Dad.*
A: Lukáš, je mi to ľúto, ale na tvoj sobotňajší zápas nebudem, žiaľ, môcť prísť.
*B: Oci, **ale** ty si mi to sľúbil!*
- *A: In short, I have made up my mind and I'm going to resign this very day.*
*B: **But** why, Charles? You love the job more than anything else in the world.*
A: V krátkosti, rozhodol som sa dať výpovedať a to ešte dnes.
*B: **Ale** prečo, Karol? Ved' svoju prácu miluješ viac, než čokoľvek na svete.*

4 The conjunction often follows a negative and introduces a statement which makes clear **what is in fact true, real or correct**.

- *I'm not Martin **but** David.*
*Ja nie som Martin, **ale** Dávid.*
 - *The incompetent CEO's retirement was not considered a cause for concern, **but** the start of a new, a brighter era for the whole company.*
*Keď odišiel nekompetentný generálny riaditeľ do dôchodku, nikto si nerobil starosti, **ale** všetci túto skutočnosť vnímali ako začiatok novej, lepšej éry pre celú spoločnosť.*
- 5 The conjunction often follows certain partitive indefinite pronouns, for example, *nothing, everyone, anything, no one*, etc, in which case it introduces **exceptions** to a rule or general fact.
- *The reporter didn't want to talk to anyone **but** the chief inspector.*
*Reportér nechcel hovoriť s nikým iným, **len** s vrchným inšpektorom.*
 - *The new postman is nothing **but** trouble.*
*Ten nový poštár nám robí **len** samé problémy.*
- 6 The conjunction is used in certain set expressions to express **polite queries and requests**.
- *I'm sorry **but** I seem to have left the marketing leaflet on my desk.*
*Ospravedlňujem sa, **ale** zrejme som zabudol marketingový leták na svojom stole.*
 - *Excuse me **but** do you happen to know where the CFO is at the moment?*
Prepáčte, viete mi povedať, kde by som mohol momentálne nájsť finančného riaditeľa?
- 7 The conjunction expresses the meaning of *but* and *only*. This use is especially common in a rather formal style but can also be found in common conversations, in particular when the speaker wants to put emphasis on the idea to follow.
- *Please, don't kill me! I'm **but** a humble servant of the great Lord Gelowmash.*
*Prosím, nezabíjajte ma! Ja som **len** pokorný služobník veľkého pána Gelowmasha.*
 - *There are **but** few who can excel at sharpshooting just like Mr Kingsley.*
*Nájde sa **len** málo ľudí, ktorí v presnej streľbe vynikajú tak ako pán Kingsley.*

Exercise 5: Insert the conjunction *but* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 You have improved your speaking skills significantly, Martin, there's still loads of things you need to learn before you can sit for your oral CAE exam. 2 Honestly, I've got no idea what's going to happen, we are to find out soon enough. 3 This is not Mr Charleston Mr Davies. 4 Excuse me where's the men's room? 5 It was a difficult procedure I don't want to bother you with all the details. 6 The match was good, not that good. 7 I can understand your disappointment. Armed assault? 8 Call me old-fashioned, I still like to read books in the evenings. 9 The old geezer does nothing grumble all day long. 10 I'm sorry, Dr Clark, would you mind pointing me to the right direction? 11 There is one man who can work under such difficult conditions. 12 The management are going to sell the western division. why? 13 I haven't met anyone Ms Thomson yet. 14 The money is going to be transferred to your account on Monday, we can discuss the details later. 15 Jo is sitting somewhere around here, I don't seem to remember where exactly.

Exercise 6: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *but* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 It's almost time to get the show on the road and I can't see the special guest.

It's _____ .

2 The actors were rehearsing for tonight's performance; however, the main actress seemed sick.

The actors _____ .

3 There are just a few things I need to share with your brother in private.

There are _____ .

4 There's nothing you can't do when you set your mind on it; apart from becoming the US president.

There's nothing _____ .

5 Excuse me, how do I get to the train station?

Excuse me _____ ?

6 The mystical creature was small. Still, it was extremely powerful.

The mystical creature _____ .

7 I'm afraid that all the exits were locked, and thus the guests had no chance of escaping the fire.

I'm sorry _____ .

8 Scientists are trying to find a simple, yet effective way of recycling plastic bottles.

Scientists are trying to find _____ .

9 The old warehouse is going to be pulled down next month. Why on earth should they be doing it?

The old warehouse _____ ?

10 We can only guess what the mysterious poet was trying to say here.

We can _____ .

Exercise 7: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The holidaymakers have spent a whole week in this tropical paradise, but they still have four days left. **however**

The holidaymakers _____ .

2 The biggest mistakes are not made in haste, but in ignorance. **not**

It is in _____ .

3 The researchers need but a little more time to complete their project. **just**

The researchers _____ .

4 The up-and-coming football star is real good, but not that good. **yet**

The up-and-coming football star _____ .

5 This is but a mere estimate, yet I believe the real figures will not be much different. **only**

This is _____ .

6 There's no alternative but hitting the books and cramming and cramming. **just**

There's no _____ .

- 7 It will be a difficult negotiation. But, I don't want to discourage you, Dave. **nonetheless**
It will be _____.
- 8 The only thing that child does is play and play. **nothing**
The child _____.
- 9 The musician is highly gifted, but so lazy to practise. **yet**
The musician _____.
- 10 The beggar needs but a few cents to get himself something warm for dinner. **no more than**
The beggar _____.
- 11 The famous surgeon seems happy but sad at the same time. **yet**
The famous surgeon _____.

Exercise 8: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Tieto údaje sa zdajú byť správne, ale aj napriek tomu ich treba skontrolovať. 2 Nájde sa len niekoľko hráčov, ktorí majú taký veľký potenciál ako Marek. 3 Náš nový marketingový manažér je usilovný, no nie veľmi nápaditý. 4 Ústup nepriateľských vojsk nebol úspechom jednotlivcov, ale celej vlády. 5 Byt je nádherný a priestranný, ale nájomné je pre nás príliš vysoké. 6 Prepáčte, ale kde to vlastne sme? 7 Mrzí ma to, ale budúci mesiac budem v Rusku. 8 Pilot sa rozhodol znížiť rýchlosť. Ale prečo? 9 Novinári vstúpili do miestnosti, ale nikto ich tam nečakal. 10 V zasadačke nie je nikto, len prezident a jeho poradca. 11 Ide o jednoduchý, ale predsa len riskantný zákrok. 12 Ale ty si mi sľúbil, že zajtra prídeš. 13 Tá mladá žena, ktorá sa práve rozpráva s veľvyslancom nie je herečka, ale maliarka. 14 Vedci najskôr tvrdili, že im potrvá minimálne dva roky, kým vyvinú nové liečivo, ale podarilo sa im to do roka. 15 V Keni zaznamenali len pár prípadov hemoragickej horúčky za posledných päť mesiacov.

1.3 Or

The coordinating conjunction **or** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction **connects different possibilities, choices or alternatives**. It can join several syntactic elements, namely words, phrases, and clauses.
 - Which is your favourite sitcom? Is it Dharma and Greg **or** Step by Step?*
*Ktorú situačnú komédiu máš najradšej? Je to Dharma a Greg **alebo** Krok za krokom?*
 - Well, the fighters need to deal with the enemy now **or** they will suffer the ultimate defeat.*
*Nuž, bojovníci si musia s nepriateľom poradiť teraz, **lebo** ináč utrpia konečnú porážku.*
 - The baker is in the kitchen at the back **or** having lunch at the local restaurant.*
*Pekár je vzadu v kuchyni, **alebo** na obed v miestnej reštaurácii.*
- The conjunction can **extend a negative** from the first statement to the second, and thus include the subject of the second statement in the scope of negation.
 - The GP has never learnt to listen to his patients **or** actually care about their feelings.*
*Lekár sa nikdy nenaučil počúvať svojich pacientov, **či** vlastne sa zaujímať o ich pocity.*
 - The hermit has had nothing to eat **or** drink for days now.*
*Pustovník nič nejedol a **ani** nepil už celé dni.*

- 3 The conjunction can express **vague quantity** by joining two numbers of similar value, and thus indicate that the speaker/writer does not know the exact number.
- *There were like seven **or** eight businessmen but only one businesswoman at the trade show.*
*Na obchodnej výstave bolo sedem **či** osem obchodníkov, ale len jedna obchodníčka.*
 - *You'll need to fill up every five **or** six miles.*
*Natankovať budeš musieť každých päť **či** šesť míľ.*
- 4 The conjunction can be used with *else* in the phrase *or else* to announce the **consequences of one's actions** if they do not stop or do not comply with what has just been said.
- *The government need to find a solution to the problem of rising unemployment fast, **or else** there won't be much to save in a couple of years.*
*Vláda musí nájsť riešenie neustále narastajúcej nezamestnanosti a to rýchlo, **lebo inak** o pár rokov už nebude veľmi čo zachraňovať.*
 - *Put the gun down and put your hands above your head, **or else**.*
*Položte zbraň na zem a ruky si dajte nad hlavu, **inak** ...*
- 5 The conjunction implies that what the speaker is saying must be true, real, correct or genuine as the situation would be very much different if it wasn't.
- *The plumber obviously can't find the broken pipe, **or** he would be finished by now.*
*Inštalatér zrejme nevie nájsť prasknuté potrubie, **inak** by už bol dávno hotový.*
 - *The speaker doesn't seem to have prepared a speech, **or** she wouldn't be so nervous.*
*Zdá sa, že rečníčka si nepripravila žiaden prejav, **lebo inak** by nebola taka nervózna.*

Language Note:

Optionally, the conjunction may be followed by *else* to emphasise the idea of a difference that does not seem possible or realistic.

- *The president won't resign from his position, **or else** he would have said so on TV already.*
*Prezident z funkcie neodstúpi, **inak** by to bol už oznámil v televízii.*
- *The chimney sweeper can't have lost his footing on the tall skyscraper, **or else** he would have fallen down.*
*Kominár iste nestratil pevnú pôdu pod nohami na tom vysokom mrakodrape, **lebo inak** by už bol spadol.*

- 6 The conjunction provides additional information to something that has already been talked about. Likewise, it may correct a statement slightly.

- *The children can't have gone far; **or** they would have taken their warm coats.*
*Deti nemohli ísť ďaleko, **lebo inak** by si boli vzali teplé kabátiky.*
- *Mr Henry Brenston, the chief executive officer, **or** CEO, of our company is going to make a public appearance on Monday evening.*
*Pán Henry Brenston, generálny riaditeľ, **inak povedané** CEO našej spoločnosti, vystúpi na verejnosti v pondelok večer.*

Language Note:

Under certain circumstances, the conjunction may be followed by *rather* to make the correction or addition more emphatic.

- *It's now up to the management, **or rather** the CEO, to figure out what to do next.*
*Teraz je už na vedení firmy, **či skôr** na generálnom riaditeľovi, aby zistil, ako budeme ďalej pokračovať.*
- *You should send your complaint to the Complaints Department, **or rather** Mr Blakie himself.*
*Tú sťažnosť by si mala poslať na oddelenie sťažností, **či ešte lepšie** priamo pánovi Blakiemu.*

Exercise 9: Insert the conjunction *or* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 We need a few new workers better equipment at least. 2 Do you take three four scoops? 3 The manager is at the office in the sauna. 4 Would he like to learn Japanese Swedish? 5 The scientist had nothing but bad luck this year, do you think otherwise? 6 The professor had nothing to eat drink the whole morning. 7 Cars need to be serviced checked at least every six seven thousand kilometres. 8 The fighter ought to face the challenger at once, else she might lose her reputation for good. 9 The chief financial officer, CFO, is responsible for the whole financial structure of a firm. 10 The student obviously doesn't have a single clue what he's talking about, he wouldn't have said such a silly thing. 11 The spies must have got cut off, they would have contacted us already. 12 The butcher needs some help in the shop, he will get sick from all the work. 13 This seems to be a very interesting hypothesis, rather a very interesting point. 14 The travellers need to hit the road whether it rains snows. 15 The inspector is coming tomorrow the day after tomorrow.

Exercise 10: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *or* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The walls need to be erected by the end of the week, otherwise we might all lose our jobs.

The _____.

2 A cashpoint, aka ATM, is a machine which you can use to withdraw money from your bank account.

A cashpoint _____.

3 I'll make you a copy of the document. This may take a minute, perhaps two minutes.

I'll make you _____.

4 Jack hasn't done the dishes. Neither has he done the washing-up.

Jack hasn't done the dishes _____.

5 Mike doesn't understand the guy's Chinese. If he did, he'd have said something already.

Mike _____.

6 The clown is boring. Perhaps he's even pitiful.

The clown _____.

7 My name's Benjamin, but friends call me Ben.

My name's Benjamin _____.

8 Don't provoke me, Lucy. If you do, I will pay you back.

Don't provoke me, Lucy, _____.

9 If you don't speak up, we can't hear you.

Speak up _____.

10 The council need to address the social issue right away before it's too late.

The council need _____.

Exercise 11: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The mechanic will lose his job if he doesn't work faster than this. **or**

The mechanic will have _____.

2 You take me with you or I will tell mom. **otherwise**

You take me with _____.

3 The students should be out in about a minute or two. **no time**

It will be _____.

4 There are several protectors, or guardians, who will keep an eye on the villages. **aka**

There are _____.

5 If you don't start pulling your weight now, I will be really mad. **or else**

You don't start _____.

6 You give up now, or the wrestler will beat the crap out of you. **otherwise**

You give up now. _____.

7 Come closer. I can't tell you the secret. **or**

Come closer _____.

8 If you don't stay away from my little sister, I will hurt you. **or**

Stay away _____.

9 If we don't want the dam to break, we must do something right now. **or**

Either _____.

10 The tourist guide is at the restaurant. Alternatively, he might be with his group already. **or**

The tourist guide _____.

Exercise 12: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Dám si jablko alebo broskyňu. 2 A toto má byť problém či riešenie? 3 Systémový analytik vybavuje telefonáty alebo školí. 4 Podeliš sa so mnou, alebo mám ísť za mamou? 5 Firma nemala v poslednom čase nič len samú smolu. 6 Náš angličtinár nám nikdy nepomohol a ani neporadil. 7 Každý deň by ste mali vypiť dva či tri litre tekutín. 8 Teroristi sa musia okamžite vzdať, lebo inak ich postrieliajú. 9 Niečo sa muselo po ceste stať, inak by už dávno boli prišli. 10 Ak zamestnanci nebudú usilovne pracovať, nedostanú vianočné prémie. 11 Miera prekliknutí, alebo CTR, je pre nás dôležitým ukazovateľom. 12 Deti sú na ceste zo školy alebo práve prišli domov. 13 Pomôžete nám, alebo sa budete len rozprávať? 14 Bola včera nočná obloha jasná alebo zamračená? 15 Výhru by sme mali investovať alebo rozdeliť medzi rodinu a blízkych priateľov.

1.4 Nor

The coordinating conjunction **nor** is used in the following ways:

1 The conjunction usually follows a negative or a semi-negative element, and **thus introduces an additional negative**.

- *The contract wasn't signed yesterday, it was not signed today, **nor** will it be signed tomorrow.*
*Zmluvu nepodpisali včera, nepodpisali ju dnes **a** nepodpišu ju **ani** zajtra.*
- *The CAO is not responsible for handling these issues, **nor** is he keen on doing our work.*
*Vedúci administratívy nie je zodpovedný za riešenie týchto problémov **a** do našej práce sa mu **ani** veľmi nechce.*

Language Note 1:

This use of the conjunction *nor* has been on the decline for quite some time now. Even though the usage is perfectly correct and proper in all kinds of situations, it is mostly employed in rather formal registers, especially in formal writing.

In the vast majority of cases, *nor* is used in the correlative expression *neither ... nor* (see 2.3 Neither ... nor).

Language Note 2:

Nor is the negative counterpart of *and + not*, as in:

- *Mr Franklin doesn't have a tablet computer yet. – **Nor** do I.*
*Mr Franklin doesn't have a tablet computer yet. – **And** I don't either.*
*Pán Franklin ešte nemá tablet. – **Ani** ja.*
- *The old man couldn't have taken care of the whole ranch by himself. – **Nor** could his brother.*
*The old man couldn't have taken care of the whole ranch by himself. – **And** his brother couldn't either.*
*Ten starec sa nemohol postarať o celý ranč úplne sám. A **ani** jeho brat.*

Language Note 3:

All negative and semi-negative elements are invariably followed by subject-operator inversions, i.e. the auxiliary verb precedes the subject of the clause.

Language Note 4:

Nor can follow *and* in a coordination. In these cases, a comma is almost always put before *and* to separate the two clauses joined together by means of *and nor*. Essentially, this means that *nor* is not and cannot be regarded as a central coordinator (see 1 Coordinating Conjunctions, Point 2).

- *The cook doesn't drive at night, **and nor** does the waitress.*
*Kuchár **a ani** čašníčka nešoférujú v noci.*
- *The patient has no more time to lose, **and nor** does the surgeon.*
*Pacient už nemá viac času nazvyš **a** rovnako **ani** chirurg.*

2 The conjunction is often used **by a second speaker** to state that they or a third party do not possess a certain skill or ability either. In this way, the second speaker admits to not having something or not being able to do something just like the first speaker who has stated so before.

- *A: Unfortunately, I can't speak Chinese at all. – B: **Nor** can I.*
*A: Žiaľ, po čínsky vôbec neviem. – B: **Ani** ja.*
- *A: The banker has never done business with Asian companies. – B: **Nor** have we.*
*A: Bankár nikdy neobchodoval s ázijskými firmami. – B: **Ani** my.*

3 The conjunction may be used without a preceding negative or semi-negative element to emphasise the positive idea expressed in the preceding clause by introducing a negative which is negated in

the *nor*-clause.

- *The new line of tablet computers is really overwhelming as far as technological progress is concerned, **nor** has the company ever been known for producing the same line of products for a long time.*
*Nový rad tabletov je skutočne ohromujúci čo sa týka technologického pokroku a **ani** firma nie je známa tým, že by dlhodobo vyrábala rovnaký sortiment výrobkov.*
- *You can always rely on my younger brother, **nor** has he ever turned anyone down before.*
*Na môjho mladšieho brata je vždy spoľah, **ved' koniec koncov** doposiaľ nikdy nikoho neodmietol.*

Language Note:

This usage is rather marginal and virtually non-existent in modern English.

Exercise 13: Insert the conjunction *nor* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 My granddaughter seldom speaks about her father, does she often mention her brother. 2 Matt's babysitter doesn't like the job much, has she got a good relationship with the children. 3 The pup has little to eat in the mornings, does it seem to want much. 4 The creditor did not get her money, did he ask for it. 5 The debtor didn't pay Mr Kingsley back last week, yesterday. 6 Rarely do the pirates venture out into these seas, do they often look for ships around here. 7 The exchange student from Africa could not understand what we said, could she speak a word English. 8 Most fishermen did not sail out yesterday, will they do so today. 9 Those lazy students of mine hardly ever do their homework, do they prepare their presentations for culture classes. 10 The PM does not want to resign from office, is there a reason for him to do so. 11 I have no idea what she wants us to do. – Do I. 12 Greg doesn't pull his weight in the office at all. – Does the new CAO. 13 Mr Luke has no dogs cats. 14 The clergyman seldom preaches all alone, does he take care of the church by himself. 15 When we started the seminar, we didn't have a break for over two hours, did we get any time off to catch our breath.

Exercise 14: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *nor* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 There are no pictures on the website. There are no audio files either.

There are no pictures _____.

2 The gullible risk manager did not ask for any collateral. She did not check the applicant's credentials either.

The gullible risk manager did not _____.

3 Working long hours does not guarantee you a high salary. You may not get paid much even if you have two or three jobs.

Working long hours does not _____.

4 Mr Callahan does not deliver FOB anymore. – Well, we don't either.

Mr Callahan does not deliver FOB _____.

5 The Internet provider barely makes enough money to keep the company in the black. He doesn't offer high quality customer care either.

The Internet provider barely makes enough money _____.

6 The marketing manager's suggestion is not original and it doesn't seem to be innovative either.

The marketing manager's suggestion is not _____.

7 The general shouldn't wait. He shouldn't act on his own either.

The general shouldn't wait _____.

8 The hairdresser hardly ever talks to his customers. He doesn't switch on the radio either.

The hairdresser hardly ever talks _____.

9 The young police officer is not crooked. He doesn't take his work lightly either.

The young police officer is not _____.

10 The prince has no previous experience running a country. He also doesn't know anything about politics or economics.

The prince has no _____.

Exercise 15: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The librarian can barely see with her glasses, nor can she hear very well anymore. **either**

The librarian can _____.

2 A baboon can't fly. – Well, neither can a penguin. **nor**

A baboon can't fly. _____.

3 I've never met the musician before. Nor am I keen on getting to know him now. **neither**

I've never met the musician before. _____.

4 Stealing from your next of kin won't pay off. I don't think you should be stealing from your boss or colleagues either. **nor**

Stealing from your next of kin _____.

5 The janitor hasn't come to see the broken window yet. Nor has he taken a look at the pipes. **neither**

The janitor hasn't come to see the broken window yet _____.

6 The left-wing parties won't support your bill. – Nor will the PM. **either**

The left-wing parties won't _____.

7 The PA can't read the executive's handwriting, nor can she type properly. **neither**

The PA can't read _____.

8 The butcher doesn't sell stuff at high prices. Neither does the greengrocer. **either**

The butcher doesn't sell _____.

9 Your daughter is not about to pass her final exams. She's not into studying either. **neither**

Your daughter is not about _____.

10 Dave doesn't want to put the slides together. Neither do I. **nor**

Dave doesn't want _____.

Exercise 16: Respond to the following statements using the correct constructions including the key word *nor* and the words given in brackets.

- 1 The mermaid can't live without water. (Sam)
- 2 The students don't seem to know what to do now. (the teacher)
- 3 Mr and Mrs Franklin aren't going away on holiday to Turkey. (their best friends)
- 4 The garage isn't very modern. (the house)
- 5 The skiing instructor shouldn't overdo it on the first day. (her assistant)
- 6 Dharma wouldn't fly kites in a thunderstorm. (I)
- 7 The jacket doesn't seem to be very pricey. (the brown shirts)
- 8 The computer couldn't be fixed anymore. (the printer)
- 9 The construction workers haven't had lunch yet. (the foreman)
- 10 Master Brown didn't go to bed late last night. (his parents)
- 11 The chauffeur won't work nights. (the cleaning lady)
- 12 The windows haven't been cleaned for months now. (the staircase)
- 13 I shall not give her a hand next time. (I)
- 14 The supervisor isn't reading any reports now. (the quality manager)
- 15 The documents are not in the office anymore. (the plants)
- 16 The police officer wouldn't fire his gun. (the terrorist)
- 17 Tina's brother wasn't going to attend the class today. (I)

Exercise 17: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Požiarnici sa veľmi neponáhľali a ani na to nemali dôvod. 2 Moja manželka nevie lyžovať a ani sa to nechce naučiť. 3 Náš syn nikdy neobluboval počítačové hry a ani teraz, keď je už dospelý, ich nechce začať hrať. 4 Nápis nie je čitateľný a ani dôležitý. 5 Marek nevie plávať. Ani ja. 6 Študenti na našich hodinách zriedkavo používajú nožnice a ani to nechceme. 7 V žiadnom prípade ti nepomôžem a ani ti neporadím. 8 Pekár nezarába veľa peňazí. Ani my. 9 Ten nový počítač nie je veľmi rýchly a nemá ani veľkú pamäť. 10 Svedok lupiča len sotva zazrel a ani ho nevie popísať. 11 Nepočuli sme, čo nám generálny riaditeľ povedal a ani nás to nezaujímalo. 12 Hostia sa nezabávali a ani jedlo nebolo veľmi chutné. 13 Vodku nepijem. – Ani ja. 14 Tlmočníčka nehovorí po finsky a ani po maďarsky. 15 Útočník sa nesnažil ukradnúť starej pani peňaženku a ani jej nechcel ublížiť.

1.5 Yet

The coordinating conjunction **yet** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **contrasts** and **exceptions** and adds a comment which seems surprising, astonishing or amazing even in the light of what has been said before.
 - *Let me demonstrate a simple **yet** effective technique of saving a person from choking. Dovoľte mi predviesť jednoduchú, **no** efektívnu techniku, pomocou ktorej môžete zachrániť človeka pred zadusením.*
 - *The philosophical study is written in casual words, **yet** it is quite difficult to understand. Filozofická štúdia je písaná bežnými slovami, **ale** aj tak je ju ťažké pochopiť.*

Language Note 1:

The meaning conveyed by the coordinating conjunction comes very close to the meanings of *however* and *but*, although *yet* often connotes a sense of distinctiveness which is rather uncharacteristic of both *however* and *but*.

Language Note 2:

Yet can follow *and* in a coordination. In these cases, a comma is almost always used before *and* to separate the two clauses joined together by means of *and yet*. Essentially, this means that *yet* is not and cannot be regarded as a central coordinator (see 1 Coordinating Conjunctions, Point 2).

- *The priest has never studied physics, and yet he's so well versed in all matters regarding this field of science that he's an equal of a learned physicist.*
Kňaz fyziku nikdy neštudoval, no napriek tomu sa vyzná vo všetkých záležitostiach týkajúcich sa tejto vednej oblasti tak dobre, že sa vyrovná aj vyštudovanému fyzikovi.
- *I've never met Sarah before, and yet I feel as though we had known each other for years.*
Nikdy predtým som Sáru nestretol, a predsa mám pocit, akoby sme sa poznali už celé roky.

Exercise 18: Insert the conjunction *yet* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The skyscraper looks really futuristic, some people think it doesn't fit in with the rest of the city. 2 Jane's smartphone is a little old extremely fast. 3 The book you recommended seemed a bit dull at first, it's proven to be a real blast after the first chapter. 4 The equipment looks a bit outdated, it's still in working order. 5 The door was closed, we could hear everything the managers were arguing about. 6 The final exam was really tough, the teacher was surprisingly generous with the points. 7 Mr and Mrs Hudmat decided to spend their honeymoon in Wisconsin, they wanted to fly to Rome. 8 George did not prepare anything for his presentation, and he scored a B. 9 It's freezing outside, the children don't want to come inside yet. 10 All the teachers were well aware of the fact that Susan was playing truant, none of them actually did something about it. 11 The cleaning lady opened the door, there was nobody there. 12 I know you were really looking forward to the skiing trip, you'll have to wait for the next one, darling. 13 The technician was very upset, he did not say a single word. 14 The package is really bulky, Simon doesn't seem to need help with it at all. 15 The woman was much weaker than the assailant, and she managed to get away from him.

Exercise 19: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *yet* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The satellite is still orbiting Earth, but it doesn't send any data to the research centre anymore.

The satellite is still orbiting _____.

2 The cows were grazing grass on the meadow as usual. However, they must have been upset by something as they were a bit distressed.

The cows were grazing grass on the meadow _____.

3 Although the author has never lived in the countryside, his depiction of life in the countryside is remarkably accurate and objective.

The author _____.

4 Even though the young gentleman may seem nice and gentle, he's one heck of a lawyer.

- The young gentleman _____ .
- 5 The taxi driver doesn't drive fast, but the elderly lady seems to be afraid of driving as such.
The taxi driver _____ .
- 6 However hard the scholar studied, he could not surpass his teacher.
The scholar studied _____ .
- 7 Slow but responsible is the COO's assistant.
Slow _____ .
- 8 The future may look bleak, but the world's not coming to its end just now.
The future may look _____ .
- 9 The summer is over, but the teachers don't want to go back to work.
The summer is over _____ .
- 10 The entertainer cracked a great joke. Still, nobody laughed.
The entertainer _____ .

Exercise 20: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The marshmallow tastes sour, yet it's not stale at all. **although**
The marshmallow _____ .
- 2 The local shop assistants don't earn much, yet they've got little work to do all day long. **but**
The local shop assistants _____ .
- 3 The parking lot isn't large, yet it's seldom full. **still**
The parking lot _____ .
- 4 Loads of criminals were electrocuted in the good old days, yet there were still people who did take their chance and killed, smuggled and broke the law. **nonetheless**
Loads of criminals _____ .
- 5 The marketing blitz may have been well prepared, yet it did not boost the sales much. **though**
Even _____ .
- 6 Chris doesn't love Ema at all, yet he's willing to marry her for the sake of their boy. **however**
Chris doesn't love _____ .
- 7 The girls next door are pretty mean, yet their parents don't say a single word to them. **but**
The girls next door _____ .
- 8 The inexperienced instructor was hired, yet she can't even switch on a computer. **despite**
The inexperienced instructor _____ .
- 9 The software analyst insists on quitting his job, yet he hasn't got any other offers yet. **in spite of**

The software analyst _____ .

10 The laptop fell down the stairs, and yet it doesn't have a single scratch. **nevertheless**

The laptop fell down the stairs. _____ .

Exercise 21: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Loptička sa odrazila späť, ale hráč ju nechytí. 2 Šmykľavka bola studená, no školáci sa na nej aj tak šmykali. 3 Súťaž v matematike je vždy náročná, ale naši žiaci sa vždy umiestnia medzi prvými tromi najlepšími. 4 Drevená skriňa mojej babičky bola síce stará, ale pevná. 5 Sila kryštálovej gule je veľká, avšak veštenie z dlani je presnejšie. 6 Danielin nový román je skvelý, no príliš romantický. 7 Hrdinka bola chrabrá, no nie veľmi šikovná. 8 Speváčkin hlas je sladký, ale nie silný. 9 Búrka neutíchala, ale námorníci sa museli vydať na cestu. 10 Poviedka je písaná neuveriteľne podrobne, avšak číta sa ľahko a rýchlo. 11 Novinový stánok stojí priamo v centre, no zisk z predaja je nízky. 12 Študent odpovedal na otázky pohotovo, no vyhýbavo. 13 Učiteľ nebol veľmi náročný, no mnohí študenti aj tak nespravili záverečnú skúšku. 14 Alej je v lete nádherná, no chodí tam len málo ľudí. 15 Modrina bola veľká, no veľmi nebolela.

1.6 So

The coordinating conjunction **so** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces the **consequence** or **result** of something. Its meaning is synonymous to *therefore* or *consequently*.
 - *Suddenly, I got a splitting headache, so I took an aspirin and had a little rest.*
Zrazu ma začala prudko bolieť hlava, takže som si dal aspirín a trochu som si odpočinul.
 - *The tourists lost their way in the foreign city, so they asked the passers-by for directions.*
Turisti sa stratili v cudzom meste, a tak sa okoloidúcich spýtali na cestu.
- 2 The conjunction introduces the **purpose** of an action.
 - *The managers are discussing the situation behind closed doors so (that) no one else knows.*
 - *I'll get you a new sheet of paper so (that) you can continue drawing, honey.*

Language Note:

For more information about this use of *so*, please see 4.27 So that.

- 3 The conjunction often **summarises the most essential facts** of important actions or events, so that the speaker can make sure that the information has been understood correctly.
 - *So we embark on our next journey on March 25 and we shall all meet at the main station.*
Takže na ďalšiu cestu sa vydáme 25. marca a všetci sa stretneme na hlavnej stanici.
 - *So you suggest selling the shares once they've reached 25.4 points.*
Teda navrhujete, aby sme akcie predali v okamihu, keď vystúpia na 25,4 boda.
- 4 The conjunction introduces **a subject of interest**, especially a topic that is being talked about right then and there. This use of *so* is particularly characteristic of interrogative clauses.
 - *So, do you really think that the Prime Minister stands a chance in the next election?*
Nuž, skutočne si myslíš, že premiér má šancu vyhrať najbližšie voľby?
 - *So, where do you think all the money went if they did not spend it on research?*
No tak čo si myslíš, kam sa podeli všetky tie peniaze, ak ich neminuli na výskum?

- 5 The conjunction introduces **unexpected** and often **surprising information**, in particular news of actions and events that people may find thought-provoking.
- *So that's where the robber was hiding the whole time.*
Takže tamto sa lupič skrýval po celý čas.
 - *So the bank robbery was just a decoy to get the attention of the police.*
Takže banková lúpež bola len zásterka, ktorá mala odpútať pozornosť polície.
- 6 The conjunction is often used as a filler to give the speaker some extra time to think about what he or she wants to say next. It is always followed by a short pause.
- *So, there we were standing at the abyss contemplating about our future.*
No a tak sme tam stáli pri priepasti a rozjímali o našej budúcnosti.
 - *So, here we are again, talking about the same economic problems as two years ago.*
No a už sme zase pri tej istej ekonomickej téme, o ktorej sme sa rozprávali už pred dvoma rokmi.

Language Note:

This use is particularly common in the spoken discourse.

Exercise 22: Insert the conjunction *so* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 You seem to be rather snowed under, I won't disturb you anymore. 2 The venue of the meeting is still kept a secret no one can interfere with the preparations. 3 You are the damn rascal who broke into my hut! 4 The waitress was looking quite distressed, naturally I asked her what was wrong. 5 There we were staring at each other in surprise. 6 Most people wouldn't pay that much money for a simple dual-core smartphone, the producer had to lower the price a lot. 7 The captain goes below deck and then there's this huge explosion. 8 The shopkeeper was speechless, I asked his assistant what we should do. 9 The children were all very quiet that they could not be found easily. 10 Your desk should be dark brown that it fits in with the rest of the furniture. 11 How do you suggest we solve the case? 12 Here we go again, facing the very same issues as last Christmas. 13 The clients' testimony hasn't convinced anybody, the defendant may still have to go to jail. 14 The husband and wife bought the tickets in secret that nobody knew they were planning a holiday. 15 Where do you want us to put down the sofa?

Exercise 23: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *so* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The phone was ringing and, naturally, I answered it.

The phone was ringing _____.

2 The students were enjoying their holidays; that's why they didn't want to go back to school.

The students were enjoying _____.

3 The producer spent a lot of dough while making the film. Thus, he wants it to be real successful.

The producer spent a lot of _____.

4 Sarah's niece is going to take up her university studies in Madrid next year. As a result, she's cramming Spanish these days a lot.

Sarah's niece is going to take up her university studies _____.

5 The dentist parks his car under those trees over there. He doesn't want the sun to shine straight on the car all day long.

The dentist parks his car _____ .

6 Right, where did you buy the lamp once again, Helen?

_____ ?

7 Well, have you got the car keys or have you lost them again?

_____ ?

8 Hmm, I can't really explain what has just happened, but I'm dead certain it was no aliens.

_____ .

9 My client has the right to speak to his lawyer, and therefore I demand that I be allowed to speak with him right now.

My client has the right to speak to _____ .

10 When I was at secondary school, I studied really hard for all my exams because I wanted to continue my studies at university afterwards.

When I was at secondary school, I studied _____ .

Exercise 24: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The gaming pad you mentioned is broken, so you won't be able to play with it anymore. **thus**

The gaming pad you mentioned _____ .

2 The door seems to be stuck, so we called the janitor. **therefore**

The door seems to be stuck. _____ .

3 The widower couldn't bear the thought of spending the rest of his days without his beloved wife, so he committed suicide a month after her death. **consequently**

The widower couldn't bear the thought of spending the rest of his days without his beloved wife.

_____ .

4 So, how should we break the bad news to the grandmother? **right**

_____ ?

5 So, is this the best you can do in such a long time? **well**

_____ ?

6 The police officer locked the cell so that the criminal wouldn't escape. **prevent**

The police officer _____ .

7 Pickpockets usually move really fast so that nobody notices them stealing in a crowd. **avoid**

Pickpockets usually move _____ .

8 The guys at the office are leaving work early tonight so they can watch the football match. **because**

The guys at the office are leaving _____ .

9 The clown was making funny faces so the children wouldn't feel so depressed all the time. **since**
The clown was making funny faces _____.

10 The brave hero gave his life for those he loved so they could live on. **as**
The brave hero gave his life for those _____.

Exercise 25: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Párik sa začal hádať, takže ich priatelia radšej nechali osamote. 2 Učiteľ musí opraviť ešte veľa esejí, takže dnes zostane v škole dlhšie. 3 Partizáni si schovali zbrane do vysokej trávy a krovia, aby svojich nepriateľov prekvapili. 4 Vedca boleli oči, takže vypol počítač a dal si na oči vlašný obklad. 5 Počítač sa očividne prehrieval, a pracovník ho teda vypol. 6 No a tak sme sa na seba pozerali a čakali na ďalší vlak. 7 Takže ten palác postavili v roku 1750? 8 Teda toto vy stvárate, keď rodičia nie sú doma. 9 Dám si ešte jeden chleba s maslom, aby som nebol po ceste hladný. 10 Takže predaj zahájime piateho marca a reklamnú kampaň spustíme už o dva týždne. 11 No tak, kde skrývaš tie dobroty? 12 Takže policajti len skúšali, či niečo vieš? 13 Dlhو sa nezdržime, takže pokojne nechajte bežať motor. 14 Mikroskop je pokazený, takže veľa toho nevidíte. 15 No a kedy sa začína druhý semester?

1.7 For

The coordinating conjunction **for** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction can introduce the **reason** for an action or a state which was expressed in the preceding clause.
 - We couldn't be angry with Ms Thomson, **for** her heart was in the right place.*
*Na pani Thomsonovú sme sa nemohli hnevať, **pretože** srdce mala na pravom mieste.*
 - Let's get a good night's sleep tonight, **for** tomorrow will be a very difficult day indeed.*
*Dnes by sme sa mali dobre vyspať, **lebo** zajtra nás čaká mimoriadne náročný deň.*

Language Note 1:

In modern English, the coordinator *for* is used as a coordinating conjunction on rare occasions only. Mostly, the usage applies to literary and unnecessarily formal, even highfalutin, registers. Then, *for* usually sounds rather pompous and posh.

As a matter of fact, the only common example of *for* used as a preposition is the well-known sentence *For he's a jolly good fellow* which starts a song that is sung to congratulate a person on important and significant occasions such as birthdays, weddings, promotions, celebrations of victories and a wide variety of anniversaries. Other than that the conjunction is hardly ever used in both the spoken and the written discourse.

Language Note 2:

The conjunction *for* is usually paraphrased by *because*, *since* and *as*.

- Diana's grandmother has a lot of money, **for** she used to work as a governess educating a wealthy merchant's daughters.*
*Diana's grandmother has a lot of money **because** / **since** / **as** she used to work as a governess educating a wealthy merchant's daughters.*
*Dianina babička má veľa peňazí, **pretože** pracovala ako vychovávateľka pre bohatého obchodníka, ktorému vzdelávala dcéry.*

- *The sound of the piano is awful, **for** it hasn't been tuned for ages.
The sound of the piano is awful **because** / **since** / **as** it hasn't been tuned for ages.
Zvuk klavíra je hrozný, **lebo** ho už celú večnosť nikto nenaladil.*

Although *because*, *since* and *as* are synonymous to *for* as far as meaning is concerned, they do not follow the same syntactic rules. While the former may introduce a clause which can come either first or second in the series of clauses constituting a sentence, the latter cannot. *For*, in fact, always follows a strict word order, as a result of which it can only introduce the second clause in a sequence.

- ***Because** / **Since** / **As** she used to work as a governess educating a wealthy merchant's daughters, Diana's grandmother has a lot of money.
~~**For** she used to work as a governess educating a wealthy merchant's daughters, Diana's grandmother has a lot of money.~~*
- ***Because** / **Since** / **As** the piano hasn't been tuned for ages, its sound is awful.
~~**For** the piano hasn't been tuned for ages, its sound is awful.~~*

Exercise 26: Insert the conjunction *for* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The waiter was waiting for the drinks at the bar, he wanted to make a few quick rounds. 2 Laura had been waiting for the guy for over an hours, she could not believe he'd have dumped her just like that. 3 The bees haven't left the hive yet, it's still too cold for them to fly outside. 4 My aunt's holiday home is really awesome, it's got all kinds of modern facilities inside. 5 The rookery looks deserted, the birds have not returned there for years now. 6 The sportsmen are a little cold, they are not used to such severe weather conditions. 7 The electrician put on some rubber gloves before he started working on the wires, he did not want to run the risk of getting electrocuted. 8 The manager was growing impatient, she had been waiting for well over an hour. 9 The talented painter burned his works, he thought they were not worth a single penny. 10 The king's guards were watching the ruler carefully, he had received a few death threats recently. 11 Jack's grandparents don't want to move to the city, they have spent their whole lives in the countryside. 12 Mr Newman won't buy a new computer, he swears by the one he's got now. 13 The woodpecker will make that awful sound every morning, it's got a nest somewhere around here. 14 The analyst won't sign the papers, he didn't participate in the project. 15 The project shouldn't be cancelled, it may yield a great profit.

Exercise 27: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *for* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- The creditors are growing rather impatient as the entrepreneur promised to pay his debts by March.
The creditors are growing _____.
- The dairy products from these two farms ought to be destroyed at once since they are all infected with a rare yet dangerous bacteria.
The dairy products _____.
- The formula still remains imperfect because the experiment didn't work as we had expected.
The formula still remains _____.
- The operation was proceeding very slowly, and so the vet was feeling uneasy.
The vet _____.

5 The baker closed his shop a bit early yesterday. You see, he wanted to get his wife a little surprise.

The baker _____.

6 The elephant was so sick that had to be treated with very strong antibiotics.

The elephant _____.

7 The farmer and his sons ran out of money. Consequently, they had to sell their land and farm too.

The farmer and his sons _____.

8 The novel will turn out to be a major bestseller. After all, it's got a great plot.

The novel _____.

9 Laura's parents bribed her teachers so she'd pass her final exams. Otherwise, she'd have failed.

Laura's parents _____.

10 The sword must have been very sharp as it cut through the wooden chair as if it had been paper.

The sword _____.

Exercise 28: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 We would like to congratulate you, for you've done a great deal for our little village. **as**

We would like to _____.

2 The plane crashed, for both its engines stopped working at the same time. **since**

The plane _____.

3 The milk smells funny, for it gone sour. **because**

The milk _____.

4 The general is really mad, for his troops are losing the battle. **so**

The general's troops _____.

5 David left work early today, for he was feeling sick as a dog. **consequently**

David _____.

6 This is the last time I have taken you to our mountain cottage. I'm going to sell it next week. **result**

I'm going to sell _____.

7 The former footballer is short of breath again, for he's got a heart disease. **because**

The former footballer _____.

8 The competition at universities is really overwhelming nowadays, for nobody wants to end up without a job after finishing their studies. **since**

The competition at universities _____.

9 The merger is likely to end in a huge fiasco, for neither of the companies has adequate liquidity to actually make it work. **as**

The merger is likely _____.

10 The drug dealer left the country in a hurry, for he was being pursued by the police. **given**
The drug dealer left _____.

Exercise 29: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Tmavočervená ruža zvädla, pretože ju nikto nepolieval. 2 Hurikán nikoho nezranil a ani nezabil, lebo v tunajšom kraji majú vynikajúci poplašný systém. 3 Analytika budúci mesiac povýšia, lebo vždy dosahuje vynikajúce výsledky. 4 Počítačový expert si založil minulý rok vlastnú spoločnosť, lebo už nechcel pracovať pre iných. 5 V obývačke je neuveriteľne teplo, pretože dedko nastavil klimatizáciu na 30 stupňov. 6 Športovkyňa plávala takmer sedem kilometrov za hodinu, lebo prúd bol vtedy veľmi silný. 7 Deťom sa darčeky moc nepáčili, pretože dostali mnoho oblečenia. 8 Hrady sa stavali na vysokých skalách, pretože ich nepriateľ nedokázal tak ľahko dobiť. 9 Študentom sa pomaly začínalo zívajúť, pretože už bolo dosť neskoro. 10 Stromy bude treba vyklčovať, pretože toto bude miesto pre diaľnicu. 11 Zápasníci trénovali celý rok mimoriadne usilovne, pretože každý z nich sa chcel stať majstrom. 12 Šofér autobusu prudko zabrzdil, lebo sa z motora začalo dymiť. 13 Pošta je teraz zatvorená, pretože sú Vianoce. 14 Dotazník je skutočne dlhý, pretože obsahuje vyše päťdesiat otázok. 15 Nový rad tabletov je veľmi drahý, pretože tieto zariadenia obsahujú najnovší procesor.

1.8 Grammar Comprehension

The final section of this chapter lists comprehensive contrasting exercises on the conjunctions studied in this chapter which are dealt with in more detail.

Exercise 30: Choose the conjunctions which fit in with the meaning of the rest of the sentences best to complete the gaps.

- 1 Tourists who visit Greece in summer usually wear light clothes, _____ it's very warm.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 2 Julia wants to study at Princeton, _____ she's having trouble preparing for her entrance exams.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 3 I've been having these violent attacks of backache for a few weeks now _____ I'd better see my GP.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 4 A stock exchange is a place where you can make a fortune _____ lose the lot.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 5 The vendor seems concerned _____ highly alarmed.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 6 Mr Stanford likes hiking _____ he seldom ventures out to go climbing all by himself.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 7 The mechanic is working long hours these days _____ he needs some extra money.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 8 Lucy takes care of accounting _____ Carl looks into finances. That's what I call efficiency.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet

- 9 Carol was born in the US _____ lives in the UK now as her husband is British.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 10 My grandpa loves fishing _____ looking for mushrooms since he's got all the time in the world to think about anything he likes.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 11 Sarah doesn't like chocolate ice-cream at all. _____ does her bother.
A) And B) But C) Or D) For E) Nor F) So G) Yet
- 12 Eat up your vegetables _____ you won't get any dessert.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 13 Teachers _____ parents should all try to work together to help kids learn as much as possible.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 14 I'm positive there was enough coffee to last two more weeks at least, _____ no there's none at all!
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 15 Marc is a bit obese _____ his GP told him to do sports and eat healthy food.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 16 Hamburgers and pizza are very tasty _____ they are quite unhealthy at the same time.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 17 Jennifer Lopez is loaded, _____ I wouldn't trade with her for even a split second.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 18 In October, it's quite chilly around here _____ you'd better put on an extra sweater in the morning.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 19 I don't know your secret, _____ do I want to be told anything about it.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet
- 20 Don't cheat in the exam, _____ you might get expelled from your course for good.
A) and B) but C) or D) for E) nor F) so G) yet

Exercise 31: Complete the sentences with the most suitable coordinating conjunctions.

- 1 Penguins can walk _____ they can't fly. 2 Your brother's a very fast runner indeed, _____ I'm much faster than him. 3 We'd like to learn to ski _____ we're going on a trip to the mountains in the winter. 4 Could you check these invoicec _____ shall I wait for Harry? 5 The dentist has a gorgeous wife _____ two lovely kids. 6 The vast majority of our students can't sing, _____ can they play any musical instruments. 7 The mayor is about to resign from office, _____ he's being investigated for several serious offences. 8 My colleague forgot her office key at home _____ she rang the bell. 9 Jo wanted to say goodbye _____ she hopped in for a sec. 10 I haven't got a single clue about monetary politics, _____ am I interested in the topic. 11 Let him do as he wishes, _____ that's the only way he's going to learn his lesson. 12 Dave's grandparents like watching soap operas _____ romantic films on TV. 13 My mom bought me some paracetamol syrup _____, unfortunately, she forgot to get me the tissues. 14 Good old Harry cheated on his wife once again, and _____ he managed to get away

with it just fine. 15 The nurse must have gone out for lunch _____ she may be having another long conversation with the headmaster. 16 The couch is not heavy at all, _____ is the rest of your stuff. 17 I'm leaving in about ten minutes _____ if you want a lift, you'd better get your things together. 18 I have never been so humiliated in my life, _____ do I want to relive that situation ever again. 19 Tom insisted on paying the bill, _____ he felt ashamed as he had not paid anything the last time we went out. 20 The student said she had understood the explanation, and _____ I have the feeling she just wanted me to give her a break.

Exercise 32: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The magician made the rabbit disappear. On top of that, he caused the girl float in the air. **and**
The magician made _____ .
- 2 The fighter's chances are looking good. However, I'm still quite doubtful about the outcome. **but**
The fighter's chances _____ .
- 3 The players can send their IDs by email. Alternatively, they may fax them to the HQ. **or**
The players can send _____ .
- 4 The skiing instructor was extremely careful on the slope. Still, he broke his leg going down. **yet**
The skiing instructor _____ .
- 5 The ambassador won't attend our meeting as he's got to take care of his daughter. **for**
The ambassador won't attend _____ .
- 6 Mr Lawrence hasn't phoned yet and he hasn't texted us either. **nor**
Mr Lawrence hasn't phoned _____ .
- 7 The coach was late. Thus, we didn't catch the flight to Rome. **so**
The coach _____ .
- 8 The mayor seems to be running a little late because he's been snowed under for quite a while. **for**
The mayor seems to be running _____ .
- 9 The university building is under reconstruction, but the classes are still on. **yet**
The university building is _____ .
- 10 The famous actress forgot her lines. Moreover, she panicked and ran off the stage. **and**
The famous actress _____ .

Exercise 33: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The janitor's got to fix the broken pipes, so he'll be working overtime tonight. **consequently**
The janitor's got to fix _____ .
- 2 The king of the jungle cannot rule the world. Nor can he be stronger than machines. **neither**
The king of the jungle _____ .

- 3 The walls of the house collapsed, for the earthquake was extremely strong. **since**
The walls of the house _____ .
- 4 The manufacturer is just about to go bust, yet nobody seems to care. **but**
The manufacturer _____ .
- 5 Give me the money, or I will shoot. **if**
I _____ .
- 6 The blue chip enterprise sounds like a good investment for some, but I'm not sure about us. **however**
The blue chip _____ .
- 7 The line broke down and then it said busy. **subsequently**
The line _____ .
- 8 My client was coerced during the investigation, yet he did not admit to killing the boy. **still**
My client _____ .
- 9 Our grandfather misplaced the gold watch, so we spent the whole afternoon looking for it. **thus**
Our grandfather _____ .
- 10 Chemical weapons have always been extremely dangerous, yet they were used on too many an occasion in the past. **nonetheless**
Chemical weapons _____ .

Exercise 34: Complete the sentences with the most suitable coordinating conjunctions.

- 1 Mr Ferguson can speak Spanish _____ his brother-in-law can speak Dutch. 2 The opera singer loves singing above all, _____ she can't dance at all. 3 My best friend picked me up at the airport _____ drove me all the way home. 4 I know it's getting rather late _____ I won't keep you long. 5 Sarah likes coffee _____ she dislikes tea a lot. 6 It was gloomy and cold, _____ it didn't snow. 7 Julian can't type, _____ can he write fast. 8 The famous lawyer's got loads of money _____ a wonderful villa. 9 Master Calloway has decided to stay at the library, _____ he's eager to research a new project. 10 The dolphin seems to have lost its way, _____ it's been swimming in circles for over an hour now. 11 My brother lives in Newcastle _____ my sister in New York. 12 The guests didn't smoke, _____ did they drink much alcohol. 13 The beverages are on the house, _____ somebody will have to pay for them eventually. 14 Cornelia left school at sixteen, _____ she never regretted her decision. 15 The two of you seem to be doing just fine on your own _____ I won't disturb you any further. 16 Next time we meet, _____ we will meet, you got to tell me everything. 17 The blinds are down, _____ there's plenty of light inside. 18 The little kid over there hurt its knee _____ started crying. 19 The company has run out of money _____ they had to close down the factory. 20 When you are under eighteen, you shouldn't smoke, _____ should you drink.

2 CORRELATIVE COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Correlative coordinating conjunctions (aka *correlatives*) are pairs of words or phrases which co-occur in double constructions to express alternative, additive and negative meanings. They always consist of two units, the first of which is termed *the endorsing item* and the second *coordinator*. Correlatives are labelled coordinating conjunctions since they join sentence elements similar in importance and status—just like coordinating conjunctions proper (see Chapter 1 Coordinating Conjunctions).

The term *correlative* suggests that the two pairs of the conjunctions work together (ie *co-*) to carry equal weight in a sentence (ie *relate*). As for their scope, correlative coordinating conjunctions may join words, phrases, clauses, and even whole sentences alike.

The four correlative coordinating conjunctions are:

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| a) Either ... or | c) Neither ... nor |
| b) Both ... and | d) Not only ... but also |

Neither ... nor is the negative counterpart of *both ... and* although, from the orthographic point of view, it bears more resemblance to *either ... or*. Make sure to remember that *neither ... nor* is a negative, ie there may not be another negative used with the correlative since there may be no more than a single negative employed in a grammatically correct English sentence.

Unlike *either ... or*, *both ... and* and *neither ... nor* cannot join clauses.

- ***Either*** *the author produces the book by Friday* ***or*** *she will not be paid for her work anymore.*
- ***Both*** *Mr Callan is working on the project* ***and*** *Mr Donovan is working on the project.*
- ***Neither*** *Lucy wanted to go to the park* ***nor*** *her mother wanted to take her there.*

Prescriptive Grammar Rules

Prescriptive grammar rules state that correlative coordinators may only join two conjoins, ie units to be connected by a conjunction.

- *I've seen **both** the headmaster **and** his assistant leave the school.*
- *The robbers found **neither** money **nor** jewellery hidden in the attic.*

Moreover, according to another prescriptive tradition, correlative coordinators have to adhere to the principle of parallelism, and thus connect conjoins of equal function only.

- *These are the works of **both** highly gifted painters **and** the students of my painting class.*
- *The witness remembers **neither** the exact date **nor** the approximate time of the incident.*
- *The champ is ~~**either** stupid **or** he's an excellent actor and showman.~~*

Subject-Verb Agreement

When joining subjects of a sentence, the correlative *both ... and* always takes a plural verb since it coordinates at least two subjects of equal weight, just like a coordinating conjunction proper.

- ***Both*** *Martin **and** Julie play tennis.*
- ***Both*** *tourists **and** their guide were lost somewhere on the outskirts.*

When joining subjects of a sentence, the correlatives *either ... or*, *neither ... nor* and *not only ... but also* follow the principle of proximity agreement. Essentially, this means that the subject closest to the verb determines if the verb is singular or plural.

- ***Either*** *the coach **or** the footballers **have** leaked the news to the press.*
- ***Neither*** *your warnings **nor** the storm **is** going to change my travel plans.*
- ***Not only*** *the CFO **but also** all the staff **have** decided to go on strike.*

2.1 Either ... or

The correlative coordinating conjunction **either ... or** is used in the following ways:

1 The conjunction indicates that there is a **choice between two alternatives** only, but both together are not possible. The correlative construction can join words, phrases and clauses alike.

- *Somebody's knocking on the door and it's **either** Phillip **or** Anna.*
*Niektó klope na dvere a bude to **bud'** Filip **alebo** Anna.*
- *You may contact Mr Brown **either** by calling him on the cell **or** by email.*
*S pánom Brawnóm sa môžete spojiť **bud'** telefonicky **alebo** prostredníctvom emailu.*
- *The company can **either** merge with its competitor **or** it must face total bankruptcy.*
*Spoločnosť sa môže **bud'** zlúčiť so svojim konkurentom, **alebo** bude musieť čeliť úplnému krachu.*

Language Note:

Although the above sentences are all correct, it is advisable to use the same kind of constructions with correlative coordinating conjunctions, ie speakers and writers do not like to mix phrases of varying nature with correlatives, but rather keep to parallel units of grammar. This rule is rather prescriptive, yet still frequently followed.

- *You can have **either** pizza **or** salad for dinner.*
*Na večeru si môžeš dať **bud'** pizzu **alebo** šalát.*
- *Mr Simmons is available **either** by phone **or** by email.*
*Pán Simmons je dostupný **bud'** telefonicky **alebo** emailom.*

2 The conjunction can also suggest a **choice between more than two alternatives**.

- *We can go out for lunch at **either** 12.00, 1.00 pm **or** 1.30 pm.*
*Na obed môžeme ísť **bud'** o 12.00, 13.00 **alebo** o 13.30.*
- *The best way to keep up with the latest news is **either** to read newspapers, to listen to radios **or** to surf the web.*
*Držať krok s čerstvými správami môžeš najlepšie **bud'** čítaním novín, počúvaním rádia **alebo** surfovaním webu.*

Language Note:

This use is to be applied with great care since prescriptive grammars and grammarians consider it incorrect to use more than two segments, ie conjoins, joined by correlative coordinating conjunction.

Exercise 35: Insert the conjunction *either ... or* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 You give us proper equipment we won't be able to deliver the results you expect. 2 Sara's brother sleeps just lies in front of the telly. 3 You tell us the truth we will leave at once. 4 The COO should visit the HQ on Monday on Tuesday. 5 Mr and Mrs Barkins are going to spend their holiday in Venice Liverpool. 6 The old computer breaks down it's so slow that you can't get anything done. 7 You can purchase our products online visit our local shop. 8 The young author's stories are always witty educational, but never both at the same time. 9 Dr Thelma's assistant is blind she can't read at all. 10 The hard-working carpenter is working in his garage going over the paperwork in the office. 11 The little girl's name's Jane Catherine. 12 You cooperate with the authorities you go to prison for a very long time. 13 The solicitor was working on a case having a nap. 14 The giant stood in front of next to the church. 15 Travellers can take a taxi or go on foot to the airport. It's just ten minutes on foot.

Exercise 36: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *either ... or* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The cargo may be delivered by ship or by plane.

The cargo _____.

2 The desks in our office are cleaned every Friday. Alternatively, they may be cleaned on Mondays.

The desks _____.

3 If the lights are not off before leaving the office, we get into a lot of trouble.

_____.

4 She didn't tell you the truth. You may also have misunderstood something.

_____.

5 Sell your shares now, otherwise you may risk losing the lot.

_____.

6 Our staff work during the week or at the weekends.

Our staff _____.

7 The students must pass their exams now, otherwise they'll have to attend summer school.

_____.

8 The research may be presented in Spanish. Alternatively, you may use English too.

The research _____.

9 Give up your firearm or the police will shoot.

_____.

10 Do your job properly, or just go home.

_____.

Exercise 37: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Either the gardener cuts the hedge tomorrow or he'll have to wait for two more weeks. **if**

_____.

2 You can either invest your money into stocks and shares or put it into a saving account. **alternatively**

You can invest your money _____.

3 Either the new butcher does his work really well or he gets replaced soon. **unless**

The new butcher _____.

4 The jumper will either put a stamp on your ticket or just check it. **or**

_____.

5 The planet's moon can either blow up or continue existing. **on the other hand**

The planet's moon _____.

- 6 Either you confess to killing the wealthy oil tycoon or you'll face our chief interrogator. **provided**
You will _____ .
- 7 The tourists have either got lost or they have decided to take the longer path. **on the other hand**
The tourists _____ .
- 8 The peasants either show more respect to the ruler or they will be annihilated. **providing**
The peasants _____ .
- 9 Either the ship sank to the bottom of the sea or it's still on its way to the US. **alternatively**
The ship _____ .
- 10 The parcel should be delivered either today or tomorrow at the latest. **or**
The parcel _____ .

Exercise 38: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Deti sa budú hrať buď na ihrisku alebo na pieskovisku. 2 Mladá školáčka je buď na ceste do školy, alebo už sedí v triede. 3 Buď prehodnotíš svoje stanovisko, alebo si budeš musieť nájsť novú prácu. 4 Gitarista hráva buď v miestnom klube alebo na rôznych kultúrnych podujatiach v našom kraji. 5 Maťo chodieval v piatok buď do kina alebo do divadla. 6 Chrabrý rytier sa buď postaví svojmu nepriateľovi a zvíťazí alebo položí život v boji. 7 Naši politici sa buď hádajú alebo okrádajú občanov. 8 Doktorand sa buď učil alebo prednášal na svojej univerzite. 9 Buď požiarnici oheň uhasia alebo stodola padne popolom. 10 Nový softvér funguje buď bezchybne alebo ho vôbec nejde spustiť. 11 Reportéri stoja buď pred bránami hradu alebo na parkovisku. 12 Nápad marketingového manažéra sú buď otrepané alebo príliš drahé. 13 Robotníci museli pracovať buď so starými alebo nevhodnými nástrojmi. 14 Buď naše lietadlo pristane v poriadku alebo všetci zahynieme strašnou smrťou. 15 Vonku je buď hrozná zima alebo mrzne.

2.2 Both ... and

The correlative coordinating conjunction **both ... and** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction **stresses the additive meaning of and** by including *both* in a preceding phrase. The construction is used in positive senses only.
 - The talented young woman plays both the flute and the piano.*
Talentovaná mladá žena hrá ako na flautu, tak aj na klavír.
 - The smugglers were eager both to bring the stolen goods into the country and to sell them.*
Pašeráci boli netrpezliví, pretože kradnutý tovar chceli priviesť do krajiny a aj ho predat'.
 - Both the pirates and their captain are to be hanged by the end of the month.*
Aj pirátov, aj ich kapitána majú najneskôr koncom mesiaca obesit'.

Language Note:

All correlative coordinating conjunctions are best used in parallel constructions connecting conjoins which follow the same grammatical forms.

- The librarian works both during the week and at the weekend.*

*Knihovnička pracuje **aj** cez týždeň **a** **aj** cez vikend.*

- *The wall feels **both** smooth **and** dry.
Zdá sa, že stena je **aj** hladká, **aj** suchá.*

However, it is possible to coordinate conjoins which do not follow the symmetry pattern. This use is sometimes considered awkward and not entirely correct, though.

- *The new Xbox will bring joy **both** to the young **and** the old.
Nová herná konzola Xbox poteší **ako** mladých, **taka j** starých.*
- *The ambitious teacher seems to be angry **both** with her colleagues **and** her students.
Zdá sa, že ctižiadostivý učiteľsa hnevá **aj** na svojich kolegov, **aj** na svojich študentov.*

As a result, most English speakers would tend to re-write the above sentences as follows:

- *The new Xbox will bring joy to **both** the young **and** the old.*
- *The ambitious teacher seems to be angry with **both** her colleagues **and** her students.*

The difference between the two pairs of example sentences lies both in symmetry and parallelism, and in the prosodic features of the constructions. The former pair of examples is rather awkward and seems not only unbalanced, but also distorted. The smooth flow of logics and natural rhythm is upset and though the message still remains clear, it is conveyed with much lesser impact than it could have been. By contrast, the latter pair of examples carries equal weight on both the conjoins since they are parallel and symmetrical. Moreover, the rhythm is the same for both conjoins, and thus the constructions look and sound well organised. The logics is not undermined or blurred by unbalanced structures, and thus the whole sentences are more natural than their former counterparts.

2 The conjunction expresses **the segregatory meaning of and** pointing out that the two conjoins are independent of each other in terms of extralinguistic reality but convey, in fact, the same linguistic message.

- ***Both** my brother **and** my best friend lost their jobs last week. (not the same job)
Ako môj brat, **tak** aj môj najlepší priateľ prišli minulý týždeň o prácu.*
- *So, I suppose **both** Clara **and** John are to get divorced this month. (not from each other)
Takže si myslím, že Klára **a** **aj** Ján sa tento mesiac rozvedú.*

Exercise 39: Insert the conjunction *both ... and* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The terrible monster killed the villagers the city dwellers. 2 The planet its moons were destroyed in a cataclysmic explosion two years ago. 3 The strong fighter seems determined to beat the ruling champion to win the prize money. 4 The glasses are suitable for men women. 5 You can find the animals living in Australia the Far East. 6 The graduate's thesis was scientific highly exploratory. 7 He his younger brother have lived in Morocco. 8 Kangaroos elephants are kept in the local zoo. 9 The chair seemed exasperated thrilled as his proposal was losing support by the minute. 10 The hardware the software of your device need to be in a perfect condition if you want to use it on a daily basis. 11 Doris has a boyfriend a lover. 12 The economic situation is unstable grim. 13 The blast turned out powerful destructive. 14 Kate's new song sounds depressing childish. 15 Jeremy's brother owns a shoe factory a construction company.

Exercise 40: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *both ... and* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The fierce warrior has awesome power. Moreover, he's very intelligent.

- The fierce warrior _____ .
- 2 The supervisor wants to speak you, Dave. He wants to speak Helen, too.
The supervisor _____ .
- 3 The paramedics died in an accident. The ambulance driver died in the same accident.
_____ .
- 4 My grandmother used to live in the countryside. My great-grandmother used to live in the countryside, too.
_____ .
- 5 Not only has the mad psycho broken out of the psychiatric hospital, but she has also injured a doc.
_____ .
- 6 My teenage daughter can play the violin as well as the drums perfectly.
My teenage daughter _____ .
- 7 James and his little sister have always cherished the memories of their parents.
_____ .
- 8 The late witness consumed drugs along with some poison last night.
The late witness _____ .
- 9 Your deeds are not only immoral, but also against the law.
Your deeds _____ .
- 10 The actress owns a huge house in Malibu. On top of that, she's got a holiday home in Nebraska.
The actress _____ .

Exercise 41: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 Most external auditors are both self-centred and uncaring. **not only ... but also**
Most _____ .
- 2 The soup we had yesterday tasted both salty and cold. **as well as**
The soup _____ .
- 3 The infamous surgeon has performed both many controversial and unnecessary surgeries. **also**
The infamous surgeon _____ .
- 4 Jason's just got himself a great deal; both a mobile phone and a tablet for the price of a single device. **along with**
Jason's just got _____ .
- 5 Mr Burt's new PA is both forgetful and rather lazy, isn't she? **on top of that**
Mr Burt's _____ .
- 6 Most students are rather keen on both finishing their studies and getting a job. **at the same time**
Most students _____ .

- 7 The graduate is well versed in both modern psychology and animation. **too**
The graduate _____ .
- 8 The priest speaks both Greek and Hebrew fluently. **in addition**
The priest _____ .
- 9 The former Prime Minister visited both Sweden and Italy during his studies. **also**
The former Prime Minister _____ .
- 10 Not only has the accountant embezzled a lot of company funds, but he's also framed his colleague for his own actions. **moreover**
The accountant _____ .

Exercise 42: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Nový smartfón je aj pevný a aj vodotesný. 2 Mechanik pracuje aj rýchlo, aj dobre. 3 Zdá sa, že detektív chce páchatel'a ako nájsť, tak aj zatknúť. 4 Drevorubač má ako ubolené, tak aj vrásčité ruky. 5 Obézni vojaci by mali veľa cvičiť a aj častejšie chodiť na misie. 6 Ako junior, tak i senior manažéri netrpezlivo čakali na najnovšie správy. 7 Martinova priateľka je šikovná a aj inteligentná. 8 Primátor sa rozhodol financovať ako stavbu novej školy, tak aj opravu nemocnice. 9 Tím výskumníkov je nielen dobre financovaný, ale aj dobre vybavený. 10 Noci začínajú bývať tmavé a aj chladné. 11 Myslí si, že je možné pracovať a aj študovať? 12 O kvety sa stará ako záhradník, tak aj pani domu. 13 Malý router je aj rýchlejší, aj spoľahlivejší než ten nový. 14 Bozk bol na pocit neúprimný a chladný. 15 Aj vedci, aj profesori z univerzity mali na celú vec rovnaký názor.

2.3 Neither ... nor

The correlative coordinating conjunction **neither ... nor** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction emphasises that **something is not true of two concepts** at the same time.
 - The best car salesman in our shop is **neither** a car owner **nor** a driver.*
*Najlepší predajca vozidiel v našom obchode nemá **ani** vlastné auto, **ani** vodičák.*
 - The villain could **neither** be arrested **nor** traced.*
*Darebáka sa nedarilo **ani** zatknúť, **ani** vypátrať.*

Language Note:

When the correlative conjunction coordinates two subjects in the singular, the verb is usually singular too. This is especially the case in formal and informal registers alike.

- Neither** David **nor** Carol **speaks** Arabic.*
***Ani** Dávid, **ani** Karolína **nehovori** po arabsky.*
- Neither** the postman **nor** the milkman **has** ever seen Tim in person.*
***Ani** poštár, **ani** mliekár **nevidel** Tima nikdy osobne.*

However, in very informal registers, though mostly in spoken English only, the verb may take a plural form.

- Neither** David **nor** Carol **speak** Arabic.*
***Ani** Dávid, **ani** Karolína **nehovori** po arabsky.*
- Neither** the postman **nor** the milkman **have** ever seen Tim in person.*

Ani poštár, ani mliekár nevidel Tima nikdy osobne.

- 2 The conjunctions can also show that **something is not true of more than two concepts**.
- *The business letters were **neither** typed correctly, formatted, **nor** signed.*
*Obchodné listy neboli **ani** správne napísané, naformátované **a ani** podpísané.*
 - *Laura's best friend could **neither** walk, crawl, **nor** cry for help when she saw the maniac.*
*Laurina najlepšia kamarátka nevládala **ani** ísť, plazíť sa, **či** kričať o pomoc, keď zazrela šíalenca.*

Language Note:

This use is to be applied with great care since prescriptive grammars and grammarians consider it incorrect to use more than two segments, ie conjoins, joined by correlative coordinating conjunction.

Exercise 43: Insert the conjunction *neither ... nor* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The goalkeeper his team mates knew how to win the match. 2 The chimney sweeper has his ladder his other tools on him. 3 The magician is great powerful. 4 The tiger the lion could run fast enough to catch the cheetah. 5 Jo is as skilful as hard-working as his master. 6 The spokesperson has confirmed denied the allegations. 7 Master Brown can swim play tennis. 8 The party members seem to be for against the bill. 9 The bully his friends wanted to talk to the headmaster. 10 The windows the doors seem to have been locked. 11 There are knives other weapons hidden in the hay. 12 The taxi driver the bus driver admitted to causing the accident. 13 The highway the bridge could withstand the power of the earthquake. 14 The first-aid kit contains any bandages any medicine. 15 The mistake was silly repetitive.

Exercise 44: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *neither ... nor* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The machine gun stopped working a while ago. The pistols don't seem to be working either.

_____ .

2 Our maths teacher can't play the piano. She can't sing either.

Our maths teacher _____ .

3 You shouldn't speak while eating. You shouldn't work while eating either.

_____ .

4 Tim is young than Marc and he's also much better at multitasking.

Marc _____ .

5 The MPs didn't vote for, but they didn't vote against the bill either.

The MPs _____ .

6 The clay doesn't feel really wet, and yet it's not really dry either.

The clay _____ .

7 The power unit isn't too big and it's also not too bulky.

The power unit _____ .

8 The ice-cream doesn't taste very chocolatey. Neither does it smell like chocolate.

The ice-cream _____.

9 George hasn't received an increase in salary in over two years now. He hasn't been promoted either.

George _____.

10 The bread wasn't fresh. The butter seemed stale too.

_____.

Exercise 45: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The film-maker lost neither his main actors nor his zeal to work hard.

or

The film-maker _____.

2 The candy factory produces neither lollipops nor chewing gum anymore.

either

The candy factory _____.

3 Neither the father nor the mother could help their son get on his own feet again.

not even

No one, _____.

4 The treasure hunters found neither gold nor silver in the wreckage of the old ship.

either

The treasure hunters _____.

5 I could neither believe the news nor did I want to believe it.

either

I couldn't _____.

6 Neither our mobile phones nor the landline phones seem to be working.

also

Our mobile phones _____.

7 Neither the CFO nor the CAO wanted to take the responsibility for the agenda.

nobody

_____.

8 The bartender was neither wearing proper clothing nor speaking the right language.

either

The bartender _____.

9 Neither the camera nor the guard saw the burglar enter the house.

unobserved

The burglar _____.

10 The ministry has neither the funds nor the manpower to make the project a success.

lacking

The ministry _____.

Exercise 46: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Dnešná mládež nie je ani usilovná, ani múdra. 2 Ani rakúsky, ani nemecký návrh sa poslancom EÚ nepozdával. 3 Majiteľ pivovaru nemal dostatok financií ani na chod podniku, ani na vyplatenie plátov zamestnancov. 4 Tlačiareň nemohla byť ani zaseknutá, ani pokazená. 5 Zápasník sa nemal ani vzdať, ani stiahnuť. 6 Ani na modrej, ani na červenej stoličke sa dobre nesedí. 7 Doktor nepovedal rodine ani dobré, ani zlé správy. 8 Mačiatko nebolo ani hladné, ani smädné. 9 Ani myši, ani potkany nám po

povale nechodia. 10 V jame nie sú schované ani klenoty, ani poklad. 11 Ani pán Donaldson, ani pani Marketová nám nevedeli povedať, kedy sa generálny riaditeľ vráti zo služobnej cesty. 12 Teroristi nezaútočili ani na mešitu, ani na kostol. 13 Ozbrojené zložky sa nevrátili ani na základňu, ani na bojisko. 14 Rana sa vojakovi doteraz ani nezahojila, ani nezapálila. 15 Vladár nepožiadala o radu ani svojho tajomníka, ani svoju manželku.

2.4 Not only ... but also

The correlative coordinating conjunction **not only ... but also** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction joins two concepts which are related and states that they are both true, correct, real or genuine. Moreover, the construction carries the connotations of amazement, astonishment and surprise pointing out that the actions happened in an unexpected way.
 - *The sales reps do business **not only** during the week, **but also** at the weekend.*
*Obchodní zástupcovia **nielenže** obchodujú počas týždňa, **ale ešte aj** cez víkend.*
 - ***Not only** has the company made a huge profit, **but** it has **also** taken on 500 new staff.*
*Spoločnosť **nielenže** dosiahla obrovský zisk, **ale taktiež** zamestnala ďalších 500 nových ľudí.*

Language Note 1:

The structure is usually used in rather formal registers. In informal registers, other constructions are usually used instead.

- *The pilot **doesn't fly** during the day only. He **also** does night flights.*
*Pilot **nelieta** len počas dňa, **ale taktiež** v noci.*
- *My elder brother has a huge house on the beach. **On top of that**, he's got a holiday home in the mountains.*
*Môj starší brat má obrovský dom na pláži. **Okrem toho** vlastní **aj** dovolenkový dom v horách.*

Language Note 2:

Not only ... but also is used in different positions in a sentence, namely:

a) Immediately before the elements it is used to modify:

- *The interpreter speaks **not only** Spanish and French, **but also** Greek and Czech.*
*Tlmočník **nehovori len** po španielsky a po francúzsky, **ale aj** po grécky a po česky.*
- *The pirates stole **not only** a large number of ships, **but also** great treasures.*
*Piráti **nielenže** ukradli množstvo lodí, **ale aj** veľké poklady.*

b) In the mid-position with the verb:

- *The parrot **not only** sings merry songs, **but also** speaks Spanish.*
*Papagáj **nielenže** spieva veselé pesničky, **ale aj** rozpráva po španielsky.*
- *The talented actress **not only** plays in the theatre, **but also** sings in musicals.*
***Nielenže** hrá talentovaná herečka v divadle, **ale ešte aj** spieva v muzikáloch.*

c) In the initial position in a sentence:

When fronted, the **not only**-construction is followed by the subject-operator inversion (ie auxiliary verb + subject). In this case, **but** can optionally be dropped.

- ***Not only** have I done all you asked of me; I have **also** prepared the whole presentation.*
***Nielenže** som urobil všetko, o čo ste ma požiadali, **ale rovnako** som pripravil aj celú prezentáciu.*
- ***Not only** do the bankers play with our savings, **but** they **also** charge us huge fees.*
*Bankári sa **nielenže** zahrávajú s našimi úsporami, **ale tiež** nám účtujú obrovské poplatky.*

This use is particularly handy when putting emphasis on the fact that both concepts are true or correct.

Exercise 47: Insert the conjunction *not only ... but also* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The family seems to be having financial interpersonal problems. 2 The musicians play various instruments, sing beautifully. 3 Has the contestant withdrawn from the competition; he's decided never to join similar contests again. 4 The child appears to be a maths prodigy, a fantastic sportsman. 5 The dancers dance during their performances, sing beautifully. 6 Did the sore loser insult his opponent, she spread false rumours about him. 7 Has the milkman delivered the milk on time, he's brought us the good news about Mr Strepten. 8 The new secretary can type well and fast, write shorthand. 9 Did the student come late to class, he forgot to prepare for the exam. 10 Gregory eats beans, peas. 11 The candidate complained about the organisation of the exam, about the invigilators' attitude. 12 Did the bank robber disappear into thin air, he's stolen 5.3 million euros. 13 The entertainer is funny, very gifted. 14 Are my students going to Egypt next month, they're going to visit Italy and Greece. 15 Our professor has a good sense of humour great brains.

Exercise 48: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *not only ... but also* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The surgeon does excellent work at the local hospital. He also writes a lot of research papers.

_____.

2 The husband lost his wedding ring last week. He forgot about the wedding anniversary too.

The husband _____.

3 The gardener couldn't mow the lawn and he couldn't cut the hedge either.

_____.

4 The poor girl next door's got a huge debt to carry on her young shoulders. On top of that, she's got nobody in the whole wide world to look out for her.

The poor girl next door _____.

5 The boys should stay home and study hard for their exams.

_____.

6 The music is divine as well as magical.

The music is _____.

7 The marketing coordinator designs campaigns. Moreover, she's responsible for designing new company logos.

The marketing coordinator _____.

8 The wind was both strong and extremely cold last night.

The wind _____.

9 The janitor's cat is sly as well as mischievous.

The janitor's cat _____ .

10 The copycat criminal murdered the landlord. Furthermore, he stole all the jewellery.

The copycat criminal _____ .

Exercise 49: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Martin's new convertible is not only super fast but also very comfortable. **both ... and**

Martin's new convertible _____ .

2 The antique chair seems not only big but also quite expensive. **as well as**

The antique chair _____ .

3 Not only the president but also the vice-president has lost the support of the managers. **moreover**

The president _____ .

4 The carpenter not only works in his own company, but he also moonlights in a bar. **too**

The carpenter _____ .

5 Our Spanish instructor teaches not only at our school but also at a private academy. **also**

Our Spanish instructor _____ .

6 Mr and Mrs Newman bought not only a new sofa but also a big chandelier. **on top of that**

Mr and Mrs Newman bought _____ .

7 The processor is not only fast but also brand new. **as well**

The processor _____ .

8 The underwriter says he's not only snowed under but also under a lot of pressure. **also**

The underwriter says _____ .

9 The nuns not only take care of the poor but also help the sick. **both ... and**

The nuns _____ .

10 Not only was the worker doing overtime, but he was also trying to help his colleagues. **furthermore**

The worker _____ .

Exercise 50: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Opice nielenže behali v kletke, ale aj skákali na stromy. 2 Nielenže ma majiteľ domu urazil, ale ešte mi aj vynadal. 3 Študenti nielenže zvládli skúšky, ale ešte aj prešli na plný počet bodov. 4 Novinári sa nielenže snažili nájsť pravdu, ale ešte aj pomáhali polícii pri vyšetovaní. 5 Výrobca automobilov nás nielenže oklamal, ale ešte nás aj okradol. 6 Nielenže som si zabudol mobil v práci, ale ešte aj kľúče od brány som niekde stratil. 7 Slnko nielenže nehrialo, ale ani len nesvietilo. 8 Nielenže sa požiarnikom nedarilo dostať požiar pod kontrolu, ale ešte sa im aj pokazilo jedno vozidlo. 9 Mobilný operátor sa nielenže zaviazal nezvýšiť poplatky za svoje služby, ale ešte priniesol na trh aj nové a lacné mobily. 10 Nielenže ste ma sklamali, ale ešte ste ma aj krivo obvinili. 11 Nielenže zostalo okno otvorené, ale ešte

ste ani dvere nezamkli. 12 Agenti nielenže páchatel'ov dolapili, ale ešte ich aj prichytili pri čine. 13 Mravce nielenže kráčali rovnakým tempom, ale ešte aj pochodovali v peknej formácii. 14 Nielenže diváci z predstavenia nič nevideli, ale ešte ani lístky im nepreplatili. 15 Mocný vladár si nielenže robí čo sa mu len zachce, ale ani len nedbá na svojich poddaných.

2.5 Grammar Comprehension

The final section of this chapter lists comprehensive contrasting exercises on the conjunctions studied in this chapter which are dealt with in more detail.

Exercise 51: Choose the correct answers.

1 Are correlative coordinating conjunctions single words?

- a) YES b) NO c) Under certain circumstances. d) Some are.

2 Which correlative coordinating conjunction conveys additive meanings?

- a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or

3 Which correlative coordinating conjunction expresses a choice between two alternatives?

- a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or

4 Which correlative coordinating conjunction suggests that neither option is correct?

- a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or

5 Which correlative coordinating conjunction suggests that both concepts mentioned are true and, at the same time, carries the connotations of amazement and astonishment?

- a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or

6 Which correlative coordinating conjunction is the opposite of *neither ... nor*?

- a) both ... and b) not only ... but also c) either ... or

7 Which two correlative coordinating conjunctions can join clauses?

- a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or

8 Which verb form is used when *both ... and* coordinates two singular subjects?

- a) singular b) plural c) It's the speaker's choice. d) none

9 Which verb form is used when *both ... and* coordinates a singular and a plural subject?

- a) singular b) plural c) It's the speaker's choice. d) none

10 Which verb form is used when *neither ... nor* coordinates two singular subjects?

- a) singular b) plural c) It's the speaker's choice. d) none

11 Which verb form is used when *neither ... nor* coordinates a singular subject which comes first and a plural subject which comes second?

- a) singular b) plural c) It's the speaker's choice. d) none

12 Which verb form is used when *neither ... nor* coordinates a plural subject which comes first and a singular subject which comes second?

- a) singular b) plural c) It's the speaker's choice. d) none

13 Which verb form is used when *either ... or* coordinates a singular subject which comes first and a plural subject which comes second?

- a) singular b) plural c) It's the speaker's choice. d) none

Exercise 52: Choose the conjunctions which fit in with the meaning of the rest of the sentences best to complete the gaps.

- 1 ... the magician delivers a great performance ... he might get sacked for good.
a) Both ... and b) Neither ... nor c) Not only ... but also d) Either ... or
- 2 The crew have ... made a terrific movie, ... they ... did a great job taking care of the actors.
a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or
- 3 ... David ... his wife are very friendly and polite.
a) Both ... and b) Neither ... nor c) Not only ... but also d) Either ... or
- 4 It seems that ... the protagonist ... the antagonist wants to make the first move.
a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or
- 5 The CEO owns ... a yacht ... a huge house at the beach. He must be loaded.
a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or
- 6 ... you give up your firearm ... the police officers will open fire.
a) Both ... and b) Neither ... nor c) Not only ... but also d) Either ... or
- 7 ... has the carpenter broken his leg, ... he's ... bruised his arm.
a) Both ... and b) Neither ... nor c) Not only ... but also d) Either ... or
- 8 The new telly is ... broken ... not set up properly.
a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or
- 9 The freedom fighters have lost their fight ... at home ... abroad.
a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or
- 10 Fortunately, the storm ... killed anybody ... damaged the local farms.
a) both ... and b) neither ... nor c) not only ... but also d) either ... or

Exercise 53: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The curator has a unique system of cataloguing and very special manners too. **not only ... but also**
The curator _____ .
- 2 The chronicle is not very old and there aren't too many entries either. **neither ... nor**
The chronicle _____ .
- 3 The project was a huge failure, as was Dr Martin's campaign. **both ... and**
_____ .
- 4 The raging fever has worsened and it's also left the patient unconscious. **not only ... but also**
The raging fever _____ .
- 5 Speak up or keep silent altogether! **either ... or**
_____ .
- 6 Applicants may submit their proposals by email. Alternatively, they may send a letter to the PA. **either ... or**
Applicants _____ .

7 The crowd were not moving, but they were not standing still either. **neither ... nor**
The crowd _____ .

8 The demon could have crushed you. He might have turned you into a frog as well. **either ... or**
The demon _____ .

9 The actor forgot his lines. Worse even, he slipped twice during a single act. **not only ... but also**
The actor _____ .

10 The inspector and his associate are convinced that I killed the sailor. **both ... and**
_____ .

Exercise 54: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Both the lighthouse and the factory blew up last night. **as well as**
The lighthouse _____ .

2 The dwarf not only outsmarted the giant, but he also made a monkey out of him. **moreover**
The dwarf _____ .

3 Either the take-over is finished by the end of the month, or we'll start losing money. **or else**
The take-over _____ .

4 Neither the judge nor the jury were present in the room then. **both ... and**
_____ .

5 Not only could the athlete have won the gold medal, she could also have won a lot of money. **too**
The athlete _____ .

6 You can always find either Henry or Ben in the office. **unless**
You can always find Ben _____ .

7 The skiing instructor was not only drunk, but also heartbroken. **worse even**
The skiing instructor _____ .

8 The heir could neither accept nor decline his inheritance. **either**
The heir _____ .

9 The fisherman caught both a big salmon and a long eel. **in addition**
The fisherman _____ .

10 A clown doctor not only brings joy and happiness to sick little children, but he also tries to help the real doctors. **further**
A clown doctor _____ .

Exercise 55: Choose the correct verb forms to complete the sentences.

1 Both Mr Donovan and Mr Marley *have / has* seen the presentation this week.

2 Neither France nor Germany *are / is* eager to pass the EU law.

- 3 Either the solicitor or his associate *know / knows* what to do now.
- 4 Neither the captain nor his team mates *have / has* actually been to Moscow.
- 5 Both Lucy and her brother *want / wants* to sell the old mountain cottage.
- 6 Neither the jumpers nor their supervisor *have / has* checked the time schedules this week.
- 7 Either the bed or the desk *don't / doesn't* fit in the small room.
- 8 Either the director or the cameramen *get / gets* the latest news every week.
- 9 Both the secretary and her colleagues *are / is* going out for lunch at 12.00.
- 10 Neither the sharpshooter nor the police officers *see / sees* the potential terrorist.
- 11 Neither the ceiling nor the basement *need / needs* repairing soon.
- 12 Either the sailors or the ship owner *are / is* to argue with the captain.
- 13 Both the hired gun and the shipwrecks *are / is* after the same man.
- 14 Neither the manager nor his assistant *have / has* found the mistake yet.
- 15 Neither Jane's parents nor her sister *know / knows* where Jane has gone.

Exercise 56: Choose the correct verb forms to complete the sentences.

1 ____ 2 ____ 3 ____ 4 ____ 5 ____ 6 ____ 7 ____ 8 ____ 9 ____ 10 ____

- 1 Neither a vampire nor a werewolf is
- 2 Both the caretaker and his supervisor are
- 3 Either the president gives in to the Senate's demands,
- 4 Not only has the brat made fun of me,
- 5 Both the jury and the judge were
- 6 Either Jane's notes are incorrect,
- 7 Neither my mobile phone
- 8 Not only has the real estate agent sold the house at a profit,
- 9 Either the fireworks display will start immediately
- 10 Both the gorgeous girl's loving eyes and

- a) nor my calculator seem to be working right now.
- b) but he's also ridiculed me in front of my friends.
- c) her sweet lips were beyond the boy's imagination.
- d) killed as easily as a wizzard.
- e) or the visitors may be disappointed with the whole parade.
- f) convinced of the defendant's guilt.
- g) but she's also sold the couple a garage in the neighbourhood.
- h) or I must have miscalculated somewhere.
- i) going on holiday to Florida next month.
- j) or the country is going to face the biggest default in its modern history.

3 SINGLE-WORD SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Subordinating conjunctions (aka *subordinate conjunctions*, *subordinators*) are words and phrases that connect a subordinate (dependent) clause or an adjective or adverbial phrase to a superordinate (main) clause. The vast majority of subordinators usually occur in the initial position in subordinate clauses. As the definition suggests, a superordinate clause (aka independent clause) may stand on its own, and may thus not be attached to any other clause. A subordinate clause (aka dependent clause), by contrast, cannot occur without being joined to a superordinate clause.

Subordinators serve two important functions. First, they relate one clause to another, and thus provide a transition between the two ideas expressed in two different sentences. Second, subordinators reduce the subordinate clause—both syntactically and semantically—and thus point out which clause carries more weight and a stronger, more important message.

Unlike superordinate clauses which express the most essential information and form, as it were, the frame or forefront of the messages to be conveyed, subordinate clauses add details and background information to the main ideas. In essence, they provide the wider context and description for the ideas conveyed in the superordinate clauses, making references to time, manner, cause and effect, condition, contrast, purpose and comparison. Often, subordinators convey more than a single meaning at a time.

Morphological Classes of Subordinating Conjunctions

Most subordinating conjunctions represent single-word constructions (eg *after*, *before*, *lest*). This class holds by far the most common and most basic subordinators.

Apart from single-word subordinators, we distinguish the classes of multi-word subordinators, such as *insofar that*, *save that*, *in order that*, and correlative subordinators, for instance *as ... as*, *less ... than*, *barely ... when*.

As with so many extraordinary phenomena in English grammar, we can find vivid examples of words and phrases which cut across word classes and serve more than just their primary uses. Some of these language items, such as *yet*, *therefore*, *then*, may be attributed subordinating and/or subordinator-like meanings and uses. Then, they endorse the meanings of subordinating conjunctions proper and relate a subordinate clause to a superordinate one.

Punctuation in Subordination

If a subordinating conjunction occurs before a clause, the clause automatically becomes a subordinate clause (a (clause) fragment), and thus cannot stand on its own. Therefore, it needs to be connected to a superordinate clause. In this relationship, the subordinate clause may either precede or follow the superordinate clause.

a) Subordinating Clause + “,” + Superordinate Clause

A comma is used to separate the subordinate clause from the superordinate clause provided that the subordinate clause comes before the superordinate clause in the matrix clause construction.

- **After** you have finished your meal, come down to the living room.
- **Whilst** the managers were discussing the new policy, the PA was making some more coffee.

b) Superordinate Clause + Subordinating Clause

A comma is hardly ever, if at all, used to separate the subordinate clause from the superordinate clause when the superordinate clause precedes the subordinate clause in the matrix clause construction.

- Come down to the living room **after** you have finished your meal.
- The PA was making some more coffee **whilst** the managers were discussing the new policy.

3.1 After

The subordinating conjunction **after** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction refers to **a time later than another time**. It introduces actions and events which occur subsequently to the time mentioned.
 - *The stunt man had to endure a long period of therapies **after** he broke his leg.*
*Kaskadér musel zniesť dlhé obdobie terapií **potom, čo** si zlomil nohu.*
 - ***After** the graduate finished his studies, he took the first flight to the US and started a new life.*
***Potom, ako** absolvent doštudoval, nasadol na prvý let do USA a začal nový život.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *The CEO will have a look at the agenda **after** he returns from the conference.*
*Generálny riaditeľ si agendu pozrie **potom, ako** sa vráti z konferencie.*
- ***After** you come to the office, please be so kind as to open the windows for a few minutes.*
***Potom, čo** prídeš do kancelárie prosím otvor na chvíľu okná.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *after* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *The CFO will sign the documents **after** he **has returned** from his holiday in Switzerland.*
*Finančný riaditeľ podpíše dokumenty **potom, čo** sa vráti z dovolenky vo Švajčiarsku.*
- ***After** the UFO **had destroyed** our planet, it took off and continued its journey.*
***Potom, ako** ufo zničilo našu planétu, odletelo a pokračovalo vo svojej ceste.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

The subordinator can occur in clauses where both the subject and its verb are expressed.

- *Make sure to give us a call **after** you've finished the negotiation.*
***Po** skončení rokovania nám rozhodne zavolajte.*
- ***After** the dentist locked up, he went straight home.*
***Potom, ako** zubár zamkol, išiel rovno domov.*

Alternatively, *after* can readily occur in participial *ing*-clauses.

- *Make sure to give us a call **after finishing** the negotiation.*
***Po** skončení rokovania nám rozhodne zavolajte.*
- ***After locking up / having locked up**, he went straight home.*
***Potom, ako** zubár zamkol, išiel rovno domov.*

This use, however, is more characteristic of the written discourse as it sounds more formal and official than its subject-verb clause counterpart.

Exercise 57: Insert the conjunction *after* in the correct places in the sentences.

- 1 The successful manufacturer launched his latest tablet, all his competition became green with envy.
- 2 Spending half a day sunbathing, Sarah looks awesome.
- 3 The carpet was forgotten at the shop Mr Brown put it on the shelf.
- 4 The door fell off its hinges the angry guy kicked it.
- 5 The mice were

running around the house the tenants had left. 6 The director is going to announce some changes in the department he's returned from the business trip. 7 I read through the instructions on *after*, I didn't have any problems doing this exercise without making a single mistake. 8 Sending out the infomail, we received a few queries about the new layout of our website. 9 Do you usually sleep having lunch? 10 Coming back to the office, the supervisor found out that half the staff had already gone home. 11 The calculator stopped working the student changed the batteries. 12 removing the cover at the back, the whole cell phone fell apart. 13 Licking the envelope, the secretary started feeling a bit dizzy. 14 The complaints resolution officer got fed up with his colleagues handling a nasty complaint. 15 The clown had thrown the cake at them, his assistants ran away quickly.

Exercise 58: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 After returning to the hotel late last night the tourists found out it had already been closed for the night. 2 The sailors will spend five days in the harbour after coming back from their voyage. 3 After climbing up to the very top of the mountain the mountaineers were feeling rather exhausted. 4 Marc had the accident after he had left the dentist's. 5 After playing truant for a week the lad returned to school today. 6 After breaking the beautiful china vase the cleaning lady was feeling distressed. 7 Jo decided to do some overtime after her boss gave her a few black looks today. 8 After finishing lunch the mayor went to a convention. 9 After going over the books I can honestly say that you are about to face total bankruptcy in a matter of weeks. 10 The house collapsed after last night's heavy rainfall.

Exercise 59: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *after* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 No sooner had the maid cleaned the room than her master returned.

_____ .

2 First, the accountant saved his work and then he switched off his computer.

_____ .

3 Before the gate opened, the guard asked us who we were.

The gate _____ .

4 The gunman fell to the ground. Then, police officers surrounded him.

Police officers _____ .

5 Having prepared the presentation, the marketing manager went out for a short walk.

The marketing manager _____ .

6 The janitor had a look at the door and subsequently went down to the basement to check the pipes.

The janitor _____ .

7 No sooner had the police arrived than the thieves finished their business.

The thieves _____ .

8 The train left the station before I arrived.

I arrived _____.

9 Jane's mother sold her house. Afterwards, she moved in with her daughter in the capital.

Jane's mother _____.

10 No sooner had I answered the phone than my brother turned up the radio.

My brother _____.

Exercise 60: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Po otvorení fľaše spotrebujte produkt do štyroch dní. 2 Po skončení vyučovania odišli žiaci domov. 3 Cena ropy stúpla po vypuknutí občianskej vojny v krajine. 4 Tráva trochu narástla potom, čo výdatne zapršalo. 5 Potom, čo sa zápas skončil, udelili ceny víťazom. 6 Očakávam, že projekt bude pripravený na implementáciu, keď sa vrátim z konferencie. 7 Potom, čo si školáci urobili domáce úlohy, pozerali film. 8 Lekár pomáha chorej starenke potom, čo sa mu skončí smena. 9 Po mnohých rokoch biedy sa na dedinčanov konečne usmialo šťastie. 10 Poctiví nálezcovia peňaženky dostali od majiteľa odmenu potom, čo mu ju priniesli až domov. 11 Po promócií si moji priatelia našli zaujímavé a dobre platené pozície. 12 Potom, čo futbalista zamieril do sprchy, začal mu zvonit' mobil. 13 Potom, ako príde drevorubač z lesa, očakáva, že ho bude na stole čakať večera. 14 Po zotmení zaplavili ulice mladí oslavujúci ľudia. 15 Luxusné vily zhoreli do tla potom, ako oheň požiarnikov premohol.

3.2 Although

The subordinating conjunction **although** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces a **contrasting argument** which makes the main statement seem less true, likely or possible (Synonym: *despite the fact that*).
 - *They say the sales are to increase really soon **although** market research suggests otherwise. Povráva sa, že obrat by sa mal už čoskoro zvýšiť, **hoci** trhový prieskum hovorí čosi úplne iné.*
 - ***Although** the company has been around for over thirty years now, there's no guarantee it'll survive the financial downturn. **Aj keď** firma existuje už vyše tridsať rokov, neznamená to, že musí prekonať aj ekonomickú krízu.*
- 2 The conjunction introduces a **contrasting argument** which makes the main statement seem surprising, astonishing or amazing under the circumstances expressed (Synonym: *despite the fact that*).
 - *Mr Harker is quite an unhappy man **although** he's got all the money in the world. Pán Harker je veľmi nešťastný a to **aj napriek tomu, že** má všetky peniaze sveta.*
 - ***Although** the marketing department had been preparing for the campaign for over four months, it failed miserably. **Hoci** sa marketing na kampaň pripravoval vyše štyri mesiace, kampaň úplne pohorela.*

Language Note:

Although introduces an idea which is in contrast to the idea expressed in the main clause. Similarly, we may use *but* or *however* to express the same meanings.

- *The managers made the wrong decisions **although** they didn't mean to.*

*The managers made the wrong decisions, **but** they didn't mean to.*
*The managers made the wrong decisions. **However**, they didn't mean to.*
*The managers made the wrong decisions; **however**, they didn't mean to.*
*Manažéri urobili nesprávne rozhodnutia, **hoci** tak spraviť nechceli.*

- *The book turned out to be a romantic novel **although** it was supposed to be a thriller.*
*The book turned out to be a romantic novel, **but** it was supposed to be a thriller.*
*The book turned out to be a romantic novel. **However**, it was supposed to be a thriller.*
*The book turned out to be a romantic novel; **however**, it was supposed to be a thriller.*
*Z knihy je nakoniec romantický roman, **aj keď** to mal byť napínavý príbeh.*

The three sentences express the same meaning, ie contrast. The differences between the constructions are more morphological and syntactical than semantical.

While *but* is a coordinating conjunction which joins two independent clauses as well as two separate ideas, *however* is an adverb used to relate ideas but not grammatical constructions. Therefore, the adverb may start an independent clause or be separated from the previous clause by a semi-colon, not a comma though.

Exercise 61: Insert the conjunction *although* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The computer manufacturer has not sent us any specifications yet he's promised to deliver all the information by Monday. 2 The electronics firm is doing very well at the moment, it may get into trouble really soon. 3 Marc has not recovered from his illness fully, he decided to go to work tomorrow. 4 Mr and Mrs Handerson are going to retire by the end of the year they don't have any money to live on afterwards. 5 The exam didn't seem very difficult, no-one actually passed it. 6 The professor's explanation sounds reasonable, it is still wrong. 7 Jo didn't join us at the club last night she promised to hop in. 8 The boxer was tired, he continued fighting to the bitter end. 9 The company is running short of natural resources, it still intends to keep its deadlines. 10 The hungry cheetahs were lying in wait for their prey there was nothing in sight. 11 Modern appliances have made our lives easier in many a way, they also filled our lives with more tasks. 12 The white collar seems a bit greyish it's been washed in the best powder there is. 13 Henry's aim isn't as good as it used to be, he still did hit the target. 14 The monkeys at the zoo were lying around all day yesterday it wasn't hot at all. 15 The camera broke down it was brand new.

Exercise 62: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 Although the phone kept ringing for quite a while nobody answered it. 2 Miss Kinns was waiting outside although the bank had already closed for the day. 3 The priest had been preaching for over ten minutes although there was nobody in the church. 4 The parents punished their little boy although he didn't do anything wrong. 5 Although Tom has forgotten to do his homework the teacher did not find out. 6 Although the pig ran fast it could not escape its faith. 7 Although it was quite warm for winter it was still rather chilly. 8 Aunt Dora will be staying at a hotel although she could have bunked in with us. 9 The siblings decided to take a shortcut through the woods although they knew it was dangerous. 10 Although the glasses fell down they did not break.

Exercise 63: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *although* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Even though the mayor kept his promises, he won't get re-elected.

The mayor _____ .

2 The mine workers don't make much money though they are very hard-working.

The mine workers _____ .

3 Despite the fact that the sheep got eaten by a wolf, the shepherd did not get into any trouble at all.

_____ .

4 My brother took the cake, but it was I who got into trouble.

_____ .

5 However fast the thief was running, the police officer was still closing in on him.

The police officer _____ .

6 The journalists did their work extremely well. Still, the paper didn't sell well.

The paper _____ .

7 A bomb exploded in the city centre last Friday. Fortunately, nobody got hurt.

_____ .

8 The defendant must have committed the murder. Nevertheless, he was acquitted.

The defendant _____ .

9 The bartender dropped about a dozen plates. Fortunately, he didn't cut himself.

The bartender _____ .

10 Even though it had been snowing heavily the whole weekend, the children had to go to school.

The children _____ .

Exercise 64: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Hoci sa prázdniny minulý týždeň skončili, väčšina našich žiakov ešte do školy neprišla. 2 Železné vedro sa prederavilo, aj keď sme ho používali len dva týždne. 3 Počítač bude sťahovať súbory ešte pár minút, hoci je úplne nový. 4 Aj keď sa rodičia nehádali, počas obeda bolo cítiť napätie. 5 Premiér má dnes večer prehovoriť k národu, hoci nemá žiadne nové informácie. 6 Aj keď zemetrasenie zničilo mnohé budovy v meste, nikto sa nezranil. 7 Predavačka si zákazníkov nevšíma, hoci je za to platená. 8 Aj keď obchod vyhorel, jeho majiteľ nič nestratil. 9 Hoci manželia šetria na dovolenku celý rok, ešte stále nemajú dosť nato, aby si ju mohli dovoliť. 10 Aj keď sme nič nekúpili, obed sme mali zadarmo. 11 Hoci sa technik v problematike nevyznal, dokázal sa rýchlo zorientovať. 12 Aj keď nájomníci tento mesiac nájomné nezaplatili, prenajímateľ im nič nepovedal. 13 Hoci je slnečno, teplo iste nie je. 14 Okoloidúci si noviny nezobral, hoci boli zadarmo. 15 V práci ma vždy volali Marc, aj keď sa volám Andrej.

3.3 As

The subordinating conjunction **as** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **the reason** for something (Synonyms: *because, since, considering that, given*).
 - *The entrepreneurs shook hands first **as** it is a customary greeting among businesspeople.*
*Podnikatelia si najskôr podali ruky, **pretože** sa tak obchodníci obvykle zdravia.*
 - ***As** the company found itself on the verge of bankruptcy, the owners decided to sell it.*
***Keďže** sa spoločnosť ocitla na pokraji krachu, sa majitelia rozhodli predat' ju.*

Language Note 1:

This use is especially common in rather formal registers. In less formal contexts, *because* and *so* are more natural.

- *The entrepreneurs shook hands first **because** it is a customary greeting among businesspeople.*
*Podnikatelia si najskôr podali ruky, **pretože** sa tak obchodníci obvykle zdravia.*
- *It was raining heavily, **so** the children had to stay inside.*
*Husto pršalo, **takže** deti museli zostať vo vnútri.*

Language Note 2:

The conjunction is used in situations when the listener or reader already knows the reason because it has already been conveyed or simply because it's self-evident.

- ***As** it was raining heavily, the children had to stay inside.*
***Keďže** husto pršalo, deti museli zostať vo vnútri.*
- ***As** the gambler had lost all his money already, he couldn't continue playing anymore.*
***Vzhľadom na to, že** hazardný hráč už prehral všetky peniaze, nemohol pokračovať v hre.*

In these cases, *as*-clauses usually come before their main clauses as they do not convey the most essential or new information (given-new agreement property of discourse).

- 2 The conjunction establishes that **two or possibly more actions or events occur simultaneously or almost simultaneously** (Synonyms: *while, whilst, at the same time*).
 - *The stockbroker saw me **as** I was entering the courtroom.*
*Maklér videl, **ako** som vchádzal do súdnej siene.*
 - ***As** the accomplice was sitting in the getaway car, his two friends were robbing the bank.*
***Kým** komplic sedel v aute, jeho dvaja priatelia vykrádali banku.*
- 3 The conjunction establishes that **two or possibly more actions or events at the same instant** (Synonym: *when*).
 - *The new CEO walked in **as** his predecessor left.*
*Nový generálny riaditeľ vošiel **v okamihu, keď** jeho predchodca odišiel.*
 - ***As** the secretary threw away the papers, her boss asked her where she had put them.*
*Šéf sa sekretárky spýtal, kam dala tie papiere, ktoré **práve** vyhodila.*
- 4 The conjunction introduces **a contrasting argument** (Synonyms: *although, though, albeit, but, however, despite the fact that*). In this use *as* follows an adjective or adverb to suggest that an action or event is true, correct or possible despite what has just been said.
 - *Weak **as** he may look, the young fighter is a strong and resilient adversary.*
***Aj keď** sa zdá, že mladý bojovník je slabý, v skutočnosti je silný a húževnatý protivník.*
 - *Strange **as** it was, the uneducated butcher could keep up with the professor on every topic that came up in the knowledge game show.*
***Hoci** to bolo zvláštne, nevzdelaný mäsiar dokázal držať krok s profesorom pri každej téme,*

ktorá sa vo vedomostnej súťaži vyskytla.

Language Note:

Unlike *although* which expresses a neutral contrast, *as* conveys an emphatic contrast.

5 The conjunction expresses **resemblance** (Synonyms: *in the same way as, like*).

- *George Bush Jr. became a US president, (just) as his father had done years before him. George Bush mladší sa stal americkým prezidentom, rovnako ako jeho otec niekoľko rokov pred ním.*
- *As is often the case with criminals, Chris Brown continued breaking the law after he had been released from prison. Ako to už často býva so zločincami, Chris Brown pokračoval v porušovaní zákona potom, čo ho prepustili z väzenia.*

Exercise 65: Insert the conjunction *as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 It's really late, why don't we call it a night for today already? 2 The teenager boys were having a good time they were dancing the night away. 3 We entered the reception, a young lady called on us. 4 Healthy you are, you are not invincible. 5 Knowing her I do, she's definitely going to apply for the vacancy. 6 The fish are starting to fry in the rivers temperatures continue to rise. 7 I was saying, if the exports do not go up this year, we are likely to face financial problems next year. 8 Miss Helings went first she came first. 9 The pretty girl gets more and more beautiful she grows older. 10 Angry the parents were, they wouldn't hit their only child. 11 The shop assistant was walking around the shop helping the customers, somebody took her purse. 12 James has already said: 'No good deed goes unpunished.' 13 The junior manager withdrew her new proposal the COO wanted to steer a different direction. 14 The ship was sinking, the captain was making an emergency call. 15 With most young people, Alen is impatient and hot-headed.

Exercise 66: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 As the executive lost her staff's confidence she decided to quit. 2 The travellers were sleeping as it started to rain. 3 As the politician entered the room everybody went silent. 4 As you wish I will make everything ready for the meeting. 5 As the airport shut down the others had to deal with their plans as well. 6 Our next-door neighbours got arrested last week as they were selling guns illegally. 7 The king called his servant as he wanted to go out for a walk. 8 As the sun went down it got very dark. 9 The poor family had to sell their house just as their parents thirty years ago. 10 They won't be attending the meeting as they are in Massachusetts.

Exercise 67: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 While the stenographer was taking notes fast, the speakers kept addressing the issues.

The speakers _____.

2 Like David has already said, we won't find any partners if we don't not make some compromises.

_____.

3 The president will fly down to the areas most affected by the superstorm because he wants to see the scale of destruction in Colorado for himself.

The president _____.

4 The new exec has arrived at a dead end, just like his predecessor.

The new exec _____.

5 The giant is very strong, but he can't beat the mighty demon king.

_____.

6 The police officer noticed a robbery in progress while he was walking past the building.

The police officer _____.

7 When the banker stood up fast, he lost his footing and fell down.

_____.

8 Like I was saying, no pain, no gain.

_____.

9 Although the city centre is very old, it's still beautiful.

_____.

10 When the paramedics came closer, they found two badly hurt women sitting in the car.

_____.

Exercise 68: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ako sa termín viac a viac blížil, začínali študenti pociťovať menšiu nervozitu. 2 Ako pán povedal, vojnu bez armády nevyhráš. 3 Viceprezident má dnes večer v televízii oznámiť dôležité správy, pretože kabinet dospel k rozhodnutiu. 4 Ako to vo vojnách vždy býva, skutočného víťaza nebolo. 5 Hoci boli výrobcovia vína šťastní, svoje sklamanie z pána Dona nedokázali skryť. 6 Tak, ako som polievku pripravil, si nedokážem vysvetliť, že je presladená. 7 Tento rok, rovnako ako v pominulých rokoch, sa bude futbalový šampionát konať v hlavnom meste. 8 Dr. Brown sa presťahoval do hlavného mesta rovnako, ako mnohí jeho priatelia. 9 Keďže už bolo príliš neskoro na zastavenie útoku, generál si sadol a dal si pohár vína. 10 Keď lietadlo pristávalo, jeden motor začal horieť a vybuchol. 11 Domy bude treba zbúrať, pretože už nie sú bezpečné. 12 Hoci bola tma, na cestu domov sme si stále videli. 13 Účtovník mi dal kúsok papiera, keď som išiel do kancelárie. 14 Ako som sa pokúšal vysvetliť, nie som odborník na biológiu. 15 Napriek tomu, že dieťa bolo choré, zápas si chcelo pozrieť.

3.4 Because

The subordinating conjunction **because** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction shows **the reason why** something happens or why something is described in a particular way (Synonyms: *as, since, on this/that account*).
 - *The hardware manufacturer's revenue has gone through the roof this year **because** he's managed to keep pace with the latest technology.*

Výnosy výrobcu hardvéru sa tento rok výrazne zvýšili, **pretože** sa mu podarilo udržať krok s najnovšou technológiou.

- The management have decided to relocate the company's HQ to Dallas **because** the new premises are much less pricey.
Manažment sa rozhodol presťahovať centrálu spoločnosti do Dallasu, **lebo** nové priestory sú oveľa lacnejšie.

2 The conjunction can also be used to form *because*-clauses which stand on their own, especially as replies or sentences expressing hesitation.

- A: *Why don't you want to sell your shares?*
B: **Because** I believe in the management and I know the company can become successful once again.
A: *Prečo nechcete predat' svoje akcie?*
B: **Pretože** verím v manažment firmy a viem, že spoločnosť sa môže opäť stať úspešnou.
- *I don't think you can actually master the skills. ... Hmm, **because** it's really difficult and it takes a lot of patience which you don't have, unfortunately.*
*Nemyslím si, že by sa ti mohlo podariť osvojiť si tieto zručnosti. ... Hmm, **lebo** je to skutočne ťažké a treba na to veľa trpezlivosti, ktorá tebe, žiaľ, chýba.*

Exercise 69: Insert the conjunction *because* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 It started raining we stayed at home. 2 I'm afraid I can't come to your ceremony I will be away that week. 3 Some students didn't pass their exams they didn't study hard. 4 The operator is likely to increase its monthly fees the whole network needs to be modernised. 5 Jo is going to visit his uncle in the countryside she needs some good advice. 6 The machines will never stop working our janitor takes good care of them. 7 The technician needs to take a day off he's been feeling under the weather lately. 8 I haven't seen him all day. 9 Jeff is to hold the presentation on Friday afternoon the CFO couldn't make it earlier. 10 He tried to lie to his supervisor, he's going to get sacked. 11 The children were happy once they were so innocent. 12 The angry hockey player kicked the referee in the knee he did not agree with his decision. 13 You told me to sod off. 14 The computer company went bust nobody paid attention to the bills. 15 The kitchen is a total mess the cooks have not cleaned it up yet.

Exercise 70: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *because* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The great pyramid can't be moved even a single inch as it's too heavy to lift.

The great pyramid _____.

2 Most people are wearing warm clothes these days. You see, it's got rather cold lately.

Most people _____.

3 Michael has given up all hope of ever finding true love since he's never had any luck with girls.

Michael _____.

4 Our English teacher makes us read all sorts of English novels. She wants us to be well educated.

Our English teacher _____.

5 The brass band has won loads of prizes over the years. Their music is really awesome.

The brass band _____.

6 Mr Petmat and Ms Hudlil are going to get married soon since they want to spend their whole life together.

Mr Petmat and Ms Hudlil _____.

7 The huge bear killed the rabbit given that it was so hungry.

The huge _____.

8 The miser hid his money away from his family, so that nobody but him could find it.

The miser _____.

9 The exhibition will have to be postponed due to an unfortunate accident in the hall.

The exhibition _____.

10 The evil wizard cannot be defeated given his overwhelming magical powers.

The evil wizard _____.

Exercise 71: Complete the sentences using *because* or *although*.

- 1 The truck driver has been yawning all the time *because* / *although* he didn't sleep well last night.
- 2 The bidders didn't buy the paintings *because* / *although* they were quite inexpensive, yet beautiful.
- 3 Jane's cottage burned down *because* / *although* somebody left the oven on.
- 4 The family decided to take the children to the zoo *because* / *although* it's been a lovely day today.
- 5 The applicant didn't get the job *because* / *although* he was well-qualified.
- 6 My girlfriend got really mad with me *because* / *although* I didn't remember her birthday.
- 7 Your cat is too fat *because* / *although* you're feeding it too much.
- 8 The nurse doesn't speak a single word Spanish *because* / *although* she's lived in Spain for two years now.
- 9 Ruth quit smoking a long time ago *because* / *although* her best friend died of lung cancer.
- 10 I got punished *because* / *although* I hadn't done anything wrong.

Exercise 72: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Expedícia vyšla na výbornú, lebo horolezci sa starostlivo pripravili na všetko, čo ich len mohli postihnúť.
- 2 Práve teraz nemôžem manažérke zavolať, pretože nemám jej číslo.
- 3 Pytliak sa nemohol dostať ďaleko, lebo si poranil pravú nohu.
- 4 O týchto záležitostiach by sme sa nemali teraz rozprávať, lebo nikto z nás presne nevie, čo sa deje.
- 5 Lebo som nemal chuť prísť do práce.
- 6 Približne 223.000 ľudí zomiera každoročne na rakovinu, ktorú dostanú, pretože dýchajú znečistený vzduch.
- 7 Auto nám ukradli, pretože si ho nezamkol.
- 8 Maloobchodník mal menšie technické problémy, lebo stratil spojenie so svojím serverom.
- 9 Nemôžeme Vám vrátiť žiadne peniaze, pretože neexistuje žiaden dôkaz, že ste tovar skutočne kúpili.
- 10 Lebo som si nechal tašku doma.
- 11 Potrubie sa už nedá opraviť, pretože je jednoducho príliš staré.
- 12 Počítač prestal fungovať, pretože dostal smrtiaci vírus.
- 13 Niektorí hostia sa trochu vzdialili, lebo si chceli vziať viac koláčov.
- 14 Henryho pacienti rýchlo odišli, pretože im Henry povedal, aby vypadli.
- 15 Známa románopisečka na stretnutie nepríde, pretože sa dnes podrobí plastickej operácii.

3.5 Before

The subordinating conjunction **before** is used in the following ways:

1 The conjunction refers to **a time earlier than another time**. It introduces actions and events which occur sooner than the time mentioned.

- *The astronaut had to undergo a very hard training **before** he was allowed to go into space.*
*Astronaut musel podstúpiť veľmi tvrdý tréning **skôr, než** mohol letieť do vesmíru.*
- ***Before** the equipment was delivered to our premises, it had to be ordered and paid for.*
***Predtým, než** zariadenie dodali do našich priestorov, sme si ho museli objednať a zaplatiť.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *We will meet you ten minutes **before** the meeting starts.*
*Stretneme sa desať minút **pred** začiatkom stretnutia.*
- ***Before** the guidebook is published, it needs to be reviewed by a professional linguist.*
***Skôr, ako** príručku vydáme, ju musí skontrolovať odborný jazykovedec.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *before* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *Our business partner agreed to the terms **before** I had finished my presentation.*
*Náš obchodný partner súhlasil s podmienkami **prv, než** som ukončil svoju prezentáciu.*
- ***Before** you have made your beds, you can't go out and play, children.*
***Skôr, než** si neusteliete, sa nemôžete ísť hrať von, deti.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

The subordinator can occur in clauses where both the subject and its verb are expressed.

- *Please, discuss everything with the surgeon in detail **before** you make a decision.*
*Prosím, o všetkom sa podrobne porad' s chirurgom **predtým, ako** sa rozhodneš.*
- ***Before** the mayor declined our proposal, he considered it carefully.*
***Prv, ako** primátor zamietol náš návrh, starostlivo ho zvážil.*

Alternatively, *before* can readily occur in participial *ing*-clauses.

- *Please, discuss everything with the surgeon in detail **before** making a decision.*
*Prosím, o všetkom sa podrobne porad' s chirurgom **predtým, ako** sa rozhodneš.*
- ***Before** declining our proposal, the mayor considered it carefully.*
***Prv, ako** primátor zamietol náš návrh, starostlivo ho zvážil.*

This use, however, is more characteristic of the written discourse as it sounds more formal and official than its subject-verb clause counterpart.

2 The conjunction introduces **actions and events which don't happen** as they are prevented from coming true.

- *Let's escape right now **before** the wardens notice anything.*
*Ujdime hneď teraz **skôr, než** si dozorcovia niečo všimnú.*
- *The managers made the deal with Larson Ltd. **before** they even heard what we had to offer.*

Manažéri sa dohodli s firmou Larson Ltd. ešte **predtým, než** si vypočuli, čo sme im my mohli ponúknuť.

Exercise 73: Insert the conjunction *before* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The plane will have taken off we have reached the airport if you keep lingering. 2 The transfer was made, our partner made sure we were both trustworthy and could pay the debt back. 3 Jim hopped in he actually knew where we were heading to. 4 The painter met his master, he used a very simple painting style. 5 Clean up the office the supervisor sees what you've been doing around here. 6 You should seek legal advice answering any more questions. 7 She took off with her sweetheart, she left a short note addressed to her husband. 8 The soldiers are going to charge the enemy is ready to defend himself. 9 The applicant hasn't spoken to anybody turning up at the interview. 10 Watering the plants, the maid dusted the furniture. 11 It was two hours Mr and Mrs Harkins made it to the city centre. 12 The doctoral student read a book on thesis writing and numerous essays starting his own project. 13 The bomb exploded in the square, there was a shooting. 14 You'd better shut up now the good doctor loses her temper. 15 Twenty years went by the squire realised his step-son had lied to him.

Exercise 74: Rewrite the sentences using *-ing* constructions and the conjunction *before*. Beware, not all the sentences given can be reformulated.

1 Before they arrested the criminals, the police officers read them their rights.

_____ .

2 The janitor fixed the washbasin before his friend came over for dinner.

_____ .

3 The talented musician played a wonderful concert before he returned home to Texas.

_____ .

4 Before she showed us her VIP pass, Laura made a quick phone call to her sister.

_____ .

5 Before the Mexican dancer left the stage, the organiser congratulated him on his great performance.

_____ .

6 The owner of the slaughterhouse made a great deal before he passed down his business on his son.

_____ .

7 The marquee collapsed before the safety inspector could check it.

_____ .

8 Before they visited their grandparents in the countryside, the Simpsons made a pit stop at a McDees.

_____ .

9 The judge had made up his mind before he heard all the evidence.

_____ .

10 The exotic dancers had been rehearsing for a whole month before they made their first performance.

Exercise 75: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *before* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 First, the politician goes for a jog and then he drives to the office.

The politician _____.

2 Prior to opening the casket, the fearful lady looked around and made sure there was nobody there.

The fearful lady _____.

3 Barely had the butcher opened the shop when the first customers started flooding in.

The butcher _____.

4 By the time our train arrived at the station, the train to the capital had already left.

The train to the capital _____.

5 A sinister thought crossed the killer's mind. Afterwards, he put his plans into motion.

_____.

6 The kidnapper had been following the rich family for over three months. Subsequently, he made his move and took the young boy.

The kidnapper _____.

7 First, swear that you won't misuse the information and then you can start working on the project.

You can't _____.

8 The door blew shut. Then, the supervisor arrived.

The supervisor _____.

9 The pickpocket stole my wallet last week. Yesterday, he took my watch.

The pickpocket _____.

10 The company has run out of money. It can't even pay its staff now.

The company _____.

Exercise 76: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Skôr, ako som si kúpil nový počítač, poradil som sa s priateľom o technických údajoch. 2 Starý stroj prestal fungovať skôr, ako nám dodali nový. 3 Prv, než odídeš na dovolenku, nezabudni si nastaviť v emaily automatickú odpoveď. 4 Predtým, ako lupiči ušli z banky, zviazali strážnika a znefunkčnili bezpečnostný systém. 5 Rodičia museli ísť do školy skôr, ako sa pobrali do práce. 6 Prv, než ti vydám, daj mi celú sumu. 7 Maskovaní muži sa vkradli do obchodu skôr, než si vybrali z vetroviiek zbrane. 8 Počítač zamrzol skôr, než sa nám podarilo urobiť zálohu. 9 Prv, ako si kúpiš dom, nezabudni si nechať dobre skontrolovať. 10 Skôr, ako sa im podozrivý stratil, policajti zistili, kam to vlastne išiel. 11 Oblek sa zašpinil skôr, ako som si ho vôbec obliekol. 12 Predtým, než sa potopíte do takej hĺbky, radšej pre-

skúšajte všetky prístroje. 13 Skôr, ako sa presťahuješ do Kanady, si tam nájdi dobré zamestnanie. 14 Dvere sa zabuchli predtým, než návštevníci vyšli. 15 Mačiatka sa narodili skôr, ako prišiel zverolekár.

3.6 Directly

The subordinating conjunction *directly* is used in the following way:

1 The conjunction expresses **temporal immediacy** and suggests that one action or event occurs just moments after another (Synonyms: *as soon as, the moment that, the instant that*).

- *The committee will address more pressing issues **directly** they have discussed the latest political developments in the country.*
*Výbor sa bude zaoberať naliehavejšími otázkami **hneď**, ako prediskutuje najnovší politický vývoj v krajine.*
- ***Directly** the accountant was acquitted of embezzlement, he started looking for a new job.*
Ako náhle účtovníka zbavili viny z prenevery, začal si hľadať novú prácu.

Language Note:

The conjunction is used in formal registers only. It is more commonly encountered in British than American English.

Exercise 77: Insert the conjunction *directly* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 We have confirmed your payment, the products ordered will be sent away. 2 My trainer said he'd quit his job he got a better paid one. 3 The Prime Minister shall be contacted we receive any news. 4 The bartender finishes his studies, he wants to apply for a job in Florence. 5 The cat jumped on the table, the cook shouted at it. 6 Jane's colleagues are going to discuss the issue they've returned from lunch. 7 The plan shall be put into practice the CEO returns from his business trip. 8 The supervisor wants to have a word with you you've come back to work. 9 The smartphone stopped working the warranty had expired. 10 She fell to the ground, two men started running towards her. 11 The FBI agents dropped dead they breathed in the poisonous gas. 12 The phone line broke down, some men started knocking on the door. 13 The bomb was planted in the stadium, the terrorists started shooting all the people around them. 14 The patient made a phone call to her dentist she started having toothache. 15 The press conference had started, the front door was closed and no one else was allowed to enter.

Exercise 78: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *directly* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 As soon as the army left our village, everybody got extremely delighted.

Everybody got _____.

2 The Spanish inquisitor got charmed by the girl's seductive laughter the moment he looked at her.

The Spanish _____.

3 Master Brown shall attend to his studies the instant he's feeling better again.

Master Brown _____.

4 The old bus should be repaired as soon as the driver has finished the last round.

- The old bus _____.
- 5 The company assets need to be sold as soon as the CEO has signed the necessary documents.
The company assets _____.
- 6 The mayor left the meeting room the moment the meeting had finished.
The mayor _____.
- 7 The businessman wants to sign the contract as soon as it's ready.
The businessman _____.
- 8 The moment the prisoner made his escape, he broke into a house and stole all the jewellery.
The prisoner _____.
- 9 Jim's shop is to be sold at once the instant he's found a buyer.
Jim's shop _____.
- 10 Mr Martins can come in and take a seat as soon as Mr Lloyd's has left.
Mr Martins _____.

Exercise 79: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

- 1 The manager will be with you directly she's finished the call. 2 Directly the clouds disappear we can go out and have a picnic in the open. 3 Directly the sergeant major gives the command the left wing will form a line. 4 Donald's ducks will be exported to China directly they're old enough for transport. 5 Directly the FBI director has reviewed the case we will receive further information. 6 The hired gun retreated directly he had hit the target. 7 The PA cancelled the meeting directly she had received the bad news. 8 Directly Miss Bloomberg has spoken to the headteacher she will return to her classroom. 9 Directly the whistle-blower made the espionage techniques public he was hunted down by his very own colleagues. 10 The swordsman left the castle directly he was paid for his services.

Exercise 80: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Hneď, ako sa rokovanie skončilo, obchodní partneri odišli na spoločný obed. 2 Majiteľ firmy odletel do Ríma rovno potom, ako sa prevalila celá kauza. 3 Ťažko ranených vojakov operovali bezprostredne po ničivom útoku na základňu. 4 Poslanci si dali prestávku, ako náhle schválili rozpočet na budúci rok. 5 Bezprostredne po zrážke vlakov sa na miesto nehody dostavili záchranári. 6 Prezidenta EÚ letecky dopravili do Bruselu hneď, ako sa začali rokovania. 7 Prevádzkový riaditeľ odstúpil z funkcie hneď, ako sa zistilo, že zneužil svoje právomoci. 8 Zbrane hromadného ničenia budú zneškodnené, ako náhle podpíšu obe krajiny spoločnú dohodu. 9 Bezprostredne po chemickom útoku poslali Spojené štáty do krajiny jednotky dozerajúce na zachovávanie mieru. 10 Hneď, ako primátora zvolili do funkcie, začal robiť personálne zmeny. 11 Veliteľ základne zostal v tábore krátko potom, ako sa dozvedel o inšpekcii. 12 Materiál nám dodajú hneď, ako sa dostane na sklad. 13 Učiteľia dostanú zvýšenie platu hneď, ako

sa nájdú dostatočné financie. 14 Bezprostredne po zničení hlavného mesta zavládol v celej krajine chaos. 15 Ako náhle sa do ulíc pustili protestujúci, vláda začala s odborníkmi rokovať.

3.7 For

The subordinating conjunction *for* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction gives **the reason why** something happens or why something is described in a particular way (Synonyms: *because, as, since, on this/that account*).
 - *The terrified shoppers were silent, for they didn't want the terrorists to find them.*
Vystrašení nakupujúci boli ticho, pretože nechceli, aby ich teroristi našli.
 - *The king won't participate in the meeting, for he's dealing with an urgent family matter now.*
Kráľ sa na rokovani neúčastní, lebo práve rieši naliehavú rodinnú záležitosť.

Language Note:

Nowadays, *for* is usually used as a preposition, not a conjunction. This use has become rather obsolete over the past years and is, in fact, not common in modern English at all.

If, however, *for* is used to give reasoning, it is specifically reserved for formal registers and emphatic styles only.

Exercise 81: Insert the conjunction *for* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The company's latest smartphone became a flop, it was overpriced and definitely too slow. 2 Tim went a bit earlier home, he was feeling under the weather today. 3 The power plant blew up last week, there was nobody to take good care of its security. 4 The COO was fired, she tried to rip the company off on several occasions. 5 You can't use the software on this computer, it's outdated and not compatible anymore. 6 Some freedom fighters will remain close to the camp, they need to guard the weaponry. 7 The computer had to be restarted, it had to update the operating system. 8 The hardware manufacturer decided to leave the Asian market, the revenues did not cover the costs at all. 9 The famous actress took up golf and ping-pong, she needed to let off steam. 10 The racing driver was given a pay rise, the manager did not want to lose him to the competition. 11 A surgeon needs to take frequent breaks between operations, he needs to be perfectly fit when performing surgery. 12 The air conditioning stopped working, there was a power outage in the whole building. 13 The baker round the corner had to close his shop for good, he ran out of money last month. 14 I don't want to discuss the matter with anybody, it's very private. 15 The dressmaker has taken out a loan from the bank recently, he wanted to expand his business.

Exercise 82: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *for* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Mr Davidson will make the phone call next week because Ms Carlson will still be on holiday.

Mr Davidson _____.

2 The professor will deliver an extra lecture today as he won't be at university next week.

The professor _____.

3 The coffee machine should be fixed by Monday since the request was made two weeks ago.

The coffee machine _____ .

4 Mr Blooms told his secretary not to send anybody in. You see, he was expecting an important call.

Mr Blooms _____ .

5 The ants were marching to the anthill fast as it was starting to rain.

The ants _____ .

6 Laura's grandfather bought a brand new convertible given the fact that his old car kept breaking down all the time.

Laura's grandfather _____ .

7 The pharmacist may lose his job because he's sold dangerous medicine without prescription.

The pharmacist _____ .

8 The peace talks in the Middle East have been derailed due to political disagreement.

The peace talks _____ .

9 A train was derailed as a result of faulty information which was communicated to the railroad engineer.

A train _____ .

10 Many workers went away to look for work in the US as there were few working opportunities here.

Many workers _____ .

Exercise 83: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Young Master Davidson would like to study abroad, for he's fed up with local teachers. **since**

Young Master Davidson _____ .

2 Jane's bouquet looked really awesome, for she had it brought from the florist's on her wedding day. **because**

Jane's bouquet _____ .

3 The engine stopped working, for it had run out of oil. **after**

The engine _____ .

4 The masked man was hiding in the rose bushes, for he didn't want to be seen. **as**

The masked man _____ .

5 The movie star didn't want to make any more movies, for she'd already made a lot of money. **given**

The movie star _____ .

6 Martin's baby brother had to stay at home, for he was too young to go to the night club. **because**

Martin's baby brother _____ .

7 The china vase was blown into smithereens, for it was knocked down by a chubby kid. **since**

The china vase _____ .

8 The designer was forced to find a second job, for designing clothes couldn't keep his head above water any longer. **given**

The designer _____.

9 Nina's grandparents would like to travel around the world, for they got bored with their lives. **since**

Nina's grandparents _____.

10 Our users lost connection to the Internet, for the local CMTS suffered a power shortage. **as**

Our users _____.

Exercise 84: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Harlekýn nechcel vyrušiť svojho kolegu, pretože sa ešte nepripravil na vystúpenie. 2 Skúšku museli presunúť na neskôr, lebo niektorí herci ešte neprišli do divadla. 3 Modelka sa rozhodla schudnúť štyri kilá, lebo v nových plavkách chcela vyzerat' úchvatne. 4 Posledný náter je ešte stále vlhký, lebo stenu natreli len pred pol hodinou. 5 Trpazlík sa po ceste rozbil, pretože vodič prudko zabrzdil a trpazlík vyletel von oknom. 6 Milenci boli nešťastní, lebo dobre vedeli, že je to ich posledný deň. 7 Kravy a kozy boli na lúke až do večera, lebo sa tam pásli. 8 Život priemerných ľudí nie je nič pre hrdého princa, pretože on je zvyknutý na iný životný štýl. 9 Električka išla rýchlo, lebo mala päť minút meškanie. 10 On sedel v zadnej časti auta, pretože mu býva často zle. 11 Danova alergia je z roka na rok horšia a horšia, lebo hneď od začiatku nebral žiadne lieky. 12 Koláčiky mojej babičky sa rýchlo minuli, pretože boli veľmi chutné. 13 Michala tak rýchlo nepovýšia, pretože nie je riťolez. 14 Podmorské zemetrasenie vyvolalo obrovskú prívalovú vlnu, pretože bolo mimoriadne silné. 15 Zbor nacvičuje už aspoň mesiac každý večer dve hodiny, lebo chce vyhrať súťaž, ktorá sa bude konať o tri mesiace.

3.8 If

The subordinating conjunction **if** is used in the following ways:

1 The conjunction introduces **a condition or choice** occurring in the present or future. It conveys that a particular action or event can happen only after another action or event happens first (Synonyms: *imagine, provided, supposing, assuming that*).

- *The exhibition will be a great success if we work hard to make it an unforgettable experience.*
Výstava zožne veľký úspech, ak sa budeme snažiť a urobíme z nej nezabudnuteľný zážitok.
- *If the president gives in now, he will have to face an existential crisis in his own party.*
Ak prezident teraz ustúpi, budeme musieť čeliť existenčnej kríze v rámci vlastnej strany.

2 The conjunction introduces **an unreal or a hypothetical condition**, ie an action or event which does not exist now and is quite unlikely or impossible even, especially when referring to its results which tend to be imaginary (Synonyms: *provided, supposing, assuming that*).

- *The company could be solved if the managers acted right now.*
Spoločnosť by sa mohlo podariť zachrániť, ak by manažéri okamžite konali.
- *If the merchant sold his goods this week, he'd get a huge commission from Barnes & Co.*
Ak by kupec predal svoj tovar tento týždeň, dostal by od Barnes & Co. obrovskú províziu.

3 The conjunction introduces **a condition which occurred in the past** and points out that certain

actions and events may have existed or happened in the past but did not, or that the past might have been different in some ways, though it was not. This use applies to results of actions and events which might have been, but were not, in particular (Synonyms: *provided, suppose, supposing, imagine, assuming that*).

- *The funds might have been used more efficiently **if** the CFO had known about our situation. Finančné prostriedky sa mohli použiť efektívnejšie, **ak** by finančný riaditeľ o našej situácii vedel.*
- ***If** you had paid more attention to detail, you could have produced a magnificent campaign. **Ak** by ste boli dbali viac na detaily, mohli ste vytvoriť veľkolepú kampaň.*

4 The conjunction introduces **atemporal facts** which are always valid, true or right (Synonyms: *when, whenever, every time that*).

- *Ships usually go down **if** they have a leak that doesn't get fixed. Lode sa zvyčajne potopia, **ak** majú trhlinu, ktorú nikto neopraví.*
- ***If** you put paper on fire, it burns. **Keď** položíte papier na oheň, horí.*

5 The conjunction introduces a **concession**, ie a contrasting argument which makes the main statement seem less true, likely or possible (Synonyms: *although, despite the fact that, however*). In this case, *if* is followed by an adjective.

- *The sales rep is a very responsible and hard-working, **if** a bit hot-headed young man. Obchodný zástupca je veľmi zodpovedný a pracovitý, **hoci aj** trochu horkokrvný mladík.*
- *The count has always been a generous, **if** weird friend of ours. Gróf nám bol vždy štedrým, **aj keď** čudným priateľom.*

Language Note 1:

This use occurs in formal registers only.

Language Note 2:

Unlike *although* which expresses a contrasting argument proper, *if* conveys the connotation that the topic on discussion is a matter of judgement, subjective opinion or is not very important.

6 The conjunction introduces a **choice between two possibilities** (Synonym: *whether*).

- *The priest inquired **if** the couple were married. Kňaz sa spýtal, **či** sú manželia.*
- ***If** you want to stay inside and watch the telly or go to the funfair, tell me now. **Či** už chcete zostať doma a pozerat' televíziu alebo ísť do zábavného parku, povedzte mi to hneď.*

7 The conjunction **admits a fact** by conveying a reason for the action or situation. This is especially common with something the listener/reader has already noticed.

- ***If** I come across too strict sometimes, it is because I honestly care about you. **Ak** niekedy vyznievam až príliš prísne, tak je to len preto, lebo sa o teba úprimne zaujímam.*
- ***If** the technical consultant looks a bit sleepy, it's because he's got three kids to take care of all by herself. **Ak** sa zdá, že je technická konzultantka trochu ospalá, tak je to len preto, lebo sa musí úplne sama postarať o tri deti.*

8 In some situations, the conjunction is used to suggest that although an action or event may happen or become true, another action or event will remain unchanged (Synonyms: *even if, although*).

- *The mayor won't give in to your demands **if** you are the most influential person on Earth. Primátor neustúpi Vaším požiadavkám, **ani keď** ste najvplyvnejším človekom na Zemi.*

- *I wouldn't let you marry my daughter **if** you were the last man in the world.*
*Nedovolil by som ti vziať si moju dcéru za ženu, **ani ak** by si bol posledný muž na svete.*

9 The conjunction is often used with an extra *not*-negative which is inserted in the *if*-clause to stress that **the action or event is surprising, astonishing or amazing**. This is especially the case when we wish to **express doubt or uncertainty**.

- *I wonder **if** the marketing analyst shouldn't be promoted to marketing manager.*
*Rozmýšľam, **či** by sme nemali povýšiť marketingového analytika na manažéra.*
- *Right, **if** that isn't the dumbest idea I've heard all day!*
*Dobre, **ak** toto už nie je tá najhlúpejšia vec, ktorú som za celý deň počul!*

Language Note:

This use is most typically encountered in informal registers, especially the spoken discourse.

10 The conjunction *if* may be used together with *then* to emphasise that one thing depends on another.

- ***If** we suffer a defeat now, **then** we will have to return home shamefully.*
***Ak** teraz utrpíme porážku, **potom** sa budeme musieť vrátiť domov s hambou v tvári.*
- ***If** she won't come to her senses, **then** I suppose we have no other choice but to restrain her.*
***Ak** nedostane rozum, **tak** myslím, že nemáme na výber a budeme ju musieť držať pod kontrolou.*

Exercise 85: Insert the conjunction *if* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The bus driver would have stopped the bus she had seen you running at the back. 2 The cowboy made more money, he could afford to buy a better car. 3 I sometimes behave a little weird, it's 'cos I am a little weird. 4 The landlord won't sell the house you offer him a million dollars. 5 That wasn't the silliest remark I've heard all day! 6 The skyscraper won't collapse on its own, then we'll have to help it. 7 The taxi driver asked we had enough money to pay for the ride. 8 The old lady won't die some time soon, then you'll have to take care of her, Dave. 9 The bacon is left unguarded, the dogs will have their way with it. 10 The tombstone will decay fast no one takes care of it properly. 11 The children don't tell us the truth right away, they'll get grounded for a fortnight at least. 12 The table as well as the antique chairs had to be sold the tenants wanted to keep a roof above their heads. 13 The investigator asks you anything, tell him nothing, nothing at all. 14 The story, a bit unusual, is the truth and nothing but the truth. 15 I'm not mistaken, the airport should be somewhere to the left.

Exercise 86: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 If you work hard you'll be rewarded accordingly. 2 The farmers won't take part in the contest this year if they've got nothing to win. 3 The young princess would become queen if her older sister died in a tragic accident. 4 If the merchant sold all the goods he'd be the richest man far and wide. 5 If you had ordered the pizza when I told you to it would have been delivered already. 6 If a wooden cottage catches fire it burns to the ground within a few minutes. 7 The old cat is a cute if lazy little thing. 8 Tell us if the ceremony went as you had expected it to. 9 If the prisoners are sometimes agitated and rude it is only because they miss their friends and family. 10 The CFO cannot undo the mistakes they caused if he tried hard to settle the issues with our contractors. 11 I wonder if the tapestry has been put

up again. 12 If mermaids really did live in the past then there has to be some proof of their existence.

Exercise 87: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *if* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Unless the terrorists give up and surrender, they will all be shot dead.

The terrorists _____ .

2 The President did not give in to the Republicans' demands although they remained strong-minded.

The President _____ .

3 I'm interested to see whether there will ever be a change in Jane's behaviour towards us.

I'm interested _____ .

4 When you touch a hot pipe, you'll burn yourself.

You'll _____ .

5 Should the marathon be postponed, the mayor will have to explain the reasons for such a decision.

The mayor _____ .

6 I wonder whether I should tell my supervisor about the invoices or not.

I wonder _____ .

7 The workers will never get higher salaries unless they start working harder.

The workers _____ .

8 Just suppose you were in my shoes, what would you do?

What _____ ?

9 Could the troops have won the battle had we not interfered?

Could the troops _____ ?

10 My next-door neighbour would be willing to lend us the money provided we sign an IOU.

My next-door neighbour _____ .

Exercise 88: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If you had bought a high-end router, we wouldn't be having these constant interruptions. **had**

We wouldn't _____ .

2 I'd buy you a new house if I won the lottery. **providing**

I'd buy _____ .

3 If the fighter doesn't win the match, he won't get any prize money. **unless**

The fighter _____ .

4 Master Dings wouldn't quit his studies if the world was teetering on the brink of extinction. **even if**

Master Dings _____ .

- 5 The technical advisor asked me if I was going to attend the conference on Friday. **whether**
The technical advisor _____ .
- 6 The whole situation, if somewhat complicated, was solved easily by the detectives. **though**
The whole situation _____ .
- 7 If you can't retrieve the stolen goods by Friday, then the mob shall wreak havoc in the city. **unless**
The mob _____ .
- 8 If you put wood on water, it floats. **every time**
_____ .
- 9 The gardener inquired if my little daughter was feeling better again. **whether**
The gardener _____ .
- 10 If I see the man again, I will give you a call. **should**
_____ .

Exercise 89: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ak sa rukojemníkom niečo stane, väzni na úteku sa nebudú mať kam otočiť. 2 Ak by si bol bežec vytkol členok, nebol by býval schopný pokračovať v pretekoch. 3 Posol by nám nebol oznámil správy tak náhle, ak by vedel, že nás tak veľmi zarmútia. 4 Ak už to nebolo groteskné predstavenie! 5 Ak by tvoja kamarátka bola dodržala slovo, nelietal by si teraz v týchto problémoch. 6 Ak sa Vám zdalo, že počasie je v poslednej dobe trochu pochmúrne, tak je to preto, lebo dni sa skracujú. 7 Predaj sa konečne začína vzmáhať, hoci aj trochu pomaly. 8 Ak aj učiteľ vyznieva z času na čas až trochu príliš prísne, je to len preto, lebo je veľmi usilovný a ctíziadostivý. 9 Ak tieto chemikálie zmiešame, získame výbušnú tekutinu. 10 Hotelový manažér sa rozhodol spolupracovať s políciou, hoci by mohol poslať aj vlastného syna do väzenia. 11 Ak už nebude žiaden vzduch, oheň vyhasne. 12 Ak sa voda zohreje na 100 stupňov Celsia, zmení sa na paru. 13 Veľmi sa ospravedlňujem, ak som Vás vyrušil. 14 Marek je vynikajúci odborník, aj keď je niekedy trochu prchký. 15 Ak by som bol tebou, tak by som tú prácu prijal.

3.9 Immediately

The subordinating conjunction *immediately* is used in the following way:

- The conjunction shows that an action or event occurs **shortly after** another action or event. It also indicates that there is no or almost no delay between the two situations. (Synonyms: *as soon as, the moment that, the instant that, the second that*).
 - The contract will be signed **immediately** the parties have agreed on the price.*
*Zmluva sa podpíše **hneď**, ako sa strany dohodnú na cene.*
 - Immediately** the managing director had gone away on holiday, the staff took a very relaxed attitude to work.*
***Krátko potom**, čo generálny riaditeľ odišiel na dovolenku, zaujali zamestnanci mimoriadne uvoľnený postoj k práci.*

Language Note:

Immediately is seldom used as a conjunction in modern English. If it is used in this way, it is by far more common in British English, though it has been on decline in this variety of English for quite some time now as well.

Exercise 90: Insert the conjunction *immediately* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The hunter approached the deer, it ran away in fear. 2 We will notify you we have received any news. 3 Mr and Mrs Donalds got married the found out they were going to have a baby. 4 The castle will be closed due to repairs the constructor says he's ready to start with the reconstruction. 5 The carpenter had heard the news, he got on the phone and called his brother. 6 The press shall be informed the killer has been arrested. 7 I'll call you I hear anything new. 8 The US marshal had caught the dealer, he started to boss his friends around. 9 The wedding had finished, the guests went out for lunch. 10 The PR rep will get in touch with you we receive the data. 11 The hospital had burned down, the head surgeon disappeared into thin air. 12 The fraidy cat jumped out of the window he heard some noise downstairs. 13 My hairdresser gave me a great discount he had heard that I was having financial problems. 14 The shooting had started, people ran out of the store and took shelter in the streets. 15 The poucher hid in the bushes he heard the rangers approaching.

Exercise 91: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *immediately* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 As soon as we heard the news, we headed back for Alberta.

We headed _____.

2 The knight in the shining armour came to our rescue the moment he heard us cry for help.

The knight _____.

3 The instant the bridge had collapsed, thousands of people fell into the icy river along with their cars.

Thousands of people _____.

4 When I see Martin, I'll tell him you're looking for him.

I'll tell Martin _____.

5 The crowd dispersed the instant the shooting began.

The crowd _____.

6 The cargo was confiscated as soon as it reached the border.

The cargo _____.

7 The evil witch lost her power the moment her spell was broken.

The evil witch _____.

8 When the cab exploded, several pedestrians called the police.

Several pedestrians _____.

9 The moment I find your glasses, I'll give you a call.

I'll _____.

10 The apron caught fire the instant you had warned the chef not to put it too close to the oven.

The apron _____.

Exercise 92: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Immediately the plane caught fire, the captain called the tower. **as soon as**

The captain _____.

2 The mutated ants rebelled immediately they noticed they were stronger than their master. **the instant**

The mutated ants _____.

3 The door blew shut immediately you opened the window. **the second**

The door _____.

4 Mr Handricks fired the gun immediately he heard the cries. **the moment**

Mr Handricks _____.

5 Immediately the computer had shut down, I knew I was never going to retrieve the data. **the moment**

_____.

6 The bookseller told me about the new novel immediately he got his hands on it. **as soon as**

The bookseller _____.

7 Immediately the mouse stopped working, the staff called the tech department to have it replaced.

The staff _____.

8 The brand new laptop crashed immediately I'd installed the first app. **the second**

The brand new laptop _____.

9 The kids started to cram for the contest immediately their teacher had told them about it. **as soon as**

The kids _____.

10 Immediately I hear what's going on, I'll let you know for sure. **when**

_____.

Exercise 93: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Hneď, ako sa dozvieme niečo nové, dáme Vám vedieť. 2 Močiar začal vysychať hneď, ako v okolí začali s plánovanou výstavbou domov. 3 Akonáhle sa učiteľ otočil žiakom chrbtom, začali sa veselo rozprávať. 4 Lin odcestovala do Spojených štátov hneď, ako sa dozvedela, že jej snúbenec ochorel. 5 Len, čo sa minister dozvedel o predražených obchodoch, prepustil zodpovedných zamestnancov. 6 Výrobu zastavili akonáhle sa zistilo, že chýbajú financie potrebné na chod továrne. 7 Krátko po rokovaní odišli partneri z rokovacej sály. 8 Bezprostredne po prezidentovej smrti sa ujal vedenia krajiny viceprezident. 9 Len, čo búrka ustala, vyšli námorníci na palubu. 10 Úver musíme splatiť hneď, ako dostaneme dôchodok. 11 Požiar vypukol krátko po príchode odborníka. 12 Len, čo sa farár dopyčul

o problémoch rodiny, rozhodol sa jej pomôcť. 13 Administrátor zablokoval prístup užívateľom na platformu akonáhle zistil, že niektoré účty boli skompromitované. 14 Vedúci dal kúpiť novú tlačiareň hneď, ako sa do počul, že stará už nefunguje. 15 Účtovník si položil hodinky na stôl, akonáhle vkročil do miestnosti.

3.10 Lest

The subordinating conjunction **lest** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction is used to state something in order to **prevent an action or event from coming true**. The action or event to be prevented is usually unpleasant, annoying or irritating (Synonyms: *in case that, for fear that, so that ... not, in order that ... not*).
 - *The troops marched to the river **lest** the enemy should overtake them.*
*Vojaci pochodovali k rieke **pre prípad, že** ich nepriateľ predbehne.*
 - *The staff didn't say anything about the supervisor's ill conduct **lest** they suffered his wrath afterwards.*
*Zamestnanci nepovedali nič o nevhodnom správaní ich vedúceho, **aby** neskôr **nepocítili** jeho hnev.*

Language Note 1:

In modern English, the conjunction is mostly used in formal registers only, especially in the literary style. It is, however, rarely used in common speech or writing. It is by far most commonly encountered in older literature and in ceremonial language, eg sermons and political speeches.

Interestingly, the conjunction is a bit more common in formal American than British English.

Language Note 2:

The conjunction is always followed by subjunctive verb forms.

Exercise 94: Insert the conjunction *lest* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The spies did not dare talk louder the enemy should be listening to their conversation. 2 The maid was dusting the vases carefully she should break them. 3 The dancer left his pocket knife at home he caused an injury to one of his partners. 4 I feel almost glad not to have joined you at the party, I should have spoiled your fun. 5 The knight took great care to watch his step on the path he fell under an evil spell. 6 You forget! 7 The sick man was well aware of the fact that he ought to see a physician the illness wasn't a mere common cold. 8 It be thought that nobody could help you out, Mr Burns will always give you a helping hand. 9 Anyone should think that the issue was solved easily, let me remind you of the occurrences of August 20. 10 People were quite afraid of having taken pictures of themselves an evil spirit should rob them of their souls. 11 The murderers carried the corpse to the car quickly they somebody should see them. 12 The prime ministers be misinterpreted, the message was definitely a positive one. 13 The accused feared the court's ruling he be sent to prison. 14 I would not complain about the misunderstanding to the supervisor it be a personal matter. 15 The students are not to speak during the exam, they distract the others.

Exercise 95: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *lest* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The princess did not dare step out of her chamber for fear that she might get eaten by a dragon.

The princess _____.

2 The shop assistant won't give us a discount, so that he doesn't lose his job.

The shop assistant _____.

3 The witness did not come forth in case she'd get into trouble herself.

The witness _____.

4 Jim's co-worker turned up the radio in order not to miss his favourite show.

Jim's co-worker _____.

5 For fear that the water would get contaminated, it was checked on an hourly basis.

_____, it was checked on an hourly basis.

6 The lovers couldn't even write to each other in case their letters were intercepted by their parents.

The lovers _____.

7 Mrs Clarkson returned home to check up on her daughter in case she had fallen asleep again.

Mrs Clarkson _____.

8 Replicas of favourite tourist sights need to be built all over the world, so that tourists don't destroy the precious cultural heritage in a decade or so.

Replicas of favourite tourist sights _____.

9 For fear that the visitors might take away our children.

_____, our children.

10 The worried mother spent the whole night looking for her missing boy for fear that something bad had happened to him.

The worried mother _____.

Exercise 96: Rewrite the sentences using the words given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The blackmailers were all wearing pink lest the clergy should have changed his mind. **in case**

The blackmailers _____.

2 The puppet master went out late lest somebody would see him talk to the mayor. **so that**

The puppet master _____.

3 The once dedicated English teacher turned into a heartless monster lest he should repeat his past mistakes anymore. **in order to**

The once dedicated English teacher _____.

4 We mustn't forget Lin's birthday! As a result, Dave put up the note on the kitchen door. **lest**

_____, Dave put up the note on the kitchen door.

5 So that we don't make the wrong impression, we are here not to help you, but to observe only. **lest**

_____, we are here not to help you, but to observe only.

- 6 The robbers took out their guns hastily, lest the bank employees should try and call for help. **for fear**
The robbers _____ .
- 7 Such nobel men should be praised, lest they be averse to giving us a hand in the future. **so that**
Such nobel men _____ .
- 8 The editor was quite worried about the article, lest it might be misunderstood. **for fear that**
The editor _____ .
- 9 Our ambassador wants to keep a low profile at the summit, lest his colleagues realised what he is really after. **so that**
Our ambassador _____ .
- 10 The club remained closed lest it should still be infested with rats. **in case**
The club _____ .

Exercise 97: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Vedúci pobočky odišiel z rokovania skôr, aby nezmeškal večeru so svojou manželkou. 2 Obchodný riaditeľ zamestnancom ponúkol zľavu pre prípad, že by si chceli kúpiť výrobky spoločnosti. 3 Sklamáný zákazník neposlal svoju sťažnosť, aby nepoškodil predavača, ktorý za chyby nemohol. 4 Nový analytik nechce ísť na obed, aby nesklamal svojho náročného šéfa. 5 Čestný hosť si nepripíše na zdravie princa, ak mu nato nedajú dobrý dôvod. 6 Starú posteľ sa nepodarí predáť za tak vysokú cenu, ak sa nenájde dodatočná motivácia. 7 Na túto tému by sa so študentami nemalo diskutovať unáhle, ak sa za tým neskrýva nejaký dôvod. 8 Mladí milenci nechceli ísť spolu von, aby ich náhodou niekto nevidel spolu. 9 Herečka dúfala, že nikto nezistí, kde býva, aby ju opäť neobťažovala tlač. 10 Mäsiar nepredal svoju horskú chatu pre prípad, že by v nej chcel žiť, keď pôjde do dôchodku. 11 Mechanik sa bude musieť postarať o motocykle, ak nedostane iné príkazy. 12 Drahé oblečenie musíme nechať v šatníku pre prípad, že by sme ho potrebovali. 13 Dokumenty by sme zatiaľ nemali vymazať, ak by sme ich potrebovali na dodatočné účely. 14 Aby si nezabudol, oslava sa začína o 13.00. 15 Ak by ste meškali, zaparkujte priamo pred domom.

3.11 Like

The subordinating conjunction *like* is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction states **what a situation seems like**, in what way it is viewed by others or how it is generally perceived (Synonyms: *as if, as though*).
 - It looks like the social networking company is going ahead with the IPO.*
Výzerá to tak, akoby sa spoločnosť realizujúca sociálne siete chystala pokračovať s prvotnou emisiou.
 - It seems like you are in deep trouble.*
Zdá sa, akoby si lietal v poriadnych problémoch.

Language Note:

The conjunction can refer to both real and unreal meanings and senses, and is thus used with both

present and past tenses to make the distinction clear-cut.

When referring to real or at least possible situations, *like* is followed by present tenses.

- *Mr Harris talks **like** he's the chair of the committee.* ... maybe he IS
*Pán Harris rozpráva, **ako by** bol predseda výboru.*
- *The young student dresses **like** she has all the money in the world.* ... maybe she HAS
*Mladá študentka sa oblieka, **akoby** jej patrili všetky peniaze na svete.*

When referring to unreal or imaginary situations, *like* is followed by past tenses, or rather the forms of subjunctive II.

- *Mr Harris talks **like** he was / were the chair of the committee.* ... but he is NOT
*Pán Harris rozpráva, **akoby** bol predseda výboru.*
- *The young student dresses **like** she had all the money in the world.* ... but she does NOT
*Mladá študentka sa oblieka, **akoby** jej patrili všetky peniaze na svete.*

2 The conjunction is used to express **actions and situations which are not true** and to emphasise the emotional impact that is associated with them. This is often the case in exaggerations.

- *I feel **like** I'm actually dying of hunger.*
*Cítim sa, **akoby** som skutočne zomieral od hladu.*
- *The entrepreneur looks **like** he's just seen a ghost.*
*Podnikateľ vyzerá, **akoby** práve videl ducha.*

3 The conjunction may be used to express **similarity** and is employed in both implicit and explicit similes (Synonyms: *(just) as, in the same way as, in the same manner as, similarly, similar to*).

- *Nobody could ever love you **like** I do, darling.*
- ***Like** I said, there's nothing to fear but fear itself.*

Language Note:

This use of *like* has gained popularity with English speakers only recently. It is a typical feature of modern English and is particularly common with young speakers. The conjunction is mostly employed in informal registers, predominantly in spoken English.

It needs to be noted, however, that strictly speaking this use of *like* is incorrect since *like* ought to be replaced by a conjunction proper, for example *as*.

As a rule, *like* is readily used as a preposition followed by a noun phrase. By contrast, *as* is used as a conjunction followed by a sentential construction including both subject and verb.

- *The sportsman ran **like** an antelope.*
*Športovec bežal **ako** antilopa.*
- *The sportsman ran **as** an antelope chased by a tiger.*
*Športovec bežal **ako** antilopa, ktorú prenasleduje tiger.*

Exercise 98: Insert the conjunction *like* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 It looks the anointed has just risen to power. 2 The young American says he feels he's going to die of boredom. 3 I could swear that the boy is a devil in disguise. 4 It seems the president doesn't have the army under control. 5 You look you've just seen a ghost. 6 It feels it's going to rain soon. 7 I've got a feeling we have met somewhere before. 8 It looks you don't have a clue what you're talking about. 9 It appears you have miscalculated, my friend. 10 You look you've eaten something that didn't agree with your stomach, Tom. 11 It sounds somebody's being tortured in the tower. 12 It tastes the soup's

too salty again. 13 The baby looked it was going to start crying. 14 The beggar smells he's spent the whole day in the sewers. 15 The teacher talks she's the headmistress already.

Exercise 99: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The spokesman announces the news like he had actually been in the place live. **as if**

The spokesman _____ .

2 The captain commented the police investigation like he had conducted it himself. **as though**

The captain _____ .

3 My aunt's neighbours were hiding in the basement like they felt the storm approaching. **as if**

My aunt's neighbours _____ .

4 His voice sounded like he had drunk something really cold last night. **as though**

His voice _____ .

5 The chief inspector was hiding behind the curtain like he was expecting someone to come in. **as if**

The chief inspector _____ .

6 The poisonous gas was flowing into the chambers like there was a leak in the wall. **as though**

The poisonous gas _____ .

7 The former king died all alone in the street like a common beggar. **as**

The former king _____ .

8 My own son lied to me like I meant nothing to him at all. **as if**

My own son _____ .

9 She always stood by James like a mother should. **as**

She always _____ .

10 The angry receptionist threw the book at the guest like he were a common thief. **as though**

The angry receptionist _____ .

Exercise 100: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *like* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The nurses are standing around doing nothing as though they didn't get paid for their work.

The nurses _____ .

2 The office staff worked as if they had to keep a deadline.

The office staff _____ .

3 Jane's grandparents are walking down the street fast as if there was a fair there.

Jane's grandparents _____ .

4 The butcher looks as though he's just seen a ghost.

- The butcher _____ .
- 5 The temple makes the impression as if it had been standing there for centuries.
The temple _____ .
- 6 The scarf feels as if it had been produced in China.
The scarf _____ .
- 7 Kate gives so much advice as though she were a professional counsellor.
Kate _____ .
- 8 The money disappeared as though it had never existed in the first place.
The money _____ .
- 9 It looks as if the carpenters stopped working for no good reason at all.
It looks _____ .
- 10 It smells as if there's something burning in the kitchen.
It smells _____ .

Exercise 101: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Cítil som sa, akoby som sa práve ocitol v pekle. 2 Deti veselo pobehovali sem a tam, akoby zajtra vôbec nemuseli ísť do školy. 3 Jana je na pocit taká horúca, akoby bola vážne chorá. 4 Zdalo sa, akoby spoločnosť do roka skrachovala. 5 Cítim sa, akoby ma celú noc bili. 5 Pisár zapisoval všetko, čo sme hovorili pomaly, akoby sa ani neponáhľal. 6 Zdá sa, akoby riešenie problémov nebolo na dosah. 7 Vyzerá to tak, akoby sa cestujúci na dovolenku vôbec netešili. 8 Ten plán vyznieva, akoby ho vymyslelo päťročné dieťa. 9 Znieš, akoby si bol zachrípnutý. 10 Mám pocit, akoby som bol zo seba urobil úplného hlupáka. 11 Predseda komisie vyzeral, akoby sa každým okamihom rozkričal na svojich kolegov. 12 Miesto na sedenie v buse bolo také studené, akoby na ňom celý deň nik nebol sedel. 13 Daniela má tak opuchnuté oči, akoby ju boli osy štípali celý víkend. 14 Primátor rozpráva o téme tak vážne, akoby mal nastať koniec sveta, ak sa mu nepodarí riešenie presadiť. 15 Noha ma bolí tak veľmi, akoby bola zlomená.

3.12 Once

The subordinating conjunction **once** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction expresses **an immediate series of actions or events** emphasising the fact that as soon as one thing happens, another one occurs too (Synonyms: *as soon as, (immediately)after, the moment that, the instant that, the second that*).
 - The beautiful painting shall be sold at the auction next month **once** its true value has been estimated and confirmed.*
*Ten nádherný obraz sa predá na budúcomesačnej aukcii, **len čo** sa odhadne a potvrdí jeho skutočná hodnota.*
 - Once** the contract has been signed, there's no way we can cancel it anymore.*
***Keď** sa zmluva už raz podpíše, nebudeme ju môcť už vypovedať.*

Language Note:

The conjunction, just like all its counterparts, expresses immediacy, and is thus often followed by perfect tenses to stress that one action or event is finished or completed before another begins or occurs.

Exercise 102: Insert the conjunction *like* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The awful smell of the carcass started to spread all across the meadow, the hunter realised what he had done. 2 I've graduated, I'd like to travel the world for a year or two. 3 The ceremony will commence the guest of honour has arrived. 3 You get to the clearing, you will understand what your grandfather was trying to say. 4 The spaceship blew up it had touched down. 5 Mr and Mrs Hudmat decided to get married they've fallen in love. 6 Charlie's weapons were confiscated police officers confirmed they had been used in an armed robbery. 7 The bonfire celebration got even better the mayor had opened the contest. 8 The COO has made up his mind, there's no convincing him of the contrary. 9 The foundations have been laid, it will be a matter of months till the whole building is built. 10 The camera crew were sent home early on Tuesday it became clear that the movie stars were not going to show up. 11 The door has been locked up, it can only be opened on the next day. 12 The little girl was frightened she had realised she was all alone in the dark forest. 13 The sun went up, the birds started singing. 14 The dangerous murderer is brought to justice, honest citizens will feel much safer. 15 The gun fired the trigger was pulled.

Exercise 103: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *once* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 After the battle has been won, you can celebrate all you want, men.

You can _____.

2 The captain will be promoted as soon as he's returned from his voyage to the Philippines.

The captain _____.

3 The moment the accused had pleaded guilty, it became clear that he was going to try to get a reduced sentence. (*start the sentence with 'once'*)

_____.

4 The robbers entered the bank the instant the security system had been disabled.

The robbers _____.

5 The soldiers shall engage the enemy the second they are in shooting range.

The soldiers shall _____.

6 Give Jason the news immediately you see him.

Give _____.

7 Just moments after the bomb had exploded, armed response vehicles rushed to the scene.

Armed response vehicles _____.

8 As soon as the PA has made the call, she joined her supervisor at the meeting.

The PA joined _____.

9 The embassy was evacuated the moment the security agency had intercepted a possible bomb threat.

The embassy _____.

10 The instant the killer was released out of prison, he started yet another killing spree.

The killer _____.

Exercise 104: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Once the tanker has exploded, run to the hanger as fast as you can. **the moment**

Run _____.

2 The athletes will gather around this building once it's time to start the contest. **as soon as**

The athletes _____.

3 Once the terrorists have made their demands public, we can start the negotiation. **after**

We can start _____.

4 The poisonous gas will fill the whole room once the door cracks open. **the instant**

The poisonous gas _____.

5 Once the governor has addressed his staff, he'll make the news public. **as soon as**

The governor _____.

6 The attorney general pressed charges against Mr White once he'd gathered the evidence. **the instant**

The attorney general _____.

7 Once the term has finished, my best friend is going to get herself a summer job in New York. **after**

My best friend _____.

8 The floorboard started to make creaking sounds once termites had their way with it. **soon after**

The floorboard _____.

9 Once the signal had broken off, none of my relatives could connect to the Internet. **when**

None of my relatives _____.

10 The skier broke his leg once he fell off the cliff. **shortly after**

The skier _____.

Exercise 105: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Len, čo loď zakotvila, sa námorníci rozbehli do mesta. 2 Hneď, ako sa experiment skončil, sa vrátili výskumníci na svoje pracoviská. 3 Les sa bude musieť vyrúbať hneď, ako budú plány výstavby novej diaľnice schválené. 4 Len, čo sa piráti objavili v blízkosti prístavu, ich začala naháňať policajná loď. 5 Akonáhle prichytili policajti zlodca pri čine, zatkli ho a odvedli do väzenia. 6 Len, čo sa deti usadili

do lavíc, vkročil učiteľ do triedy. 7 Šetrenie prípadu sa rýchlo skončilo hneď, ako sa prokurátor začal zaujímať o dôkazy. 8 Auto sa pokazilo hneď, ako si ho majiteľ vyzdvihol v servise. 9 Akonáhle odišli lekári z izby, si pacient zapálil cigaretu. 10 Keď raz okúsiš skutočnú moc, už nikdy nebudeš spokojný s priemerným životom. 11 V okamihu, keď mimozemšťania zničili planétu, si začali hľadať nový cieľ. 12 Akonáhle sa zotmie, sa v našej dedine nikto neodváži ísť von sám. 13 Potrubie prasklo hneď, ako bol tlak príliš silný. 14 V okamihu, keď udrel blesk, sme všetci zostali ochromene stáť na mieste. 15 Keď vodič autobusu stratil zrak, prestal sa zaujímať o svet okolo seba.

3.13 Since

The subordinating conjunction *since* is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction forms **a temporal framework** by introducing the starting point from which henceforth an action or event occurred (Meaning: *from the time that*).
 - *Dangelson & Son have been doing business with us since 2005.*
Dangelson & Son s nami obchodujú už od roku 2005.
 - *Since the manager came back from her business trip, she's acted quite differently, hasn't she?*
Odkedy sa manažérka vrátila zo služobnej cesty, správa sa úplne inak, či nie?
- 2 The conjunction **gives reasoning**. It shows why something happens or why something is described in a particular way (Synonyms: *because, as, for, on this/that account*).
 - *The property will stay in the family's possession since the deceased left a will which states explicitly that his granddaughter should inherit all his money and other belongings.*
Majetok zostane v rodine, pretože nebohý zanechal závet, v ktorom jasne uviedol, že všetky jeho peniaze ako aj iný majetok zdedí jeho vnučka.
 - *Since you left no phone number for emergency situations, the guard called the police at once.*
Keďže ste nenechali žiadne telefónne číslo pre prípad potreby, strážnik zavolať okamžite políciu.

Exercise 106: Insert the conjunction *since* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Mr Petterson has been dealing with guns his father introduced him to the family business. 2 He has been involved with some nasty guys he left high school. 3 The unsuccessful university dropout started working for his brother, he's been nothing but trouble. 4 I've never met the man, I cannot possibly tell you his name, can I? 5 The bartender has been staying in a small flat he got kicked out of his last flat. 6 The basketball player broke up with his girlfriend, he's been whining about everything basically. 7 I've got to do whatever Mr Jakins tells me to do he's my boss now. 8 The production of this particular phone was discontinued five years ago the phone didn't have the specs customers were looking for in a top-notch phone. 9 The sun got covered by those thick clouds, it's turned quite cold. 10 The students' notes are quite sketchy the teacher talks real fast. 11 The sales rep hasn't sold anything for over three months now, he ought to be given the sack. 12 The printer is to be replaced on Monday it stopped working properly a long time ago. 13 The chemical plant ought to be shut down asap it's been nothing but trouble since the very first day. 14 Mr Dan's contract was terminated last week he had stolen office supplies on many occasions.

Exercise 107: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 Since the trainer lost track of time the wrestlers were late for their maths class. 2 The desk jockey has had a rough time ever since his wife left him. 3 The pictures won't sell well since the painter made quite a few smudges on each. 4 Since the plane touched down safely the pilot must have mastered the crisis. 5 Since I haven't heard from Dave for well over two months now I suppose he must have gone away to Scotland. 6 Since I've got no clue what you're talking about I'd like to take my leave now. 7 The puppet master has managed to imitate both character's voices well since he's a true professional. 8 The cottage has burned to the ground since somebody left a burning cigarette on the table. 9 The priest is about to lose all his sheep since he's unable to adapt to the new world and its needs. 10 Since the time is up you'll have to hand in your exam sheets now. 11 Since the mic doesn't work you'll have to make use of something else. 12 The walls were painted yellow since the manager asked for yellow. 13 Since Mr Banks doesn't want to show his face here anymore we will have to pay him a visit at home. 14 The whole research is totally useless since you neglected to use to correct criteria when creating the questions. 15 Since you don't have the balls to speak up for yourself I'll have to do it for you.

Exercise 108: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *since* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 As the query hasn't been processed yet, we cannot say if the quality of the ticket will be sufficient.

We cannot _____.

2 I wanted to become a rocket scientist from the day I was born.

I wanted _____.

3 The bowl was smashed into smithereens because Jack threw it against the wall.

The bowl _____.

4 Given the fact that the witness hadn't been wearing glasses at the time, he couldn't identify the man.

_____.

5 The teacher's been in love with his student from the very first moment he lay his eyes on her.

The teacher's _____.

6 David has been watching a soap opera from the time he came home tonight.

David _____.

7 The sick lion was put to sleep as the director did not want to torment it anymore.

The sick lion _____.

8 From the day Mr Halkins moved in, we haven't had a single night's sleep.

_____.

9 The manufacturer is about to go bust because he did not calculate his costs correctly.

The manufacturer _____.

10 The goods got damaged during the flight as they hadn't been secured properly.

The goods _____.

11 Dr Davidson is about to start a new career in LA given he's always wanted to work in Hollywood.

Dr Davidson _____.

Exercise 109: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Od tej doby, čo skúsení obchodníci opustili spoločnosť, nemáme dobré výsledky. 2 Keďže hodinky prestali fungovať v noci, mamička ráno zaspala. 3 Minister financií túžil už od malička po veľkej moci. 4 Odkedy sa mrakodrap zrútil, sú stavbári pod prísnyim dohľadom úradov. 5 Slnko svieti, odkedy som dnes ráno vstal. 6 Myši behali po kuchyni, odkedy gazdiná odišla na nákupy. 7 Chirurg si podrobne preštuduje Váš chorobopis, keďže Vás má o tri týždne operovať. 8 Nakoľko sa súkromný detektív nič nové nedozvedel, neinformoval ani svojho zamestnávateľa. 9 Od tej doby, čo sa rodičom stratil syn, sa ich život zmenil od základov. 10 Lupič namieril zbraň priamo na strážnika, pretože ho chcel zastrašiť. 11 Kasíno bude na pár dní potrebné zatvoriť, lebo v ňom bude prebiehať výmena podlahy. 12 Nakoľko si nám nepovedal pravdu, obviníme ťa z krivej výpovede. 13 Moderná strecha nedokázala vydržať nápor silného vetra, keďže nebola dobre upevnená. 14 Keďže sa na budúci týždeň končí školský rok, školáci si prevezmú vysvedčenia. 15 Robotníci sa ponáhľajú do práce, nakoľko je špička.

3.14 That

The subordinating conjunction **that** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction introduces a subordinate noun clause which **reports** something that has been stated or implied in a previous piece of discourse.
 - The banker said (that) he couldn't possibly approve our request for credit.*
Bankár povedal, že našu žiadosť o úver nemôže schváliť.
 - Mr Baker implied (that) the money might have been stolen by a third party.*
Pán Baker naznačil, že peniaze mohla ukradnúť tretia strana.
- The conjunction may introduce **the result of the main clause** when preceded by the antecedents *so* and *such*.
 - Martin had so many debts (that) he had to sell all he owned to clear them.*
Martin mal toľko dlhov, že musel predat' všetko, čo mal, aby ich splatil.
 - Mildred is such a nice landlady (that) she always waits a few extra days before reminding her tenants that they're late with their rent.*
Mildred je taká milá domáca, že vždy počká niekoľko dní skôr, než pripomenie svojim nájomníkom, že meškajú s nájomným.

Language Note:

In both the above uses, the conjunction may be dropped from the sentences altogether without making any change to the meaning of the sentences at all. The conjunction is usually omitted in informal registers, particularly in the spoken discourse.

Exercise 110: Insert the conjunction *that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Mr Lawrence wrote such a wonderful novel his book became a bestseller forty-four days after being

published. 2 Jack said I shouldn't bother knocking next time I came to see him. 3 The water was so warm the children didn't even try to get in slowly. 4 The cake is so sweet you should have no more sweets today. 5 The taxi driver had such a hard day today he is going to take a day off next week. 6 Jane's brother implied she should have lent George the money anyway. 7 The tin was so badly damaged it couldn't be fixed again. 8 The air conditioning is so loud the staff can't focus on their work. 9 The latest iPhone is said to be so powerful it's the best mobile phone ever. 10 Carmen told her boss she needed to go to the post office right away. 11 The teacher told her pupils she wasn't going to teach them the following year. 12 The atmosphere was so intense some of my colleagues decided to quite as a result. 13 I shouldn't be allowed to participate in the games is out of question. 14 The box was so heavy the tall guy dropped it accidentally. 15 The driver remarked he wouldn't want to work for our company at all.

Exercise 111: Drop the conjunction *that* from the sentences if possible.

1 The horse was galloping so slowly that he got overtaken by virtually all the other horses. 2 The task manager indicated that the notes could not be saved. 3 My aunt Laura used to be such a strict teacher that all her students studied really hard. 4 The huge desk is so heavy that six men had to carry it up the stairs. 5 The ATM said that there was a card problem and didn't give me any money. 6 The baker announced that the wholesome bread was sold out. 7 The software is so difficult to install that only our IT guys are allowed to do so. 8 Master Handerson has had so many girlfriends that his parents didn't bother to get to know them all. 9 The webzine has become so popular that millions of people worldwide read it every day. 10 Honestly, I've never thought that the nice gentleman would ever turn into such a horrible monster. 11 The cabbage looks so fresh that I'd take a bite right away. 12 The pool has been so soiled that nobody wanted to take a swim in it. 13 None of the security officers are so rude that they would ever take your lunch without asking. 14 The sales rep said that he was not interested in other people's work. 15 We were all surprised to find out that we all made it to university.

Exercise 112: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Bezpečnostný analytik varoval svojich nadriadených, že program nie je stabilný. 2 Mobilný operátor zo Spojených štátov povedal, že sa na súťaži nezúčastní. 3 Mladá učiteľka je taká namyslená, že si ani neuvedomuje, ako málo tohto sama vie. 4 Viem, že som nebol dobrý predák. 5 Kone v stajni sú tak dobre tréované, že vyhrajú akékoľvek preteky. 6 Hrozienka sú také kyselé, že sa ani jesť nedajú. 7 More bolo také pokojné, že sa loď ani nepohla. 8 Moderátor naznačil, že koncom roka pôjde do dôchodku. 9 Lekári sa čudovali, že sa pacient tak rýchlo uzdravil. 10 Matematická súťaž býva taká náročná, že sa na nej nikto nechce zúčastňovať. 11 Obvinený vykrikoval, že on ten čin nespáchal. 12 Kytica bola taká veľká, že ju museli niesť dvaja. 13 Hlas odvetil, že zásoby sa nachádzajú v sklade B. 14 Klavírista si mrmlal niečo tak potichu, že mu nebolo nič rozumieť. 15 Metro je v našej časti mesta také špinavé, že sa mu ľudia snažia vyhýbať.

3.15 Though

The subordinating conjunction **though** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces a **contrasting argument** which reduces the impact of the main statement, and thus makes it seem less true, likely or possible (Synonym: *despite the fact that*).
 - *The students really appreciate your effort, **though** they find some of your remarks rather contradictory at times.*
*Študenti si Vašu snahu skutočne cenia, **hoci** sa im zdá, že si niektoré Vaše poznámky niekedy dosť protirečia.*
 - ***Though** we have not been given a fixed date, we know that the contract is to be signed next week.*
***Aj keď** sme nedostali fixný dátum, vieme, že zmluva sa má podpísať budúci týždeň.*
 - *That's a great idea. I find it a bit too daring at such volatile times as these, **though**.*
*Je to skvelý nápad, **no** zdá sa mi byť až príliš odvážny v týchto nestálych časoch.*
- 2 The conjunction introduces a **contrasting argument** which makes the main statement seem surprising, astonishing or amazing under the circumstances expressed (Synonym: *despite the fact that, although*).
 - *The company policy, **though** a bit confusing, has remained unchanged for over twenty years.*
*Firemná politika zostáva už dvadsať rokov nezmenená **a to aj napriek tomu, že** je trochu zmatečná .*
 - ***Though** the manufacturing process is quite expensive, the average price of the product is still lower than what we expected.*
***Hoci** je výrobný process dosť drahý, priemerná cena výrobku je stále nižšia, než sme očakávali .*

Language Note:

The last example shows a typical instance of *though* when used in informal registers, particularly in the spoken discourse. In such cases, the conjunction is usually placed at the end of the sentence to put more emphasis on the surprising and/or less true nature of the statement made.

Exercise 113: Insert the conjunction *though* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The new shopping centre is really cool, it's not very handy. 2 I haven't heard from Jim for quite a while now, I'm positive he's doing fine. 3 The children seem to be enjoying the story, they don't like all the characters. 4 Sarah seems to be a fascinating, crazy person. 5 He didn't come to the meeting on Friday, he promised to. 6 A little surprising, Mr Baker's promotion was justified. 7 The new microwave oven launches next month, I don't know when exactly. 8 The guests departed late at night, they would have stayed a bit longer if they could. 9 The engineer couldn't manage the other application. 10 The students are not allowed to play with the new microscope, as it was a trifle too expensive. 11 Mrs Brown, hungry, still refuses to have lunch. 12 The hunters are practising their shooting skills outside the barn, there is nothing to shoot at. 13 The puppet master sounded embarrassed, he had no reason to feel ashamed at all. 14 The fixed costs are still quite high, the managers have already managed to push them down by 2.1 per cent. 15 The teacher, somewhat strict, is quite popular with his students and colleagues alike.

Exercise 114: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *though* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Although the caretaker hasn't spoken to his supplier yet, he's sure to have the job done by Monday.

_____ .

2 The vehicle stopped at the traffic lights even though it showed green.

The vehicle _____ .

3 My cousin wants to move to Florida despite the fact that he's never been there.

My cousin _____ .

4 Dr Brown is drunk as a sailor, yet he wants to perform the surgery right away.

Dr Brown _____ .

5 The boy ran away from home. Surprisingly, he was well taken care of.

The boy _____ .

6 The ice-cream was a little too sweet. Still it was very tasty.

The ice-cream _____ .

7 Mike's sister was expelled from school although she didn't do anything wrong.

Mike's sister _____ .

8 The CEO sacked the young accountant, but he didn't falsify the data.

The CEO _____ .

9 The skiing instructor is paid extremely well. His job discipline, however, leaves much to be desired.

The skiing instructor _____ .

10 The company claims not to have received the payment despite the fact that it was made three weeks ago.

The company _____ .

Exercise 115: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Though the terrorist attack was foiled, two innocent people died during the violent attack. **although**

Two innocent people _____ .

2 The chair doesn't want to approve the plan though it's been given green light by his associates. **still**

The plan _____ .

3 Though the three cars crashed at great speed, nobody was hurt. **yet**

The three cars _____ .

4 Though the plane crash landed, nobody was injured. **fortunately**

The plane _____ .

5 I didn't have to pay the company anything though the glass pane blew into smithereens. **even though**
I didn't have to _____.

6 Though little Jack was feeling sick this morning, he wanted to go to school. **still**
Little Jack _____.

7 Mr Handerson wasn't reprimanded though he caused a lot of trouble at the negotiation. **despite**
Mr Handerson _____.

8 Though the shop assistant didn't know what to do, she didn't ask for help. **nonetheless**
The shop assistant _____.

9 The baker, though polite and friendly, sometimes sounds very strict and bossy. **although**
_____.

10 The books sell at a high price though they are not worth much. **surprisingly**
The books _____.

Exercise 116: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Hoci je plán skutočne riskantný, myslím si, že to riziko zato stojí. 2 Obchodníci sa nechystali svoje stánky zbalit', hoci sa schylovalo k búrke. 3 Riaditeľka školy je usilovná, avšak nie moc dôsledná. 4 Napriek tomu, že ten film nebol zo začiatku veľmi zaujímavý, podarilo sa mu upútať našu pozornosť aspoň ku koncu. 5 Hoci bol let dlhý, nebol veľmi únavný. 6 Kráľ sa tešil zo svojho bohatstva napriek tomu, že jeho poddaní hladovali. 7 Školiteľ bol s našimi vedomosťami spokojný, ale náš prístup k práci sa mu veľmi nepáčil. 8 Hoci je Slovensko len malá krajina, v Európskej únii má rovnaké slovo ako napríklad Nemecko. 9 Napriek tomu, že modem stále funguje, nedokážem sa pripojiť na internet. 10 Zdravotná sestrička pracuje každý deň dlho do noci, hoci jej nadčasy nikto nezaplatí. 11 Aj nevďační študenti zmaturovali, hoci sa nič poriadne nenaučili. 12 Sesternica sa mi neozvala, hoci mi sľúbila, že keď príde domov, tak mi hneď zavolá. 13 Hoci bol rezeň dobre prepečený, nebol veľmi chutný. 14 Aj keď bol vopcháčik studený, zasýtil ma. 15 Hoci je práca v bani je náročná, nikto sa nesťažuje.

3.16 Till

The subordinating conjunction **till** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction is used to express **a temporal meaning** referring to an action or event which lasts **up to a certain time** (Synonyms: *until, up to*).
 - The board of directors were waiting for the accountant **till** he arrived.*
*Predstavenstvo čakalo na účtovníka, **až kým** neprišiel.*
 - The current timetable will remain in operation **till** the COO doesn't come up with a new one.*
*Aktuálny rozvrh zostane v platnosti, **až kým** prevádzkový riaditeľ nepríde s novým.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *You will have to remain patient and wait **till** the manager comes back from the meeting. Budete musieť byť trpezlivý a počkať, **kým** sa manažér nevráti zo stretnutia.*
- *The bankers are not going to lend us any more money **till** we give in to their demands. Bankári nám nepožičajú žiadne ďalšie peniaze, **pokiaľ** nepristúpime na ich požiadavky.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *till* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *You cannot get promoted **till** you **have completed** your executive training. Nemôžeš byť povýšený, **kým** nedokončíš školenie na vedúcu pozíciu.*
- ***Till** the interpreter **hasn't graduated**, he's not a professional language expert. Až **kým** tlmočník nespromuje, nie je profesionálnym odborníkom na jazyk.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

Till is usually used in rather informal registers, especially in the spoken discourse. In more formal and official registers *until* is preferred.

The spelling *till* is commonly employed in British English while American speakers use *'til* instead.

Exercise 117: Insert the conjunction *till* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 How long is it the meeting starts? 2 Mr Winston worked for BMW he got fired in 2007. 4 It's about twenty minutes the exam is over. 3 The kind-hearted nurse took care of the sick man he could walk again. 4 I'm not going to leave the shop I've spoken to the manager. 5 We won't leave your office you have given us a satisfactory explanation. 6 The designer hasn't finished the job, he's not going to start another. 7 Susan won't leave you alone you've told her your secret. 8 Some of the workers remain at the mine late at night. 9 The boxers used to train the sun went down. 10 The students are going to study the topic they know every single word by heart. 11 The accused remained silent his lawyer arrived. 12 The couple won't be back the show starts. 13 Jack's sons will stay away it's all over. 14 The bank manager did not realise what was going on it was too late. 15 Officially, the detective hadn't stopped working his supervisor told him to take a day off.

Exercise 118: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *till* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Mr Snowlen remains in charge of the department until Ms Grewsome hasn't arrived.

Mr Snowlen _____ .

2 The typist will have to finish the letters 'til her boss comes back from lunch.

The typist _____ .

3 The children shall not have dinner before they tell us who broke the expensive china vase.

The children _____ .

4 The pioneers kept working on their project until they ran out of money.

The pioneers _____.

5 The guard is not going to let you off the hook until you tell him the whole story.

The guard _____.

6 The plumber is not going to leave the house 'til he's fixed the broken washing machine.

The plumber _____.

7 The police won't be able to stop the criminals until they get some help from the government.

The police _____.

8 I wouldn't mind giving you a hand 'til my brother comes to pick me up, Dave.

I wouldn't mind _____.

9 The school will remain closed until the windows have been painted.

The school _____.

10 The pups won't be sold 'til they're at least six months old.

The pups _____.

Exercise 119: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Námorníci museli počkať, kým búrka utíchla. 2 Janovi kamaráti čakali na slnku, až kým sa nevrátil z tréningu. 3 Pacientka bude musieť počkať, až kým utišujúce lieky nezačnú účinkovať. 4 Obdobie anarchie je čas, kým sa moci nechopí silný muž, zvyčajne diktátor. 5 Prestrojení policajti striehli v zálohe v tmavej uličke, kým ich kolega nezavolať. 6 Kaderníčka bola včera v práci, pokým neodišiel posledný zákazník. 7 Odborové zväzy sa pokúsia spojiť do konca roka. 8 Slúžka pracovala na dvore, kým sa nezotmel. 9 Sudca sa pokúša vyriešiť spor, kým nebudú obe strany spokojné. 10 Herec stál na javisku, až kým nebol režisér s poslednou scénou spokojný. 11 Generála neinformovali, až kým nebolo príliš neskoro. 12 Obchodníci sa rozhodli zostať na veľtrhu, až do úplného konca. 13 Občerstvenie bolo zadarmo, kým sa nezačala diskusia. 14 Kým nedostanete zelenú, nemôžete začať pracovať na projekte. 15 Pekár piekol chleba, pokým mu neskončila zmena.

3.17 Unless

The subordinating conjunction **unless** is used in the following way:

1 The conjunction conveys **a condition**, ie it states that if one action or event does not happen, another action or event will happen or come true as a result (Synonyms: *if ... not, except if*).

- **Unless** the police catch the brutal murderer, the streets of New York will remain dangerous.
Ak polícia nechyť brutálneho vraha, ulice New Yorku zostanú aj naďalej nebezpečné.
- Do not cancel the buyout **unless** I give you a heads-up.
Odkúpenie neodvolajte, ak Vás nebudem varovať.

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate

clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *George will agree to anything you say **unless** you push him too much.*
*Juraj bude súhlasiť so všetkým, čo povieš, **ak** naňho **nebudeš** príliš tlačiť.*
- *The CFO is expected to return to the head office the day after tomorrow **unless** there are further complications with the contract.*
*Finančného riaditeľa očakávame naspäť v centrále pozajtra, **ak** sa **nevyskytnú** ďalšie komplikácie ohľadom zmluvy.*

Language Note 2:

The conjunction carries a negative meaning. When *unless* itself is preceded by a *not*-negative, it conveys an emphatic positive, ie *only if*.

- *A: Are you going to stand there and do nothing at all?*
*B: **Not unless** you really want me to get involved with such devils.*
A: To tam budeš len tak stáť a nič nepodnikneš?
*B: **Len ak** skutočne chceš, aby som sa miešal medzi takých zloduchov.*
- *A: Is the car manufacturer really going to lay off 600 staff before Christmas?*
*B: **Not unless** he has no other choice.*
A: Skutočne plánuje výrobca automobilov prepustiť 600 zamestnancov pred Vianocami?
*B: **Len ak** nebude mať na výber.*

Exercise 120: Insert the conjunction *unless* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The accountant has made a mistake, I received two hundred pounds less than I should have. 2 You'd better tell the investigator the truth you want to go to jail. 3 The moving van is yours, you've got a lot of explaining to do. 4 The company is doomed the management can find an investor by the end of the year. 5 The show is free, we won't be able to join you. 6 I'd like to take a day off tomorrow you've already planned some meetings, Dan. 7 The background singer will be disappointed he gets what he wants. 8 The storm passes soon, you should stay in the inn for the night. 9 The oil tycoon is not willing to risk his own money he's sure to benefit from the venture. 10 Kate, you shut your big mouth now, you will disclose all the details of the contract. 11 The police haven't found any hidden passports in the house they were moved to a different place. 12 The agents will be acquitted of all charges they have really taken the orders from a foreign power. 13 you quit smoking cold turkey, you'll never stop. 14 The racehorse is sure to lose you put some miracle drugs into its food. 15 your boyfriend ponies up 1.4 million dollars in less than 24 hours, the bet is lost.

Exercise 121: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *unless* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If the police don't catch you drinking and driving, you won't lose your driving licence.

You won't _____.

2 If the assailant doesn't cooperate with the authorities, he's sure to go to prison.

The assailant _____.

3 The travellers should stay in if they don't want to freeze to death out there.

The travellers _____.

4 You cannot see the movie if you're not over eighteen.

You _____.

5 Should you be feeling nauseous tomorrow too, go and see your GP.

_____.

6 If you don't stop paying your employees peanuts, you'll soon find yourself on your own, Dave.

Dave, you'll soon _____.

7 The shelling won't stop if the enemy continues to attack our MASH units.

The shelling _____.

8 The senior manager won't be very popular if she keeps bossing everybody around all the time.

The senior manager _____.

9 If the new premises aren't a lot cheaper than the ones we're in now, there's no reason why we should move.

There's no reason _____.

10 You might get fired sooner than you think if you don't keep your mouth shut, Carl.

You might _____.

Exercise 122: Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

1 *If/ Unless* you don't reveal the robbers' secrets, you'll be considered accessory to their crimes. 2 *If/ Unless* I have a tough time, I'll give you a ring. 3 The headhunter wouldn't be doing her job well *if/ unless* she weren't looking for the best there are. 4 You'll have a lot of explaining to do *if/ unless* you told the general attorney the truth yesterday. 5 *If/ Unless* they catch you stealing again, you might be sent to prison, Jack. 6 I will take the job offer *if/ unless* you give me a good reason not to. 7 The car will break down soon *if/ unless* you have it checked by a professional mechanic. 8 I'd be very much surprised *if/ unless* the girl passed her GCSE exams. 9 The witness shall remain silent all the time *if/ unless* you prove her too much. 10 The US marshal will visit you again *if/ unless* he finds some new evidence. 11 The secretary won't say a word *if/ unless* you give her the promotion. 12 We won't be able to do business with the manufacturer *if/ unless* we give in to his demands now. 13 The vendor would have made a huge loss *if/ unless* he hadn't sold the shares at once. 14 The zoo will be closed for good *if/ unless* somebody decides to clear its debts. 15 The nosy neighbour could tell my wife *if/ unless* I bribe him soon.

Exercise 123: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Predseda schôdzu nepreloží, ibaže by ho o to požiadala väčšina zúčastnených poslancov. 2 Motorkár sa nezúčastní na pretekoch, ak ho oficiálne nepozvú. 3 Vedci si tento rok ceny neprevezmú, iba ak by oslobodili ich kolegov z Číny. 4 Záchranári život krvácajúceho policajta nedokážu zachrániť, jedine ak by ho okamžite priviezli do nemocnice. 5 Bohatí šľachtic nebude ďalej dotovať našu organizáciu, len

ak mu poskytneme náhľad do nášho účtovníctva. 6 Krachujúcu firmu by sa už nedá zachrániť, jedine ak by sa za ňu postavil štát. 7 Maďarský minister nenavštívi nové kúpele, ak mu nezostane dost' času. 8 Hovorca primátora nechcel zaujať stanovisko k téme, ibaže by ho k tomu prinútili. 9 Kniha sa nebude dobre predávať, ibaže by ju autor vydal pod vlastným menom. 10 Stará mama nemohla v noci zaspať, ak si nedala trochu teplého mlieka. 11 Cisár polovačku zruší, ak sa nebude cítiť dobre. 12 Ak sa študenti nebudú viac učiť, iste skúšky nezvládnu. 13 Ak sa lekár nezranil náhodne, tak ho musel niekto ovaliť železnou tyčou. 14 Bežní ľudia toto predstavenie nikdy neuvidia, jedine ak poznajú niekoho vplyvného. 15 Mechanizmus nebude fungovať, ibaže by sme prepracovali časť softvéru.

3.18 Until

The subordinating conjunction **until** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction is used to express a **temporal meaning** referring to an action or event which lasts **up to a certain time** (Synonyms: *till, up to*).
 - The defendant will remain in custody **until** the trial is over.*
*Obžalovaný zostane vo väzbe, **až kým** sa pojednávanie neskončí.*
 - The talented painter had to work for low wages **until** he found a generous patron.*
*Talentovaný maliar musel pracovať za nízku odmenu, **až kým** si nenašiel štedrého mecenáša.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- The Canadian furniture will not be delivered **until** the dispute is settled.*
*Kanadský nábytok nedodajú, **kým** sa spor nevyrieši.*
- The police officer will not testify against his colleague **until** he has a word with him.*
*Policajt nebude vypovedať proti svojmu kolegovi, **pokiaľ** sa s ním neporozpráva.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *until* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- The teacher will not let you pass the exam **until** you have demonstrated sound knowledge of both theoretical and practical skills.*
*Učiteľ ťa nenechá urobiť skúšku, **až kým** nepreukážeš dobré vedomosti ako teoretických tak i praktických zručností.*
- Until** the ceremony **hasn't finished**, we should not interfere.*
***Až kým** sa obrad neskončí, by sme nemali zasiahnuť.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

Until is the standard form of the conjunction used principally in formal registers. Informally, *till* can be substituted for *until*, though this is never the case in formal and semi-formal contexts.

The spelling *till* is commonly employed in British English while American speakers use *'til* instead.

Exercise 124: Insert the conjunction *until* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The enraged customer is not going to leave the shop he's spoken to the manager. 2 The analyst can stay at work he's totally exhausted. 3 The war is unlikely to end the two countries can agree on some definite terms. 4 It seems the dictionary won't be revised a new editor takes over. 5 You haven't told me what's going on around here, I'm not going to give you any advice at all. 6 The ship cannot leave the harbour it has unloaded the freight. 7 The CFO returns from his business trip, you are going to be in charge. 8 The enmity between the neighbouring countries will last one of them finally gives in to the other. 9 Sarah is not willing to talk to me I've apologised for the mishap that happened to us the other day. 10 The divers have recovered the box, we need to remain calm. 11 I can't imagine that the PA would stay at work her boss tells her to call it a night. 12 This is a kindergarten in which children can play they actually start their formal studies. 13 We have sorted out the issues, let's not discuss anything with the press, shall we? 14 The king shall not die he's found an heir to his throne. 15 The wealthy philanthropist won't give away any money to the charity he's sure about its targets.

Exercise 125: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *until* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The plan won't get approved till it's financially sound.

The plan _____.

2 The music didn't stop playing till the DJ's equipment had broken down.

The music _____.

3 Till the driver has sobered up, you'll have to stay put.

You'll _____.

4 The bomb must not be tempered with 'til we're absolutely certain that it doesn't detonate at once.

The bomb _____.

5 You will have to remain in this room till you are released.

You _____.

6 The traffic in the area will have to be diverted 'til the road repairs are finished.

The traffic _____.

7 I'm afraid you'll have to stay with me 'til the whole thing has passed.

I'm afraid _____.

8 The roof will not stop leaking till it's been fixed properly.

The roof _____.

9 The basement will stay under water 'til you've dried the whole place.

The basement _____.

10 Till she doesn't pay me back, I won't have anything to do with her.

I won't have _____.

Exercise 126: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Zmluva sa nepodpíše, až kým si návrh neprezrie marketingový manažér. 2 Váš pes bude musieť zostať pred obchodom, kým nenakúpite. 3 Lietadlo krúžilo, až kým nebolo dost' času, aby pristálo. 4 Kamerový tím pracoval na scéne, až kým nebola perfektná. 5 Tréner nedá výpoveď v miestnej strednej škole, kým si nenájde novú prácu. 6 Zostaňte prosím sedieť, pokým Vám letušky nepovedia, že si môžete rozopnúť pásy. 7 Z lietadla nevystupujte, kým úplne nezastane. 8 Polícia zločinca nemôže zatknúť, kým nebude mať dostatok dôkazov o jeho vine. 9 Počítač sa bude kaziť, pokým nenainštaluješ nový operačný systém. 10 S pánom Greenom sa nerozprávaj, kým ti on ako prvý nepoloží otázku. 11 Nikto nesmie vstúpiť do triedky, kým sa skúška z matematiky neskončí. 12 Podozrivý je považovaný za nevinného, až kým sa mu nepreukáže vina. 13 Neobťažuj manažéra, kým nezhrmaždiš všetky potrebné údaje. 14 Usilovná predavačka zostane v obchode, kým jej nepovieš, aby išla domov. 15 Nemôžem ti nič povedať, kým sa neporozprávam s Dávidom.

3.19 When

The subordinating conjunction **when** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces an interrogative sentence referring to **a particular time** when an action or event occurs. It asks **at what time** the action or event is to happen.
 - *When shall the negotiations commence?*
Kedy sa má rokovanie začať?
 - *When are you going to make the news public, Mr Chairman?*
Kedy sa chystáte zverejniť tie správy, pán predseda?
- 2 The conjunction introduces an interrogative sentence referring to **the nature or character** of an action or event asking **in what kind of situation** or **under what circumstances** it happens.
 - *When is it correct to use 'till' instead of 'until'?*
Kedy sa môže správne použiť "till" namiesto "until"?
 - *When do people usually sing the song 'For he's a jolly good fellow'?*
Kedy sa zvyčajne spieva "For he's a jolly good fellow"?
- 3 The conjunction introduces an interrogative sentence referring to both **a particular time** and **the nature or character** of an action or event. This is essentially a combination of 1 and 2 above.
 - *When are the two companies going to merge?*
Kedy dôjde k zlúčeniu tých dvoch spoločností?
 - *When did you send the drunk solicitor away?*
Kedy si poslal opitého právneho zástupcu preč?
- 4 The conjunction specifies **at what time** an action or event occurs pointing out that there is a cause-and-effect relationship between two or possibly more actions or events. *When* forms a time link that makes the sequence between the actions or events clear and straightforward (Synonyms: *the instant that, the moment that, the second that, shortly after, as soon as*).
 - *The meeting will start when the CEO and CFO return from lunch.*
Schôdza sa začne, keď sa generálny a finančný riaditeľ vrátia z obeda.

- **When** the manager reads your proposal, he will let you know his thoughts about its potential.
Ked' si manažér prečíta Váš návrh, dá Vám vedieť, čo si myslí o jeho potenciály.

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *The ceasefire will start **when** the army and the rebels sort out their differences.*
*Prímerie sa začne, **ked'** si armáda a rebeli vyriešia svoje problémy.*
- *Master Atkins is allowed to join his friends in the capital **when** the term is over.*
*Mladý pán Atkins sa môže pridať k svojim priateľom v hlavnom meste, **ked'** sa mu skončí semester.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *when* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *The ceasefire will only hold **when** both groups **have agreed** on fixed terms which both of them will abide by.*
*Prímerie sa udrží len, **ked'** sa obe skupiny dohodnú na pevných podmienkach, ktoré obe budú dodržiavať.*
- ***When** the mass had finished, the churchgoers went their separate ways.*
***Ked'** sa omša skončila, veriaci išli každý svojou cestou.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

- The conjunction emphasises that one action or event happens **at the same time** as another action or event (Synonyms: *at the same time, simultaneously, whenever*).
 - *The financial analyst always chews on his pen **when** he's under pressure.*
*Finančný analytik vždy cmúľa pero, **ked'** je pod tlakom.*
 - ***When** the miners work in the dark shaft, they carry torches all the time.*
***Ked'** baníci pracujú v tmavej šachte, neustále nosia so sebou baterky.*
- The conjunction describes an action or event which occurs **at a point in time** when something else happens.
 - *The police officers were having lunch **when** the bank was robbed.*
*Policajti obedovali, **ked'** vylúpili banku.*
 - ***When** the shooting took place, the bank manager was on a business trip in Canada.*
***Ked'** došlo k prestrelke, bol manažér banky na služobnej ceste v Kanade.*
- The conjunction introduces **contrasting** or **contradictory** statements which often make a person's actions and behaviour look surprising, astonishing, unusual or strange plain and simple (Meaning: *despite the fact that, although, even though, still, however, considering that*).
 - *The defendant continues to lie to the court **when** his guilt has already been proven.*
*Obžalovaný aj naďalej klame súdu, **hoci** sa jeho vina už preukázala.*
 - *Why do you always have to butt in **when** you have obviously nothing to say?*
*Prečo musíš neustále skákať do reči, **hoci** očividne nemáš čo povedať?*
- The conjunction introduces **atemporal or immutable actions and events** (Synonyms: *whenever, if, every time that*).
 - *It is not common to use the title Mrs **when** addressing a woman in business letters nowadays.*
*V súčasnosti nie je bežné používať v obchodných listoch oslovenie „Mrs“, **ked'** oslovujeme*

ženu.

- **When** you put paper on fire, it burns.
Ked' položíme papír na oheň, začne horieť.

Exercise 127: Insert the conjunction *when* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Do you usually start work in the company? 2 The witness will be interrogated the chief inspector returns from court. 3 Are the newlyweds going on their honeymoon? 4 A lot of people start fidgeting they are caught lying. 5 Do we use the definite article in English? 6 Our shift ends, we always go to the pub. 7 The sun goes down, we shall go on a hunt. 8 The bank was robbed the police officers were taking part in an educational seminar. 9 The strange woman was being questioned by the attorney her husband admitted to killing the old lady. 10 Why do I keep reminding you of good manners you obviously never listen? 11 Should a document be red flagged? 12 Just go ahead and continue working for Mr Dansley his company is clearly on the edge of bankruptcy. 13 Should a decent person become ruthless and violent? 14 I say A, he says B. 15 You can bend metal you heat it.

Exercise 128: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 The committee will know the results when they get faxed to us on Monday. 2 The cow is going to be taken to the slaughterhouse when she's already too old to give milk. 3 When I see you again, I will call the police at once. 4 You don't have to repeat everything to the students when it's obviously pointless. 5 When the match has finished, the teams are going out to the pub for a beer. 6 Ask the girl when she's going to clear her debts. 7 The mayor visited Africa when he was a little boy. 8 The convict was only nineteen when he committed his first murder. 9 Tell me when to stop typing. 10 When the bus stopped, it was almost midnight. 11 Some people are happiest when they are sitting in front of the telly doing nothing at all. 12 When the stakes are really high, you should put a lot of effort into your work. 13 You can hop in when you are in town next time. 14 When it's too hard to find a problem in the software, simply run a diagnostics program. 15 Just use the indefinite article when you mention something for the very first time, George.

Exercise 129: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *when* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The cook broke up with his girlfriend whenever he found a better one.

The cook _____.

2 Jim was making a call to his girlfriend. At the same time he was driving his convertible.

Jim _____.

3 Every time the truck driver returns from a long journey, he spends the first day at home sleeping.

The truck driver _____.

4 It's strange really that the bartender keeps riding his bike to work considering the fact that he could simply take the bus.

- The bartender keeps _____ .
- 5 The moment the gunman shot his first victim, a police officer whacked him.
A police officer _____ .
- 6 As soon as the masked men came in the liquor store, the shop assistant hit the panic button.
The shop assistant _____ .
- 7 Given the fact that most of the villagers are illiterate, it's a miracle they can pay their bills.
It's _____ .
- 8 The prejudiced judge did not listen to the defense attorney although he didn't know all the facts.
The prejudiced judge _____ .
- 9 I would like to know what time the meeting starts?
_____ ?
- 10 Being aware of the fact that the sheep ran away during a storm, the shepherd should not be blamed for the misfortune.
The shepherd _____ .

Exercise 130: Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 *If/ When* you call me by my middle name, I always get goose bumps. 2 Jack has promised to call me *if/ when* he gets home tonight. 3 I'd like to make a call to my sister now *if/ when* you don't mind. 4 I shall be on my way now *if/ when* there's nothing else you'd like to discuss with me. 5 *If/ When* it gets cold, birds usually fly south. 6 Your brother might help you with the physics homework *if/ when* you ask him kindly. 7 The pupils will get into a lot of trouble *if/ when* they get caught again. 8 I'll tell him you're looking for him *if/ when* he drops by. He usually comes round at 1.00 pm. 9 The lawyer can't help you *if/ when* you don't tell him the truth. 10 I always end up losing my temper and arguing with my dad *if/ when* I go and visit him. 11 *If/ When* you heat water, it evaporates. 12 The children may go to the fair *if/ when* the weather gets somewhat better. 13 Most people have coffee or tea *if/ when* they get up in the morning. 14 You might have an accident *if/ when* you aren't more careful. 15 Do you mind *if/ when* I close the window.

Exercise 131: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Kedy otvorí novú reštauráciu? 2 Kedy si majú urobiť študenti domáce úlohy? 3 Jackov brat nepovedal, kedy odchádza. 4 Som si istý, že vtedy som podozrivého videl naposledy. 5 Keď prestaneš rozprávať tie nezmysly, môžeš sa so mnou navečerať. 6 Kedy je v poriadku pobožkať ženu na líce? 7 Robotníci majú oblečený ochranný odev vždy, keď pracujú v rádioaktívnej komore. 8 Plynový sporák vybuchol, keď sme pripravovali večeru. 9 Pri kontrole účtu zistíte, že došlo k preplatku. 10 Prečo tak veľmi riskuješ, keď by si sa mohol zaobísť bez akéhokoľvek stresu? 11 Keď sa tento nápoj podáva s citrónom, chutí oveľa lepšie. 12 Nájomníci sa chystajú protestovať proti výstavbe novej továrne v ich okolí, hoci vedia, že je to úplne zbytočné. 13 Kedy výtržníka zatknete? 14 Šofér tvrdil, že nič

nepil, hoci bol spitý ako prasa. 15 Keď človek spácha vraždu, mali by ho za ňu okamžite obesiť.

3.20 Whenever

The subordinating conjunction *whenever* is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction states in an emphatic way that an action or event occurs **every time** something else happens (Synonyms: *when, every time that, as soon as, at the same time*).
 - *The chocolate maker organises promotions **whenever** there's a special occasion.*
*Výrobca čokolády organizuje akcie **pri každej** mimoriadnej príležitosti.*
 - ***Whenever** a deal goes sour, a company inevitably loses money.*
***Vždy, keď** sa nejaký obchod nepodari, príde nejaká firma o peniaze.*
- 2 The conjunction introduces an interrogative sentence referring to **the nature or character** of an action or event asking **in what kind of situation** or **under what circumstances** it happens. This use of *whenever* is an emphatic form of *when*.
 - ***Whenever** will you realise that you cannot aid everybody in trouble?*
***Kedy si už konečne** uvedomíš, že nemôžeš pomôcť každému, kto má problémy?*
 - ***Whenever** do you stop taking advantage of your underprivileged staff?*
***Kedy už konečne** prestaneš zneužívať znevýhodnených zamestnancov?*
- 3 The conjunction implies that the speaker or writer **does not know the precise time** when an action or event occurs.
 - *You will have to make the suggestions at the next meeting, **whenever** that is.*
*Návrhy budeš musieť predložiť na nasledujúcej schôdzi, **nech** je to **už kedy chce**.*
 - *We were talking about last June or **whenever** it was that Mr Black was released from hospital.*
*Rozprávali sme sa o minulom júni, či **kedy** to pána Blacka prepustili z nemocnice.*

Exercise 132: Insert the conjunction *whenever* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The young princess blushes she's complimented on her looks and charms. 2 Let's discuss the funding arrangements in the next semester, that starts. 3 Pete's best students always try to use English and German they've got the opportunity to do so. 4 Will you start using your brain instead of your fists? 5 The former soldier felt pain in his leg the weather turned bad. 6 Is the new smartphone going to be released? 7 I'm afraid you'll have to wait for the next event, that is. 8 The major raised his voice, the soldiers always stood still and listened. 9 Your friends can of course come and stay with us they're in town. 10 He gets a little upset you mention the name of his ex-wife. 11 Do you want to get the roof fixed, Henry? 12 Lovers usually kiss they stand under the mistletoe. 13 Our captain says yes, his deputy says no. 14 Will you realise that this is not New York? 15 The goods were shipped in December or it was that your aunt lost her job.

Exercise 133: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 Whenever it rains mushrooms pop up all around the house. 2 Whenever the professor thinks about the beginnings of his teaching career he starts feeling nauseous. 3 The village gets flooded whenever the river rises more than six metres above average. 4 Whenever the bus driver stops the bus he checks his timetable. 5 The horny skiing instructor is asking his colleague out whenever she's around. 6 Jane's

always into naughty whenever I meet her. 7 Whenever the priest prepares a sermon he tries to link it with the churchgoers' everyday lives. 8 You can't take off whenever you like, George. 9 Whenever the poet reads a romantic novel she feels deeply moved. 10 The waiting room smells funny whenever you let a smelly dog in there. 11 Suicide bombers fight for their values whenever the right chance presents itself. 12 Whenever there's a circus in town people always line up to get a ticket. 13 Whenever the girl ponies up for concert tickets her boyfriend makes an excuse so that he doesn't have to go out with her. 14 Whenever do you stop bothering my teenage daughter? 15 Whenever the phone rings the secretary picks it up and greets the caller in a friendly and polite manner.

Exercise 134: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *whenever* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 A fresh breeze of air blows in the office when you open the front door.

A fresh breeze _____.

2 Every time I see my old schoolmate, he tells me some wild stories about him getting drunk.

My old schoolmate _____.

3 When is the janitor going to fix the plumbing?

_____?

4 I've got no idea when the CEO comes to visit our plant again, but you'll have to wait till then.

You'll have to _____.

5 I'm always losing my car keys. Then, I have to call my wife and she gets terribly annoyed with me.

_____.

6 I notice that orange prices in our shopping centre go up every time I want to buy some.

I notice _____.

7 When do you intend to start cramming for your finals, Ben?

_____?

8 The brothers always get into serious arguments every time they meet some pretty women.

The brothers _____.

9 When my son doesn't understand something, he always asks me for advice.

My son _____.

10 I'm not sure about the time of the next concert, but you'll have to wait for it.

You'll have to _____.

Exercise 135: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Kedykoľvek rozpráva účtovníčka svoje otrepané vtipy, všetci sa snažia nájsť si bezpečné miestečko ďaleko od nej. 2 Vždy, keď deti vytočili to čudné číslo, dovolali sa niekomu v Japonsku. 3 Kedy si už

konečne tvoja sestra uvedomí, že o ňu nemám žiaden ľúbostný záujem? 4 Pes sa zdá byť nedočkavý, len čo sa dostane z domu. 5 Vedúci preložil stretnutie na pondelok alebo ktorýkoľvek iný deň, keď nám bude pán Lloyd môcť venovať trochu času, aby si vypočul naše návrhy. 6 Keď budete myslieť na modrú a modernú, myslíte na škôlku odvedľa. 7 Riaditeľka sa tvári, že sa učí po španielsky vždy, keď zaklopem na jej dvere. 8 Kedy ma už konečne prestane ten chlap otravovať? 9 Strážnik pozerá videá alebo sa hrá počítačové hry vždy, keď ho kontrolujem. 10 Kedykoľvek sa novej recepčnej spýtajú ťažkú otázku, poprosí kolegyňu o radu. 11 Budeš musieť byť ešte trpezlivý a počkať, kým bankár nebude opäť v meste, nech už tak bude kedy chce. 12 Kedy konečne začne to dievča niesť zodpovednosť za svoje činy? 13 Zamýšľam sa nad tým, kedy sa obchodník objaví a začne si pýtať viac peňazí. 14 Sluha rýchlo dobehne do izby, kedykoľvek ho pán zavolá. 15 Výskumníci musia overiť údaje okamžite alebo hneď, ako im budete môcť požičať superpočítač.

3.21 Where

The subordinating conjunction **where** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction refers to **a position or situation in or at** which somebody or something is.
 - *The detective doesn't have the slightest idea **where** the robber could have hidden the money he had stolen from the bank.*
*Detektív nemá najmenšie tušenie, **kde** si zlodej mohol ukryť peniaze, ktoré ukradol z banky.*
 - *The new cashier is quite secretive which is why she didn't say **where** she lived.*
*Nová pokladnička je veľmi tajnostkárka, a preto nám neprezradila, **kde** býva.*
- 2 The conjunction refers to **a position or situation to** which somebody or something is heading.
 - *The DA did not say **where** he was going after lunch.*
*Okresný prokurátor nepovedal, **kam** sa po obede chystá.*
 - *Migratory birds travel south **where** it is warm during the winter.*
*Sťahovavé vtáky letia na juh, **kde** je počas zimy teplo.*
- 3 The conjunction refers to **a particular point, usually a stage in a process or activity**, which is somehow significant.
 - *The wise professor has reached a knowledge plateau **where** it's very hard for him to learn something new.*
*Múdry profesor narazil na vedomostnú plošinu, **kedy** je preňho ťažké naučiť sa niečo nové.*
 - *The researchers have come to the stage in their project **where** they simply need to make more experiments to find the right way to handle the process as a whole.*
*Výskumníci sa dostali v projekte do fázy, **kedy** jednoducho musia viac experimentovať, aby objavili správny spôsob, ktorým sa bude dať proces ako celok spracovať.*
- 4 The conjunction introduces **contrasting** or **contradictory** statements which often make a person's actions and behaviour look surprising, astonishing, unusual or strange plain and simple (Synonyms: *while, whilst, by contrast*).
 - *We are positive the recruits have done well **where** most experienced soldiers would have failed miserably.*
*Sme si istí, že brancom sa dobre darilo **tam**, **kde** by väčšina skúsených vojakov úboho zlyhala.*
 - ***Where** a frantic attempt to conclude the research project would have resulted in a certain failure, Dr Willkie's approach has definitely done it's trick.*
***Tam**, **kde** by sa zúfalý pokus o ukončenie výskumného projektu určite skončil neúspešne, sa*

prístup Dr. Willkieho ukázal ako správny.

- 5 The conjunction refers to **the origin** of an action or event (Meaning: *where ... from*).
- *I've got no idea **where** you get these crazy ideas from.*
*Nemám ani tušenia, **kam** na takéto šialené nápady chodíš.*
 - *The healing plants grow in areas **where** no man has ever been before.*
*Liečivé rastliny rastú v oblastiach, **kam** doposiaľ žiaden človek nevšiel.*
- 6 The conjunction refers to **all positions or situations imaginable** (Synonym: *wherever*). It is a non-emphatic form of *wherever*.
- *The elite unit's job is to go **where** they are called and help people in need all over the world.*
*Prácou elitnej jednotky je ísť tam, **kam** ich zavolajú a pomáhať ľuďom v núdzi po celom svete.*
 - *The misanthrope goes to places **where** few people usually go to.*
*Mizantrop navštevuje miesta, **kam** zvyčajne chodíva málo ľudí.*

Exercise 136: Insert the conjunction *where* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Did you put the tablet computer I was sitting last night? 2 The spy has refused to say he's from. 3 The FBI agent won't reveal he spent the past five months. 4 Some friends of mine often go to places it's really cold in summer. 5 I haven't got a clue the envelope came from. 6 This is the most critical stage of the operation precise planning is the key to success. 7 I don't know you intend to hide a twenty-foot elephant in less than five minutes. 8 a nice little chat can clear the air, never try to use force or violence, my friend. 9 The renegade travels from place to place searching for places good is losing its battle to evil. 10 A few bucks can do the trick, do not transfer the all our funds. 11 However, a less aggressive approach may have helped achieve the goals, John's strategy brought the whole business to a sudden stop. 12 You could find yourself in a situation you'll need our help. 13 The governing party is likely to raise taxes again next year and this is we must say no now. 14 The frail girl managed to straighten up the place dozens others before her had failed miserably. 15 The thieves are not going to tell the investigator they hid the stolen money.

Exercise 137: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 I honestly cannot remember where I left the umbrella. 2 The shop assistant didn't really say where she was going. 3 How about putting the noticeboard where everybody can see it? 4 Where the mosque once stood there is now a tall skyscraper. 5 The CFO and COO insist on expanding to other markets where there is strong competition. 6 Just put the guns where I can see them. 7 The intruders haven't found where the secret chamber is hidden yet. 8 This is the stage where most players lose their battle. 9 Prague, where my step-brother was born is the capital of the Czech Republic. 10 But where most soldiers would have given up long ago the brave sergeant fought on until he reached the enemy HQ. 11 Could you tell me where I can find Mr Donovan? 12 Unfortunately, the hit man has found himself in a situation where he had to choose between the life of his girlfriend and his own. 13 Where the big castle used to stand there is now only a ruin which reminds us of our ancestors' glorious past. 14 My daughter's fiancé ran away to a place where the authorities won't be able to find him. 15 The men's

duty it is to go where they are needed.

Exercise 138: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *where* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 This is the place the hideous monster crawled out from.

This is _____.

2 The western troops march wherever they are needed.

The western troops _____.

3 The grumpy old man has never stayed in the place he was told to remain in.

The grumpy old man _____.

4 While a faint-hearted recruit could never pass the exam, Simon passed with flying colours.

Simon passed _____.

5 The supreme commander survived the battle with no more than a few scratches whilst an ordinary man would have perished instantly.

The supreme commander _____.

6 My brother used to teach at Harvard University. Coincidentally, my sister studied there biology.

My brother _____.

7 This is the place my wife wanted to visit as a child.

This is the place _____.

8 I'm not sure which place I should hide the treasure in.

I'm not sure _____.

9 The ravine must be somewhere around here. Can you tell me its location?

Can you _____.

10 My grandpa is almost 80 years old did not give up. His friends who are around 70 did not reach the peak though.

My 80-year-old grandpa _____.

Exercise 139: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Polícia nevie zistiť, kde sa lupič skrýva. 2 Mohli by ste mi povedať, kde nájdem fazuľu? 3 Kým by sa každý iný kov rozletel na márne kúsky, nová zliatina sa ani len nezahriala. 4 Kde je vôľa, tam je aj cesta. 5 Napokon priekopníci dosiahli bod, kedy už nebolo cesty späť. 6 Nemám najmenšie tušenie, kde ten chlapec mohol nájsť zbraň. 7 Toto je miesto, na ktorom vyrastie naša nová továreň. 8 Nemilosrdný generál kedysi vyučoval na tej istej škole, kde môj brat študoval fyziku. 9 Ste si istý, že toto je to miesto, kde ste videli bezdomovca povalovať sa? 10 Zdá sa, že účtovník si nie je istý, kam si položil notes. 11 Katarínina neter žila v Londýne, kde pracovala ako učiteľka angličtiny. 12 Mohli by ste mi povedať, kde nájdem hlavnú poštu? 13 Výskum sa dostal do štádia, kedy by nebolo rozumné v ňom

už pokračovať. 14 Takže, čo to pre nás znamená? 15 Zločinec si nie je istý, kde sa zbavil mŕtvoly.

3.22 Whereas

The subordinating conjunction *whereas* is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction **compares and contrasts** two items, such as people, things, events or situations, and points out that there is a significant difference between them (Synonyms: *in contrast, while, whilst, in comparison with, as compared to, but*).
 - *The lawyer is rather poor **whereas** his clients are extremely wealthy.*
*Právnik je relatívne chudobný, **zatiaľ** čo jeho klienti sú nesmierne bohatí.*
 - ***Whereas** knowledge can be learnt, true wisdom is only acquired through experience.*
Kým poznatky sa dajú naučiť, skutočnú múdrosť človek získava len skúsenosťami.
- 2 The conjunction gives **an explanation or a reason** for a particular fact that has been taken into consideration before (Meaning: *this being the fact that, because of that*).
 - *And **Whereas** it hath pleased the Great Governor of the World to incline the hearts of the legislatures we respectively represent in Congress, to approve of, and to authorize us to ratify the said Articles of Confederation and perpetual Union.*
(United States Articles of Confederation)

Language Note:

This use of the conjunction is quite obsolete in modern English and can, in fact, only be encountered in highly formal registers such as legal English, old (religious) literature and politics.

Exercise 140: Insert the conjunction *whereas* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Teachers at state schools have not seen a pay rise in over three years now their colleagues from private schools receive a rise every year. 2 My old Beetle is as reliable today as it was when I bought it, my brother's new BMW keeps breaking down all the time. 3 The cook refused to do overtime his assistant said he had no problems staying a bit longer. 4 No more than 1.2 per cent of houses in our area were burgled last year, the estimates state that almost 4.2 per cent were broken into in the first quarter of this year only. 5 The CFO is likely to take huge risks, the CEO usually plays it safe. 6 People used to keep healthy in the past, they consume quite a lot of unhealthy food these days. 7 Jack's brother has been cramming like crazy these past few months a year ago, you wouldn't have even seen him touch a book. 8 Certain figures have risen significantly, profits have fallen slightly. 9 My colleagues say that everything's alright I believe that there's a lot of rotten stuff in here. 10 It seems you have forgotten your keys at the office your brother still has his on him now. 11 The murderer managed to get away with no more than a few bruises, the innocent blind got all killed. 12 The lazy and arrogant butt-kisser got promoted immediately the smart and hard-working analyst has been stuck in the same job for well over two years now. 13 Our Spanish classes have been going down the drain, the French lessons are awesome pure and simple. 14 The accountant is always busy checking some accounts or other his assistants usually spend most of their time in the café. 15 The business proposal sounds fine, your financial plan is a major disaster.

Exercise 141: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *whereas* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 While the substance contains no chemicals, it's certainly rich in vitamins.

The substance _____.

2 The banker is wealthy. His brother, by contrast, is as poor as a church mouse.

The banker _____.

3 Kate doesn't speak Japanese but Pete does.

Kate _____.

4 The new mouse species has a really long tail whilst common mice tend to have a short one.

The new mouse species _____.

5 Dr Willson works at the weekends only while his associate works from Mondays to Fridays.

Dr Willson _____.

6 On the one hand, Sarah did not want to join the club. On the other hand, her brother would have done anything to become a member.

Sarah _____.

7 The laptop works just fine, but the desktop computer seems to be having some issues.

The laptop _____.

8 Cable TV is transmitted—as the name suggests—via cable whilst satellite TV receives the signal from a satellite orbiting the Earth.

Cable TV _____.

9 The officers didn't stay at work much longer than necessary, but the captain stayed till midnight.

The officers _____.

10 I didn't see anything while my brother had a good view of everything.

I didn't _____.

Exercise 142: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Whereas the painter appreciates fine art, his sister takes no interest in art at all.

while

The painter's sister _____.

2 The clown throws cakes for fun whereas his friends like to eat them.

whilst

The clown _____.

3 The coffee machine gets rather warm when you use it a lot whereas the oven stays cool all the time.

interestingly

The coffee machine _____.

4 The magistrate is strict and professional whereas his son is kind-hearted and friendly.

by contrast

The magistrate _____.

- 5 The antique coffee grinder is priceless whereas the new grinders are cheap and worthless. **but**
The antique coffee grinder _____ .
- 6 The old guy must be about sixty whereas his wife seems as young as forty. **in contrast**
The old guy _____ .
- 7 My youngest son helps around the house whenever he can whereas his older brothers don't lift a finger to help us. **however**
My youngest _____ .
- 8 The cathedral is the oldest building in town whereas the shopping centre is the newest. **and**
The cathedral _____ .
- 9 Mr Cotton takes care of marketing whereas I'm responsible for management. **while**
Mr Cotton _____ .
- 10 Ms Young speaks excellent Russian whereas her assistant is a mere beginner. **as compared**
Ms Young _____ .

Exercise 143: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Kým najnovší operačný systém prináša úplne nový dizajn, jeho predchodca neponúkol viac, než len niekoľko úprav. 2 Kým tlmočník hovorí šiestymi jazykmi, jeho zamestnávateľ rozpráva len jedným. 3 Súkromný učiteľ usilovne pracoval, zatiaľ čo jeho študent zíval a znuďene sa pozeral von oknom. 4 Hoci sa päťpalcový smartfón drží v jednej ruke úžasne, väčšie mobily majú stále problém ponúknuť ten istý pocit komfortu. 5 Ten dvojizbový byt ponúka skvelú hodnotu za tie peniaze, zatiaľ čo ten trojizbový byt je určite predražený. 6 Zatiaľ čo by mal spevák nacvičovať na zajtrajšie predstavenie, rozhodol sa ísť s priateľmi na pivo. 7 Režisér chcel venovať viac času tejto scéne, kým majiteľ štúdia ho naháňal, aby všetkú prácu skončil do konca mesiaca. 8 Množstvo práce, ktoré má Jack vykonať sa tento rok zvýšilo o päť percent, zatiaľ čo jeho šéf sedí celý čas v kancelárii, pozerá sa von z okna a vôbec nič nerobí. 9 Kým sa skutočné komunikačné schopnosti musia rozvíjať dlhšiu dobu, základy sa dajú naučiť behom jedného či dvoch mesiacov. 10 Profesor máva zvyčajne veľký obed, zatiaľ čo jeho asistent si dá len niečo malé pod zub. 11 Kým sa hlavná letuška musí postarať o mnoho vecí, ostatné letušky zvyčajne nemajú toľko práce. 12 Kostol vyhorel, zatiaľ čo obchod s liehovinami prežil bez najmenších škôd. 13 Vodič autobusu vyviazol v pohode, kým všetci cestujúci na mieste zahynuli. 14 Kým sa transplantát obličky stratil po ceste do Londýna, srdce dorazilo v perfektnom stave. 15 Náruživý plavec sa udržuje v dobrom zdravotnom stave, zatiaľ čo jeho tréner si často nerobí ťažkú hlavu.

3.23 Whereupon

The subordinating conjunction *whereupon* is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction makes clear that an action or event occurs **as a result** of something else (Meaning: *consequently, as a result, then, afterwards*).
 - The nervous candidate started to stumble over his own words in the middle of his speech,*

whereupon the chair of the committee decided to take a ten-minute break.

Nervózný kandidát začal koktať v strede prejavu, **a nato** sa predseda komisie rozhodol urobiť desaťminútovú prestávku.

- Suddenly the witty professor made a great joke, **whereupon** his students burst into a fit of loud laughter.

Zrazu povedal vtipný profesor skvelý vtip, **načo** jeho študenti prepukli do hlasného smiechu.

2 The conjunction introduces **an action or event which happens shortly after another action or event** (Synonyms: *upon, short after, as soon as*).

- The skiing instructor broke his leg, **whereupon** he was rushed to the nearby hospital.

Lyžiarsky inštruktor si zlomil nohu, **a preto** ho previezli do neďalekej nemocnice.

- The rebels ambushed a government convoy, **whereupon** government troops started a hunt for all rebels far and wide.

Povstalci prepadli vládny konvoj, **a nato** vládne jednotky zahájili lov na všetkých rebelov široko ďaleko.

Exercise 144: Insert the conjunction *whereupon* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The tournament had already started, the latecomer was automatically disqualified. 2 You can wait for the guests at the restaurant, you may take them out for dinner at once. 3 Some of the children were hiding at the back of the class, their teacher couldn't see them well. 4 Mr Thorston sold his share of the company, he lost almost 2.1 bn dollars. 5 The avalanche buried the whole valley in a few minutes, the rescue service had to act fast. 6 The students were staring at the stranger, she asked them something in Korean. 7 There was a blackout in our office block yesterday, all the screens went blank. 8 The customer service assistant cursed angrily, her supervisor rebuked her saying that she should have pushed the mute button first. 9 The fire went out at night, the campers were sitting in complete darkness. 10 Jason didn't pass his GCSE exams last year, he decided to take a year off and do some serious cramming. 11 The surgeon came to work drunk as a skunk, he was fired right away. 12 The speaker started fidgeting all of a sudden, she could not focus on her speech anymore. 13 After three years of intensive language studies, Dan is still unable to speak a word Dutch, he decided to quit the language. 14 The door blew shut with a loud bang, the executive came out and told us to be more quiet. 15 The smartphone stopped working, the angry owner decided to take it back to the shop.

Exercise 145: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *whereupon* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The merchant was found guilty of embezzlement and was thus sentenced to eight years in prison.

The merchant _____.

2 One of the tourists cracked the expensive China vase. Consequently, he had to pay for the repairs.

One of the tourists _____.

3 The smuggler tried to flee the country, but was caught at the airport.

The smuggler _____.

4 Laura's cat jumped out of the open window and got killed in an instant.

Laura's cat jumped out _____.

5 Simon dropped his bag on the bus and had to get off quickly, which is why he lost his friend's notes.

Simon _____ .

6 The GP told Susan to do more exercise. As a result, she got very upset and left the surgery at once.

The GP _____ .

7 It was obvious that the bunch of crooks was trying to rip me off, so I called the police immediately.

It was obvious _____ .

8 I couldn't remember the carpenter's name, so I had a quick look at his business card to jog my memory.

I couldn't remember _____ .

9 The managers don't speak French, so they decided to hire an interpreter for the conference.

The managers _____ .

10 The business has been rather slow lately. Consequently, the company may have to lay off staff.

The business _____ .

Exercise 146: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The COO had to cancel the meeting at short notice, whereupon the supplier had to reschedule the appointment for the fifth time. **so**

The COO _____ .

2 The parents won't be able to get their kid the toy he wants for Christmas, whereupon the little one will feel quite disappointed. **as a result**

The parents _____ .

3 The light show didn't work out well last year, whereupon the company won't get the job this year. **so**

The light show _____ .

4 Mr Stewart gave in his notice this week, whereupon the managers need to find a replacement. **thus**

Mr Stewart _____ .

5 Suddenly, the fuse blew, whereupon the engineer had to stop working for a while. **consequently**

Suddenly, _____ .

6 Mike's car broke down on the highway, whereupon he had it towed to the nearest garage. **therefore**

Mike's car _____ .

7 The groom suffered a heart attack, whereupon he was rushed to the hospital at once. **and then**

The groom _____ .

8 Jack came back to the classroom with unzipped trousers, whereupon everybody burst into a loud fit of laughter. **as a result**

Jack _____ .

- 9 The couple split up, whereupon my friend decided to make a move on Jill. **after**
My friend _____.
- 10 Some Polish tourists got lost in the mountains, whereupon a rescue party was organised to search for the unlucky foreigners. **because**
A rescue party _____.
- 11 Mrs Ronalds lost her purse, whereupon she called her nephew to help her look for it. **which is why**
Mrs Ronalds _____.

Exercise 147: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ozvala sa hlasná rana, a nato kone ušli. 2 Pani Jankinsová si zlomila ruku, a preto musela stráviť tri týždne doma. 3 Laurina dcérka ochorela, a tak sa rozhodla okamžite navštíviť lekára. 4 Knižnica začína byť trochu primalá pre všetky knihy, a preto budeme musieť začať hľadať nové priestory. 5 Policajnú stanicu podpálili, a preto bol kapitán nútený nájsť alternatívne priestory pre svojich policajtov. 6 Dom už čoskoro zbúrajú, na čo prídu dve rodiny o strechu nad hlavou. 7 Zdá sa, že vypínač mal poruchu, a nato sa zbláznil celý systém. 8 Včera zahynulo šesť povstalcov, na čo miestna teroristická bunka prisľúbila odplatu. 9 Prvá dcéra si našla hrozného priateľa, a nato sa jej otec rozhodol, že ho už nikdy neuvidí. 10 Šéfkuchár požiadal o zvýšenie platu, na čo mu dal majiteľ reštaurácie padáka. 11 Počas uplynulých pár týždňov bežal počítač dosť pomaly, a preto som poprosil odborníka na IT, aby sa naňho pozrel. 12 Kuchyňa vyzerala po Jánovej oslave ako po výbuchu bomby, a preto ho matka donútila, aby ju celú upratal. 13 Analytik zabudol pripraviť prezentáciu, a preto ho finančný riaditeľ požiadal, aby si ju prichystal do štvrtka. 14 Domáci vo finále prehrali, na čo všetci začali plakať. 15 Nebezpečný vrah práve utiekol z miestnej väznice, na čo po ňom polícia zahájila celoštátne pátranie.

3.24 Wherever

The subordinating conjunction **wherever** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction refers to **a position or situation in or to** whatever place somebody or something is or chooses to be (Meaning: *anywhere*).
 - The CEO must have taken the contracts with him wherever he went after lunch.*
Generálny riaditeľ si iste vzal tie zmluvy so sebou, nech už išiel po obede kam len chcel.
 - You can put those heavy bags wherever you want, Jason.*
Jáson, tie ťažké tašky môžeš položiť kamkoľvek len chceš.
- The conjunction refers to **a position or situation** which exists or occurs **in all places** (Meaning: *everywhere*).
 - Can you type at all, Daniela? You can see typos wherever you look.*
Daniela, vieš ty vôbec písať na počítači? Preklepy vidno kdekoľvek sa len pozrieš.
 - The shoe bags are stored wherever the shop assistant can squeeze them in.*
Predavač ukladá krabice od topánok hocikam, kde sa mu ich podarí natlačiť.
- The conjunction implies that the speaker or writer **does not know the precise location** where an action or event occurs or where something can be found.
 - Greg told me to meet him at the main gate, wherever that is.*

Greg mi povedal, aby som sa s ním stretol pri hlavnej bráne, **nech je to už kde chce**.

- **Wherever** the masked men have taken the girl, she can't be anywhere close by.
Kamkoľvek maskovaní muži dievčinu odvedli, isté je, že nie je nikde v blízkosti.

Exercise 148: Insert the conjunction *wherever* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The delivery guy can put the boxes he likes. 2 You hide the money, do not keep them at home. 3 Please, add commas they are needed in the text. 4 The sailor saw water and nothing but water he looked. 5 You go, do not go to Mexico for holiday. 6 I smell a rat I go in the company. 7 The IT engineer must be contacted asap he is. 8 Greg says he'll be at the Waterhouse, that is. 9 You stash the guns, make sure nobody finds them. 10 The officers were standing, they had the building surrounded within minutes. 11 We can go party you like, Jill. 12 The young man turns to, he always sees his girlfriend's dumb face. 13 Mr Monron has just moved to Glingston, that is. 14 Possible, our clients use safe payment methods only. 15 You choose to get the new phone, do not buy it in the local shops.

Exercise 149: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *wherever* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Everywhere the waitress goes, she always comes home with a stain on her clothes.

_____ on her clothes.

2 You can find drugs at Jackson's anywhere you look.

You _____.

3 No matter where you catch the thieves, make sure to read them their rights.

Make sure _____.

4 There's nothing but sand as far as the human eye can see.

There's nothing _____.

5 In all the places the lawyer's visited so far, she can't have been to South Africa.

The lawyer _____.

6 The marketing manager talks to loads of people anywhere he goes.

The marketing manager _____.

7 The gardener saw weed everywhere he checked.

The gardener _____.

8 Rats were running around the bar in all the places, in the kitchen, on the floor and on the tables too.

Rats _____.

9 The computer doesn't have any wi-fi signal no matter where you put it.

The computer _____.

10 Anywhere Dan parks the car, he's always in the wrong lot.

Dan _____.

Exercise 150: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Kedykoľvek je to možné, ľudia vždy hľadajú spôsob, ako si zjednodušiť život. 2 Matematikár býval v Goodlemburgu, nech je to už kdekoľvek. 3 Dávid, tlačiareň môžeme nainštalovať kdekoľvek len chceš. 4 Nech už premiestniš tú veľkú stoličku kam len chceš, nepostav ju do kúta. 5 Kamkoľvek moja sestra ide, vždy skončí doma. 6 Nech už nechala slúžka metlu kdekoľvek, iste to nebolo v kuchyni. 7 Fixné náklady je potrebné znížiť, kde je to nevyhnutné. 8 Utečencov ukryte, kde len môžete. 9 Martin, môžeš sa so mnou spojiť kdekoľvek len chceš. 10 Tieto slová prečiarknite všade tam, kde ich netreba. 11 Nech už uchováva tie dokumenty kde chce, iste nebudú v stole. 12 Na teraz si hostia môžu sadnúť kdekoľvek len chcú. 13 Učitelia nás berú na výstavy a prehliadky vždy, keď je v meste niečo zaujímavé. 14 Kdekoľvek ten opitý námorník prenocoval, iste to muselo byť špinavé miesto. 15 Prosím ťa, Andrej, pýtaj sa na nezvestné dievčatá kdekoľvek len budeš.

3.25 While

The subordinating conjunction **while** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces a temporal relationship between two or more actions or events stating that one of them occurs **at the same time as** the other one(s) (Synonyms: *as long as, whilst, at the same time as*).
 - *The security guards were inspecting the warehouse **while** their supervisor was checking the camera system.*
*Strážnici kontrolovali sklad, **zatiaľ čo** ich vedúci kontroloval kamerový systém.*
 - ***While** the spy was watching the diplomats, another spy was keeping an eye on him.*
Kým špión sledoval diplomatov, iný špión dohliadal naňho.
- 2 The conjunction introduces a temporal relationship between two or more actions or event stating that one of them occurs **at a specific moment or during a particular period** of the time that the other one is happening (Synonym: *during that time, whilst*).
 - *The CFO had two calls **while** he was at the meeting with Dr Phillips.*
*Finančný riaditeľ mal dva telefonáty, **kým** bol na stretnutí s Dr. Phillipsom.*
 - ***While** you were out fishing, the secretary typed three letters.*
Kým si bol na rybačke, sekretárka napísala tri listy.
- 3 The conjunction **compares and contrasts** two items, such as people, things, events or situations, and points out the differences between them (Synonyms: *but, despite the fact that, although*).
 - *Most newcomers need a whole month of training before they can actually make their first calls **while** a small number is as experienced as to be put on the line after a single week.*
*Väčšina nováčikov potrebuje celý mesiac školenia skôr, než dokáže zvládnuť svoje prvé telefonáty, **hoci** zopár z nich má toľko skúseností, že ich možno posadiť k telefónu už po prvom týždni.*
 - ***While** the new equipment gets the job done faster, it is heavier and much more expensive.*
***Hoci** nové zariadenie urobí prácu rýchlejšie, je ťažšie a oveľa drahšie.*
- 4 The conjunction indicates that the speaker or write accepts an action or event as true, correct, right or trustworthy, but points out that there are certain circumstances, such as doubts or facts, which cannot be ignored as they are important to the whole matter at hand (Synonym: *although*).
 - ***While** parents would definitely agree with you, children might not be as excited about going to school on Saturdays as well.*

Kým rodičia by s tebou iste súhlasili, deti by asi neboli moc nadšené tým, že by mali chodiť do školy aj v soboty.

- *While I appreciate your honesty, I don't want to see you do such silly things ever again. Síce si tvoju úprimnosť cením, no už nikdy viac nechcem vidieť, že robíš také hlúposti.*

Language Note:

This use of the conjunction is often considered rather formal.

5 The conjunction expresses a **temporal meaning** referring to an action or event which lasts **up to a particular time** (Synonyms: *till, until, up to*).

- *The merger won't be signed while you haven't given us your blessing, Mr Stephensen. Fúzia sa nepodpíše, pokiaľ nám celú vec neodobrite, pán Stephensen.*
- *The soldiers won't move while they are dismissed by the commanding officer. Vojací sa nepohnú, kým ich nerozpusťí veliaci dôstojník.*

Language Note:

This use typically occurs in Scotland and Northern England only.

Exercise 151: Insert the conjunction *while* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 There were two gentlemen looking for you you were out shopping for Christmas presents. 2 The janitor was fixing the plumbing, the front door got stuck. 3 Janice had hurt her ankle playing badminton. 4 I was looking for an exit, my wife was looking for a restroom. 5 The tiger was still a cub, its parents took good care of it. 6 In jail, try to think about your life in the future, Mr Anderson. 7 The children don't seem very happy with their presents your niece is absolutely delighted. 8 The north got richer and richer the south got into more and more debts. 9 I have never understood why she got married to that awful man, I must admit that she's happier than ever before. 10 The brothers were having fun their friends were working hard in the mines. 11 We agree with your opinion, we cannot accept the means you intend to use to make the plan come true. 12 In Rome, do as the Romans do. 13 Most of our workers are very capable in their field, there are always a few exceptions, such as Ruth and Phil. 14 I don't want to talk to you having lunch. 15 So the PA was waiting at the desk her boss was getting ready.

Exercise 152: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *while* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The mason had to stop working to take care of his son, but his brother carried on working.

The mason _____.

2 The Japanese commentator slammed the door whilst leaving the office.

The Japanese commentator _____.

3 The hands were washing the deck and the captain was updating the software of his computer.

The hands _____.

4 The cabbie was driving really fast. At the same time he was talking to his girlfriend on the phone.

The cabbie _____.

5 Martin's parrot died last week. He was on holiday then.

Martin's parrot _____ .

6 Although the oven is as old as the house, it is fast and reliable.

_____ .

7 The gangsters were arrested whilst they were waiting for their business partner.

The gangsters _____ .

8 As long as the suspect remains in custody, he won't be able to flee the country.

The suspect won't _____ .

9 The manager can't help us solve the issue although he's been very helpful as far as advice goes.

_____ .

10 The chef was preparing the main meal and his assistant was taking care of the dessert.

The chef _____ .

Exercise 153: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 While the passengers were getting on and off the bus, a man in a black coat suddenly jumped an old lady and ran away with her purse. **whilst**

_____ .

2 Jack sounded a bit hoarse while his sister was perfectly fine. **whereas**

Jack _____ .

3 The sergeant speaks no French at all while his younger brother is half French. **although**

The sergeant _____ .

4 While the actor wanted to make the scene look more romantic, the director was determined to make it as tragic as possible. **on the other hand**

On the one hand, the actor _____ .

5 The jumper is a tall dark man while his colleague is rather short and bald. **by contrast**

The jumper _____ .

6 While the Prime Minister was giving a speech, a group of five terrorists seized the building. **whilst**

A group of five terrorists _____ .

7 While I haven't forgotten about you, I still haven't received the book you ordered. **although**

_____ .

8 While the sailors have nothing else to do, they can scrub the floorboard. **as long as**

The sailors _____ .

9 You can ask the private investigator for help while he's still available. **provided**

You can _____ .

10 While the lawyer was studying the contract, his associate was checking the accounts.

whilst

Exercise 154: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Kým driečny mladík ležal v hlbkej kóme, jeho snúbenica sa zaľúbila do jeho brata. 2 Bankovní lupiči stratili časť prachov, keď utekali pred políciou. 3 Čo si robila, keď som sa včera večer sprchoval? 4 Kým boli v Holandsku, manželia Dawsonovci navštívili mnoho pamiatok. 5 Kým budeš vo väzbe, skús sa zamyslieť nad zvyškom svojho života. 6 Aj keď sa z niektorých tvojich kamarátov stanú podvodníci, väčšina bude žiť slušný život. 7 Hoci s tebou súhlasím, úprimne ti môžem povedať, že tvoje metódy nie sú práve najvyberanejšie. 8 Zámožný investičný bankár bohatne každým dňom, kým väčšina jeho klientov vôbec nezarába veľa peňazí. 9 Kým opravovali tlačiareň, maskovaný muž vzal kabelku mojej kolegyni a rýchlo opustil budovu. 10 Hoci si nás prekvapil, keď si tak rýchlo odišiel, ale mysleli sme si, že to malo čosi s príchodom pána Barkelyho. 11 Marek zostal čakať na chodbe, zatiaľ čo jeho priateľ vstúpil do miestnosti, aby sa porozprával s pani Cunningsovou. 12 Hoci sa nôž našiel na posteli, mŕtvolu objavili v kúpeľni. 13 Úbohá manželka robí všetky domáce práce, zatiaľ čo jej lenivý manžel len umyje riady. 14 Aj keď má tvoja sestra iste dobrý zmysel pre humor, nemôže byť veľmi obľúbená medzi svojimi priateľmi. 15 Aj keď je generálny riaditeľ naklonený prijať Vaše podmienky, nie je ochotný svoju firmu predať.

3.26 Whilst

The subordinating conjunction **whilst** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces a temporal relationship between two or more actions or events stating that one of them occurs **at the same time as** the other one(s) (Synonyms: *as long as, while, at the same time as*).
 - *The social security system is collapsing whilst the government isn't doing anything to stop the crisis and stabilise it.*
Systém sociálneho zabezpečenia sa rúca a vláda nič proti tejto kríze nepodniká a ani sa nesnaží systém stabilizovať.
 - *Whilst the senior management were discussing their expansion plans, the junior managers were contemplating about new marketing strategies.*
Kým vrcholoví manažéri diskutovali o plánoch na expanziu, juniorskí manažéri uvažovali nad novými marketingovými stratégiami.

Language Note:

The conjunction is virtually non-existent in American English, while in British English it is becoming very rare as well. This holds true for all its uses.

If used at all, the conjunction is usually considered archaic, pompous or posh even, and its occurrence is thus mostly limited to formal registers, especially in official written discourse.

- 2 The conjunction introduces a temporal relationship between two or more actions or event stating that one of them occurs **at a specific moment or during a particular period** of the time that the other one is happening (Synonym: *during that time, while*).
 - *A woman left you a message on the answering machine whilst you were taking your bar exam.*
Nejaká žena Vám nechala správu na odkazovači, zatiaľ čo ste skladali advokátske skúšky.

- *Whilst the CEO was having a good time at a reception, his staff were hard at work.*
Kým sa generálny riaditeľ dobre bavil na recepcii, jeho zamestnanci usilovne pracovali.

3 The conjunction indicates that the speaker or write accepts an action or event as true, correct, right or trustworthy, but points out that there are certain circumstances, such as doubts or facts, which cannot be ignored as they are important to the whole matter at hand (Synonym: *although*).

- *Whilst I believe your business proposal is worth the risk, my associates see it differently.*
Hoci si myslím, že Váš obchodný návrh stojí za to riziko, moji spoločníci to vidia inak.
- *Whilst the negative effects on the environment cannot be denied, there's no clean way to handle the business at the present time.*
Napriek tomu, že negatívny vplyv na životné prostredie nemožno poprieť, v súčasnosti neexistuje žiaden čistý spôsob, akým by sa dal biznis viesť.

Language Note:

This use of the conjunction is often considered extremely formal.

Exercise 155: Insert the conjunction *whilst* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The mayor became obsessed with politics working on his master thesis in 2007. 2 On my way to work, I saw a man hitting his head against a wall in the park. 3 The company's losing funds the management isn't doing anything to tackle the problems. 4 In bed, the husband and wife were talking about their honeymoon in Malaga. 5 I don't intend to mock your brother, he always drives me crazy and I always lose control over myself. 6 The maid was working on the third floor, her friend was having a smoke outside. 7 The bread got a bit stale we were away on holiday. 8 Sarah's was grabbed by a hungry dog she was taking a shower. 9 Looking into the matter closely, the lawyer found some discrepancies in the men's testimonies. 10 The butcher went away to see his friend he was still on the clock. 11 Searching for a new place to rent, Mr Daniels found a lovely little apartment in Kingston Road. 12 I've never believed the story, I was still surprised to find out that so many people did. 13 The food will have to be prepared the cook is away. 14 Typing the essay, the student accidentally cut the power cable with his knife. 15 The traffic wardens might be waiting round the corner you are parking you car, Norbert.

Exercise 156: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *whilst* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The dentist was reading his journal while a patient was waiting outside the surgery.

The dentist _____.

2 The lifeguard was talking to some hot babes while a surfer drowned in the sea.

The lifeguard _____.

3 Ms Bennett kept staring at a talk, dark and handsome guy in a black suit during which time a pick-pocket snatched her purse.

Ms Bennett _____.

4 Although nobody complained about the smell, we were all feeling rather uneasy.

_____.

5 The airliner was experiencing some technical difficulties, and yet the captain was attending to a passenger instead of actually dealing with the crisis.

The airliner _____.

6 I've no idea what's going on around here. Still, it doesn't really matter to me.

_____.

7 As long as you keep torturing the prisoners, ask them where they have hidden the treasure.

_____.

8 While the gorilla seemed happy, the other animals were making a very sad impression.

The other animals _____.

9 Dan's uncle wants to see Australia next year. His wife, by contrast, would like to go to Japan.

Dan's uncle _____.

10 The stunt man was resting after a difficult scene. At the same time, he was rehearsing his lines for the next scene.

The stunt man _____.

Exercise 157: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Whilst the actor was looking for his wig, the director was fixing the broken pyramid. **while**

The director _____.

2 Whilst I'm not against your proposal, I don't believe it will yield more revenue. **although**

_____ more revenue.

3 You should never talk to somebody on the phone whilst driving. **at the same time**

You should _____.

4 Whilst I've got the chance, I'd like to ask you a few more questions, Dr Brown. **as long as**

_____ more questions, Dr Brown.

5 Whilst the technicians were out for lunch, our server went down. **during the time**

_____ our server went down.

6 Jessica was studying French at university whilst she was staying in France. **while**

Jessica _____.

7 Whilst the publisher never understood my success, he always published my books. **but**

The publisher _____.

8 Mr Nicolson is well versed in Slovak poetry whilst he's never attended any poetry classes. **although**

Mr Nicolson _____.

9 Martin's daughter can't speak Chinese whilst she spent three years living and working in China. **and**

Martin's daughter _____.

10 The electrician was taking care of the lights whilst the plumber was checking the pipes. **when**
The electrician _____ .

Exercise 158: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Keď študujete cudzí jazyk, mali by ste sa snažiť naučiť niečo aj o kultúre. 2 Menová politika mohla byť aktualizovaná, zatiaľ čo sa pracovalo na inom právnom predpise. 3 Hoci súhlasím s tým, čo si práve povedal, nedokážem pochopiť, že si jediný, kto s tým niečo robí. 4 Keď bola ešte v mladistvom veku, Laura pochytila mnoho užitočných zručností. 5 Kým kúzelník predvádzal trik, deti sa naňho pozerali so zatajeným dychom. 6 Tréner zostavoval plány na nasledujúci zápas, zatiaľ čo hráči na dvore nacvičovali kopy. 7 Kým Katikin dedko kosil trávu, jeho neter varila niečo sladké na večeru. 8 Hoci investori nenamietajú proti tvojim plánom, robí im trochu starosti množstvo peňazí, ktoré budeš potrebovať na celý projekt. 9 Aj keď si zubár nerobí starosti o Vašu dcéru, má isté pochybnosti o dentálnej hygiene Vášho syna. 10 Túto obálku Vám tu nechal poslíček, zatiaľ čo ste boli na stretnutí s pánom Grahamom. 11 Elektrikár opravil svetlá na chodbe, zatiaľ čo si prezeral vypínače. 12 Kým si v krčme veslo vyspevovali, námorníci si tiež pásli oči na krásnej čašníčke. 13 Keď poskytoval služby zákazníkom, mladému technikovi sa podarilo napísať aj skvelú knihu o optike v 21. storočí. 14 Antivírusový softvér skenoval počítač, zatiaľ čo majiteľ inštaloval nový softvér. 15 Hoci som o tej značke nikdy nepočul, som si istý, že je dobrá.

4 MULTI-WORD SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Multi-word subordinating conjunctions (aka *multi-word subordinators*) are a subset of subordinating conjunctions composed of two or more lexical units conveying a meaning which is different from the meaning of the separate elements when analysed in isolation.

Some multi-word subordinators may comprise units which are optional in character, and may thus be dropped from the phrases altogether. This is especially common in informal registers, particularly in the spoken discourse and in informal writing, such as emails to friends, notes and comments.

There are four major classes of multi-word subordinating conjunctions:

1 Multi-word subordinators ending with an obligatory *that*-element

- eg *such that, in the event that, in order that, insofar that*

2 Multi-word subordinators ending with an optional *that*-element

This class is divided into two subsets, namely into subordinators whose main element is a participle form (including both *-ing* and *-ed* participles),

- eg *assuming, considering, supposing* and
- eg *given, granted, provided*

and words other than participle forms,

- eg *except, now, so, for*.

3 Multi-word subordinators ending with an *as*-element

- eg *as far as, as long as, as soon as, inasmuch as*

4 Multi-word subordinators of miscellaneous forms

- eg *as if, as though, in case*

4.1 As if

The subordinating conjunction **as if** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction states **what a situation seems like**, in what way it is viewed by others or how it is generally perceived (Meaning: *in a manner suggesting*; Synonyms: *as though, like*).
 - *It looks **as if** the company might face another difficult problem.*
*Výzerá to **tak, že** by spoločnosť mohla čeliť ďalšiemu zložitému problému.*
 - *You seem **as if** you were going to ask the supervisor for a pay rise.*
*Zdá sa, **akoby** si sa chystal požiadať vedúceho o zvýšenie platu.*

Language Note:

The conjunction can refer to both real and unreal meanings and senses, and is thus used with both present and past tenses to make the distinction clear-cut.

When referring to real or at least possible situations, *like* is followed by present tenses.

- *Ms Cunnings coughs **as if** she is going down with the flu.* ... maybe she IS
*Pani Cunningsová kašle, **akoby** mala chrípku.*
- *The supervisor talks **as if** he has always worked hard.* ... maybe he HAS
*Vedúci rozpráva, **akoby** bol vždy pracoval usilovne.*

When referring to unreal or imaginary situations, *as if* is followed by past tenses, or rather the forms of subjunctive II.

- *Ms Cunnings coughs **as if** she was / were going down with the flu.* ... but she is NOT
*Pani Cunningsová kašle, **akoby** mala chrípku.*
- *The supervisor talks **as if** he had always worked hard.* ... but he did NOT
*Vedúci rozpráva, **akoby** bol vždy pracoval usilovne.*

- 2 The conjunction is used to express **actions and situations which are not true** and to emphasise the emotional impact that is associated with them. This is often the case in exaggerations.

- *I feel **as if** I'm actually dying of thirst.*
*Cítim sa, **akoby** som skutočne zomieral od smädu.*
- *The accountant acts **as if** she were in charge of the whole department.*
*Účtovníčka pôsobí dojmom, **akoby** mala na starosti celé oddelenie.*

Exercise 159: Insert the conjunction *as if* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 It looks the financial analyst has forgotten something. 2 It feels the temperature was rising. 3 The applicant is fidgeting she couldn't answer the questions. 4 Your brother looks he's just seen a ghost. 5 It seems there's no other solution. 6 The defendant sat there smiling he were wrongly accused. 7 The soup tasted the cook had added some special favour to it. 8 The king was worried there was something serious on his mind. 9 The hermit stuffed his mouth he hadn't eaten for a whole month. 10 I were the one to blame! 11 The two of you look at each other you have met before. 12 It sounds the teamleader is going to apply for a new job. 13 Greg looks tired he spent the whole night at the office. 14 Tania has so little free time she were moon-lighting every single night of the week. 15 Kate could have robbed a bank!

Exercise 160: Rewrite the sentences to express real or unreal meanings as opposed to those already expressed by the original sentences. State whether your sentences refer to real or unreal meanings.

1 The gangster behaves as if he's the lord of the city.

The gangster _____.

2 It seems as if it's going to rain soon.

It seems _____.

3 The typist gave me such a black look as if I were responsible for the issues.

The typist _____.

4 The workmen are putting up the fence as if they had nothing else to do.

The workmen _____.

5 The model talks as if she's a millionaire already.

The model _____.

6 As if you spoke German!

As if _____!

7 As if you have a conscience!

As if _____!

8 The boy often holds his stomach before exams as if he's actually sick.

The boy _____.

9 You keep looking at me as if I'm a criminal or something.

You keep looking _____.

10 The designer appears to be so determined as if he is longing for a prize desperately.

The designer _____.

Exercise 161: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *as if* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The catalyst has worked as though it were a highly potent substance.

The catalyst _____.

2 Like you owned the world!

_____!

3 The dancers are rocking the club as though they were the best dancers in the whole wide world.

The dancers _____.

4 The chair speaks like he's the most important person on the committee.

The chair _____.

5 Anna's brother works really hard as though he's up for a big promotion.

Anna's brother _____.

6 Dave's prognosis was inaccurate as though he wanted to cause us trouble.

Dave's prognosis _____.

7 It looks like it's going to be a lovely day today.

It looks _____.

8 The shop assistant talks nice and sweet as though she's after something.

The shop assistant _____.

9 Like I cared!

_____!

10 As though you're going to tell us the truth, Martin.

_____, Martin.

Exercise 162: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Kňaz káže, akoby bol najmúdrejším mužom na svete. 2 Ako keby tvoj manžel o mne nevedel. 3 Vyzeráš, akoby si nespala celé dni. 4 Zdá sa, akoby už čoskoro začalo pršať. 5 Učiteľka rozpráva, akoby bola minulý rok skutočne v Londýne. 6 Vrah sa usmieva, akoby nebol ten zločin spáchal. 7 Gregorova mama pracuje skutočne veľmi usilovne, akoby sa mala postarať o celý svet. 8 Auto vyzerá úžasne, ako keby bolo to najlepšie na svete. 9 Zdá sa, že kráľovná je zamyslená, akoby ju niečo trápilo. 10 Ako keby chirurg svoju prácu neovládal! 11 Taxikár sa zvláštne zatváril, akoby nikdy v živote nebol nevidel Azijatku. 12 Chorý pacient si kýchol, akoby mal vážne zdravotné problémy. 13 Tvoja teta znie, akoby kandidovala na politickú funkciu. 14 Akoby som sa chcel do Francúzska skutočne presťahovať! 15 To mladé dievča začína vyzeráť, akoby neustále nejedla nič iné než čokoládu.

4.2 Assuming that

The subordinating conjunction **assuming (that)** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction emphasises that **something may not be true, real, right or as has been implied or suggested** (Synonyms: *if, provided, supposing*).
 - Assuming (that)** the trajectory has been calculated correctly, you should be able to see the target now.
Za predpokladu, že trajektória bola vypočítaná správne, teraz by ste mali vidieť cieľ.
 - The opinion poll might be quite accurate **assuming (that)** people from various backgrounds have expressed their honest opinions.
Prieskum verejnej mienky by mohol byť celkom presný za predpokladu, že ľudia z rôznych prostredí boli úprimní a vyjadrili svoj názor.
- The conjunction **accepts something as true, real, right or genuine although there might be no proof or a plausible explanation** for it. The subordinator implies that something is simply taken for a fact when it actually may not be one.
 - Assuming (that)** the board have known about the risks in advance, I don't believe they would have done anything differently.
Predpokladajme, že by komisia bola vedela o rizikách vopred, aj tak si nemyslím, že by urobili niečo inak.

- *Most mine workers wouldn't have the chance to take a different job even **assuming (that)** they were aware of the health risks related to this line of work.*
*Väčšina baníkov by nemala šancu nájsť si inú prácu aj **za predpokladu**, že by si boli vedomí zdravotných rizík, ktoré sú spojené s touto prácou.*

Exercise 163: Insert the conjunction *assuming (that)* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 There's still enough petrol in the tank, turn around and do another round. 2 The pipe might get broken there's too much pressure in it. 3 You have found a suitable place to rent, make sure to ask about the neighbours before you sign any contract. 4 Mr Grey will be waiting for you at the main gate you arrive before 5.00 pm. 5 The alarm clock will wake you up at 6.15 am you don't change the alarm settings. 6 The managing director doesn't turn up within ten minutes, the supplier is going to leave at once. 7 Miss Simmons could give you a hand you haven't solved the technical issue yet. 8 Gerry's uncle is going to visit Australia in the summer he's got enough money for the ticket. 9 The oil tycoon has plenty of money to spare, he could finance your expedition to the Himalayas. 10 There's enough space in the truck left, we could take some of your old stuff as well. 11 Basically, you can buy anything you want you've got enough money to pay for it. 12 The captain wouldn't have made any other decision he would have been able to foresee the storm. 13 Actually, the dude could do anything he likes his friends will protect him. 14 The show hasn't started yet, I'd like to get two tickets. 15 The bartender still works at the club, we'd like to have a word with him, Sir.

Exercise 164: Put a comma in the sentences below. Beware, the comma need not be used in every sentence.

1 Assuming that there's enough funds to cover the costs of the project will you give it a green light? 2 The company execs need to apologise assuming that they've really misjudged your proposal. 3 Mr Jon ought to get a pay rise assuming that he has delivered the results he says he has. 4 Assuming that there are no further questions we can have a short break now. 5 Assuming that the principal method is right the whole process will work just fine. 6 The dentist may make an awful lot of money assuming that his services are at a high level. 7 Assuming that the girl next door won't sell her bike you can always get a brand new one at the local shop. 8 Assuming that you never break any company rules do you get a bonus? 9 The boots are not made for walking in water assuming that they are not waterproof. 10 Miss Charleston can't compete in the contest assuming that she's never heard a single thing about maths. 11 Assuming that the characters in the novel are fictitious I can't see anything wrong with giving them some of the novelist's friends. 12 You may park your vehicle at the back assuming that there's still free lots. 13 Assuming that there's no problem now anymore I'd like to take my leave. 14 I've got some more questions assuming that you've still got some time. 15 The conference will be held at university assuming that the premises are large enough to accommodate sixty people.

Exercise 165: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *assuming (that)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If you give the new supervisor a chance, he might well surprise you.

_____ surprise you.

- 2 The number of churchgoers might rise a bit more provided your sermons get more down-to-earth.
The number of churchgoers _____.
- 3 Supposing the attorney general dropped the charges now, would your acquittal be accepted by the wider public?
Would _____?
- 4 Say you had won the lottery, what would you have done with the prize money?
What _____?
- 5 Ms Duck might give you a second chance should you have really changed for the better.
Ms Duck _____.
- 6 Let's say the terrorist cell was not acting on its own, who could have aided it?
_____ aided it?
- 7 The financial advisor may join the negotiation if she likes providing she's read all the documents required to contribute towards a satisfactory outcome.
The financial advisor _____.
- 8 The inexperienced detective will have his hands full if you don't help him out, Dave.
The inexperienced detective _____.
- 9 Suppose the florist had arranged the flowers in a more attractive way, would you really have paid as much as thirty dollars for a bouquet?
_____ for a bouquet?
- 10 Say he promised not to do such silly things again, would you be able to forgive him?
Would _____?

Exercise 166: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Za predpokladu, že sa obuvníkovi podarí opraviť tvoje staré čižmy, kúpiš si aj nové? 2 Dáš taxikárovi diško, ak nebudem mať pri sebe dost' peňazí? 3 Projekt by sa mohol zastaviť, ak vedúci projektu už čoskoro nedostane nové finančné prostriedky. 4 Princezná by sama zo zámku neodišla, teda ak nedostala list od svojej babičky. 5 Medvedie mláďa krutú zimu neprežije ak sa oňho poľovník dobre nepostará. 6 Za predpokladu, že si zamkneš dvere a zatvoriš okná, mal by si byť v bezpečí pred zlodejmi. 7 Developerov plán sa zrealizuje do apríla za predpokladu, že sa nevyskytnú žiadne ďalšie komplikácie. 8 Mladý pán Lloyds má šancu vyhrať vedeckú súťaž za predpokladu, že nikto nevymyslel lepší návrh. 9 Pán Thomson Vám nebude môcť poskytnúť podrobnejšie informácie, ak nebudete mať svoje zákaznícke číslo. 10 Predpokladajme, že strecha je úplne nová, potom by Vám nemalo zatekať prinajmenšom dvadsať rokov. 11 Starú vežu už možno čoskoro zbúrajú za predpokladu, že primátor nenájde nikoho, kto by ju do konca roka opravil. 12 Za predpokladu, že ideme správnym smerom, by sme sa mali dostať do dediny za približne hodinku. 13 Čas nemôže zastať, ak predpokladáme, že neexistuje žiadne zariadenie, ktoré by ho zastavilo. 14 Predpokladajme, že by minister bol vedel o stavebných prá-

cach, to si skutočne myslíte, že by ich bol zastavil? 15 Kráľ by bol nechal zlodeja obesit', ak by sa bol dozvedel o jeho zločinoch.

4.3 As though

The subordinating conjunction **as though** is used in the following ways:

1 The conjunction states **what a situation seems like**, in what way it is viewed by others or how it is generally perceived (Meaning: *in a manner suggesting*; Synonyms: *as if, like*).

- *It seems **as though** the manufacturer might be running into some financial problems soon.*
*Vyzerá to **tak**, že výrobcu by sa mohol čoskoro dostať do finančných problémov.*
- *You act **as though** nothing happened last night*
*Správaš sa, **akoby** sa večera večer nebolo nič stalo.*

Language Note:

The conjunction can refer to both real and unreal meanings and senses, and is thus used with both present and past tenses to make the distinction clear-cut.

When referring to real or at least possible situations, *like* is followed by present tenses.

- *The supplier speaks to us **as though** we are stealing from him.* ... maybe we ARE
*Dodávateľ sa s nami rozpráva, **akoby** sme ho okrádali.*
- *The chair talks about the issue **as though** it is nothing.* ... maybe it IS
*Predseda rozpráva o probléme, **akoby** o nič nešlo.*

When referring to unreal or imaginary situations, *as though* is followed by past tenses, or rather the forms of subjunctive II.

- *The supplier speaks to us **as though** we were stealing from him.* ... but we are NOT
*Dodávateľ sa s nami rozpráva, **akoby** sme ho okrádali.*
- *The chair talks about the issue **as though** it was / were nothing.* ... but it is NOT
*Predseda rozpráva o probléme, **akoby** o nič nešlo.*

2 The conjunction is used to express **actions and situations which are not true** and to emphasise the emotional impact that is associated with them. This is often the case in exaggerations.

- *I feel **as though** I'm actually flying.*
*Cítim sa, **akoby** som skutočne lietal.*
- *The manager is smiling **as though** she knew something about our deal.*
*Manažérka sa usmieva, **akoby** vedela niečo o našej dohode.*

Exercise 167: Insert the conjunction *as though* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The guards talk to me I broke a law or something. 2 You look you've just seen something terrible. 3 There were differences between the two of you! 4 It seems there's not enough time to finish the project. 5 The newsagent laughed he had some other information. 6 It seems as though it might get quite windy today. 7 You were sleeping you hadn't slept for days. 8 The biology teacher smiles he were the king of kings. 9 The ledger looks really upset somebody has crossed the line with her. 10 The entertainer sings the song so slowly she's never sung it before. 11 The plumber murmured something to himself he was thinking about a fast solution to the issue. 12 We didn't know the reason! 13 The maintenance crew were moving so slowly they didn't get paid for the job. 14 The soup tastes there was some foreign spice in it. 15 The clown speaks so loudly he could not hear himself say a word.

Exercise 168: Rewrite the sentences to express real or unreal meanings as opposed to those already expressed by the original sentences. State whether your sentences refer to real or unreal meanings.

1 The landlady has been behaving as though she owns the whole city, not just the block of flats.

The landlady _____.

2 Your brother keeps talking as though he had studied physics in every detail imaginable.

Your brother _____.

3 The Jacksons act as though they were the richest family in town.

The Jacksons _____.

4 The mechanic looks as though he's about to drop dead any moment now.

The mechanic _____.

5 The castle makes the impression as though it could collapse soon.

The castle _____.

6 The new computer is so slow as though it were broken.

The new computer _____.

7 The charming student looks as though she's having a good time.

The charming student looks _____.

8 Denise, you talk as though you had a hot potato in your mouth.

Denise, _____.

9 The air is so cold as though it is freezing.

The air _____.

10 The milkman seems so tired as though he hasn't slept for days.

The milkman _____.

Exercise 169: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *as though* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Uncle Carl is smiling as if he knew something about our secrets.

Uncle Carl _____.

2 Like Simon really cares about you and your feelings.

_____ your feelings.

3 I felt like I was being interrogated.

I felt _____.

4 Mike's car looked as if he hadn't washed it for months.

Mike's car _____.

5 The professor was speaking as if she was in pain.

The professor _____.

6 The doll speaks like it were a real human being.

The doll _____.

7 As if you didn't know better.

_____.

8 Like the accountant hadn't embezzled funds before!

_____ before!

9 The coach walks as if he had some knee injury.

The coach _____.

10 The tall guy hits like he were a pussy.

The tall guy _____.

Exercise 170: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Výskumník klame, akoby financovanie celého projektu záviselo od jeho prejavu. 2 Výsledky boli sfaľšované, ako keby nesprávne a klamlivé informácie mohli zachrániť manažérovi prácu. 3 Ako keby si nikdy nebol v New Yorku! 4 Pán Brown sedel za stolom, nič nerobil a ani nič nehovoril, ako keby bol v tranze. 5 Katkini rodičia sa tvárili šokovane, akoby neboli vedeli, čo ich dcéra robieva po večeroch. 6 Drevo je vlhké, akoby ho neskladovali v suchom sklade. 7 Právnik bol veľmi ticho, ako keby nemal ani vôbec čo povedať. 8 Elektrikár napájal zariadenie tak opatrne, akoby niekoho operoval. 9 Zlato včera v noci zmizlo, ako keby v trezore nikdy ani len nebolo. 10 Ako keby bežní ľudia politikov skutočne trápili! 11 Profesorka rozprávala tak potichu, akoby mala problémy s hrdlom. 12 Náš sused odvedľa si vždy púšťa hudbu tak hlasno, akoby bol starý hluchý rocker. 13 Kaskadér zoskočil z útesu, akoby šlo o realitu. 14 Jurajova citlivá priateľka neustále plakala počas celého filmu, akoby to bol jej otec, ktorý zomrel hneď na začiatku. 15 Martin a jeho priatelia sa správali tak hnusne, akoby chceli Laure úmyselne ublížiť.

4.4 As far as

The subordinating conjunction *as far as* is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction can cooccur with *concerned* to refer to **a person's opinion** (Synonyms: *in one's opinion*; *I think/he/she/it thinks*, etc).
 - *The crazy scientists can blow up the whole lab as far as I'm concerned.*
Pre mňa za mňa môžu šialení vedci celé laboratórium aj do vzduchu vyhodiť.
 - *As far as Henry is concerned, the production of the tablet computer should be discontinued asap.*
Podľa Henryho by sa výroba tohto tabletu mala zastaviť čo najskôr.
- 2 The conjunction can cooccur with *concerned* to refer to **a particular thing that is being discussed or thought about** (Synonyms: *as for*; *regarding*; *concerning*; *with respect to*; *as relates to*).
 - *I suppose the company does need a change in leadership as far as innovation is concerned.*
Myslím si, že čo sa týka inovácií spoločnosť skutočne potrebuje zmenu vo vedení.

- *As far as real estates are concerned, you won't find a better agency than ours.*
Na konto nehnuteľností, nikde nenájdete lepšiu agentúru než je tá naša.

3 The conjunction can cooccur with the subject pronoun *I* and a verb expressing opinion **to state what a person believes to be true, real, right or genuine** even though there may be some facts or circumstances which remain unknown or which the person cannot remember.

- *There are no more free funds at our disposal, as far as I know.*
Pokiaľ viem, nemáme už k dispozícii žiadne voľné finančné prostriedky.
- *As far as I can remember, there hasn't been a single robbery in our neighbourhood for twenty years.*
Ak si dobre pamätám, v našom okolí nedošlo k žiadnej lúpeži už dvadsať rokov.

4 The conjunction can cooccur with *it goes* to state that **something displays good properties though they are of limited nature**.

- *The movie you recommended to me last week was good as far as it goes.*
Film, ktorý si mi minulý týždeň odporučil bol celkom dobrý.
- *Dr Lawrencen's latest theory is sound as far as it goes.*
Najnovšia teória Dr. Lawrenca je taká dobrá ako sa len dá.

Exercise 171: Insert the conjunction *as far as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 I recall, you have not been invited to the meeting. 2 I'm told, the power plant is to produce twice as much energy as its predecessor. 3 Our former physics teacher has recently moved to a different field I know. 4 The production of the blockbuster movie is progressing rather slowly the cast are concerned. 5 The flats in this neighbourhood are particularly expensive it reads in the paper. 6 The short story I've been reading for the past few months is very thrilling indeed it goes. 7 I can remember, there's always been a Duke overseeing the stock exchange. 8 I'm concerned, you can keep my share of the company. 9 The off-shore retailer needs to generate more profit the investors are concerned. 10 The technical staff are concerned, you may rest assured, everything is in good hands. 11 There will be no delays in deliveries, I know. 12 I've been informed, the research project is going according to plan. 13 I haven't seen your brother all day long official business is concerned. 14 The new printer is a fine piece of technology it goes. 15 I hear, the conference should start on Monday.

Exercise 172: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *as far as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Jack thinks the company is not going to survive the tough competition.

_____ the tough competition.

2 I think the car manufacturer needs to find more business partners in China.

_____ business partners in China.

3 Lucy claims Michael is going to be the next attorney general.

_____ attorney general.

4 The housing construction ought to be concluded by November; or so it says in the paper.

_____ by November.

5 As for the order, the goods are expected to be on the premises within a week.

_____ within a week.

6 Maya says she can speak Spanish perfectly.

_____ perfectly.

7 In Paul's opinion, the new cardigans don't look as lovely as the old ones.

_____ the old ones.

8 Regarding invoice No 34, we still haven't been able to find it in either the front or the back office.

_____ or the back office.

9 As for myself, I'm perfectly satisfied with the working conditions.

_____ the working conditions.

10 The call centre agent doesn't know what to do regarding a difficult customer.

The call centre agent _____.

Exercise 173: Complete the gaps with the most suitable words using the conjunction *as far as*.

1 As far as David _____ concerned, we have a minor bug in the main framework. 2 There seems to be a misunderstanding as far as the invoice is _____. 3 As far as the broken goods _____ concerned, you can take them away right away. 4 The carpet is rather clean as far as it _____. 5 As far as _____ know, there should be five bottle of whiskey here. Jack told me so himself. 6 My supervisor says there are no issues, just solutions as far as _____ is concerned. 7 As _____ as the special equipment is concerned, the delivery is scheduled for Thursday afternoon. 8 As far _____ the latest acquisition is concerned, we are quite hopeful that the new partner will boost our profit by two per cent at least. 9 As far as my associate and _____ are concerned, the hand-over should take place on 20 February. Mr Haroldson told us so yesterday. 10 _____ far as the radios are concerned, they should be distributed this afternoon.

Exercise 174: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ak si dobre spomínam, marketingový manažér sa mal vrátiť zo služobnej cesty v pondelok. 2 Dávid mi povedal, že pri implementácii nového softvérového riešenia sa nevyskytli žiadne problémy čo sa týka čipu. 3 Ak si dobre pamätám, žiaden z mojich priateľov ten telefonát nespravil. 4 Čo sa týka poznámok, nikdy som taký obrovský chaos nevidel. 5 A k teleskopu, je taký dobrý ako len môže byť. 6 Čo sa mňa týka, finančný analytik v kalkuláciách neurobil žiadne chyby. 7 Pokiaľ viem, pápež Čínu nikdy nenavštívil. 8 Toto je tak povediac to najlepšie auto, ktoré som kedy šoféroval. 9 Musíme si robiť starosti a musíme si robiť veľké starosti, pokiaľ ide o konkurenciu. 10 Mníška sa dnes s kňazom nerozprávala, ak sa spýtate brata Vincenta. 11 Čo sa týka tých najlepších výrobkov, radšej by si mal uzatvoriť zmluvu s firmou Lambert & Co. 12 Pokiaľ ide o Petrovich študentov, jednoducho mrhali jeho časom. 13 Komunikácia vo firme je strašná, keď ide o administratívu. 14 Podľa toho, čo som sa

dopočul, firma už flaše nebude vyrábať. 15 Čo viem, do konca roka by sa malo prepustiť dvesto zamestnancov.

4.5 As long as

The subordinating conjunction **as long as** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **conditions** and **requirements**, ie it states that one action or event must happen before another action or event can happen (Synonyms: *if, provided, assuming*).
 - *The cook doesn't mind us using the kitchen from time to time **as long as** we clean up the mess we make afterwards.*
*Kuchárovi nevadí, ak z času na čas využívame jeho kuchyňu, **ak** ju po sebe upraceme.*
 - ***As long as** co-workers can trust each other, there's no need to be worried.*
Kým si kolegovia dôverujú, nie je dôvod na starosti.
- 2 The conjunction conveys **a temporal meaning** referring to an activity which occurs at the same time as another activity or event. (Synonyms: *since, while, whilst*).
 - *Your friends might help us out **as long as** they are here to visit you, Martin.*
*Tvoji priatelia by nám mohli vypomôcť, **kým** sú u teba na návšteve, Martin.*
 - ***As long as** the electrician is here, he could have a look at the broken light in the kitchen.*
***Keď** je už elektrikár tu, mohol by sa pozrieť na pokazené svetlo v kuchyni.*

Language Note:

Though a bit less common, the phrase *so long as* may be substituted for *as long as* with no difference of meaning. *So-long-as*-phrases are not nearly as widespread in both British and American English as their *as-long-as*-counterparts.

Exercise 175: Insert the conjunction *as long as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The young party member won't become PM the party leader lives. 2 The dentist checked my upper teeth too I was in his surgery. 3 The real estate agent hasn't confirmed the applicant's creditworthiness, she won't approve the gentleman's request. 4 Our customer is willing to pay a higher price you can offer him better services. 5 Our neighbour doesn't want to see any children in his house he's still the owner. 6 The inexperienced CEO remains nice and polite, she won't make much money. 7 The manufacturer might well go bankrupt in the end he keeps to his outdated policies. 8 You don't come bothering me, I don't really care what you do. 9 Laura's parents do not interfere with their daughter's private life she's happy. 10 The thieves keep their mouths shut, they can't be caught in a lie. 11 The gate will remain shut the visitors are here. 12 The plumber does not have much work to do now, he could take a look at the leak in the washbasin. 13 The guitarist plays really well she doesn't party all night long. 14 I can't give you any details you don't tell me what exactly is wrong with the scanner. 15 The investigator will leave you alone you send him some information from time to time.

Exercise 176: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *as long as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If there's enough food in the fridge, the kids won't bother you at all, Joe.

_____ at all, Joe.

- 2 Since I haven't had a chance to go through the documentation, I can't really say much.
 _____, I can't really say much.
- 3 Provided the plan doesn't fall through, we still stand a fighting chance, Daria.
 _____ a fighting chance, Daria.
- 4 While the sheriff is in town, he might help us with our little problem.
 _____ our little problem.
- 5 The investigation can't be closed if the detectives don't find the murder weapon.
 The investigation _____.
- 6 You're not allowed to consume these drinks unless you're over 18.
 You're not allowed _____.
- 7 Jack and I can join your study group tonight provided we finish by 5.00 pm.
 Jack and I _____.
- 8 Each of you can bring a friend or two along, but make sure not to bring more than two each.
 Each of you _____.
- 9 Assuming the hold-up was a prank and nobody has pressed charges against you by Tuesday, then we will let you walk free.
 _____, then we will let you walk free.
- 10 Since you're home tonight, you could make the dinner for a change, darling.
 _____ for a change, darling.

Exercise 177: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The Dutchinsons have lived in this house as long as I can remember. **since**
 The Dutchinsons _____.
- 2 As long as the costs don't rise over 2.5 per cent, we should be safe and sound. **provided**
 _____ safe and sound.
- 3 As long as the kidnappers don't give up their firearms now, they might end up gunned down in ten minutes. **unless**
 _____ in ten minutes.
- 4 No robber will try to break in as long as there is an armed guard standing in front of the house. **while**
 No robber _____.
- 5 As long as you keep memorising that story of yours, make sure to get the details right. **whilst**
 _____ the details right.
- 6 The boat should be anchored directly in the harbour as long as there are free lots. **so long as**
 _____ in the harbour.

- 7 As long as you're not busy tonight, you might give me a hand with the new sofa. **providing**
 _____ with the new sofa.
- 8 As long as there's nobody in the office, I'll open the windows wide and air the room. **so long as**
 I'll open the windows _____.
- 9 The wealthy lady will support my activities as long as doesn't find out about my affairs. **unless**
 The wealthy lady _____.
- 10 As long as applicants keep talking, they can't be asked silly or difficult questions. **provided**
 _____ silly or difficult questions.

Exercise 178: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Predajca bude predávať čokoľvek, pokiaľ mu bude cena dobrá. 2 Herec vezme akúkoľvek úlohu, len ak mu dobre zaplatia. 3 Kým neviem čo sa deje, nebudem komentovať jej poznámky. 4 Športovec môže natočiť reklamu, ak bude výrobok propagovať zadarmo. 5 Kým stávka platí, stále máte šancu Dana poraziť. 6 Kapitána nezaujímalo zdravie svojich chlapov, pokiaľ sa dostal do ďalšieho prístavu. 7 Kým mi neukážete svoj preukaz, na štadión sa nedostanete. 8 Ak si budeš dávať pozor, nič sa nemôže stať. 9 Vaše podmienky prijímam, pokiaľ nebudete robiť žiadne zmeny na poslednú chvíľu. 10 Ak budete trpezliví, svoje ciele dosiahnete. 11 Kým bude existovať inflácia, ceny pôjdu hore. 12 Nič sa nezmení, ak sa nikto z nás neosmelí a nepovie čo si myslí. 13 Ak sa budete držať plánu, nič sa nemôže stať. 14 Váš chorý brat sa iste uzdraví, ak bude brať tieto lieky. 15 Zákazníci budú kupovať tieto isté výrobky, kým na trh nevstúpi nový výrobca.

4.6 As soon as

The subordinating conjunction **as soon as** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction states that an action or event occurs **at the same time or immediately after** another action or event (Synonyms: *when, immediately after, the moment that*).
 - The take-over will be ready **as soon as** the last point on the contract has been negotiated to the full satisfaction of both parties.*
*Prevzatie spoločnosti bude pripravené **hneď, ako** sa dohodne posledný bod zmluvy tak, aby boli spokojné obe strany.*
 - As soon as** the merger has taken place, a new CEO will be appointed to function.*
***Akonáhle** sa fúzia uskutoční, do funkcie bude vymenovaný nový generálny riaditeľ.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- Just come and see us **as soon as** you are in town again.*
*Jednoducho nás príd'te navštíviť **hneď, ako** budete opäť v meste.*
- As soon as** the lunch break is over, the staff have to go back to their work.*
***Akonáhle** sa obedová prestávka skončí, sa zamestnanci musia vrátiť k svojej práci.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *as soon as* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *The attack will commence **as soon as** the outpost has received the confirmation of enemy positions.*
*Útok začne **akonáhle** základňa dostane potvrdenie o pozíciách nepriateľa.*
- ***As soon as** the payment has been made, the customer will have his goods shipped.*
***Hneď, ako** sa uskutoční platba, sa tovar zákazníčkovi odošle.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Exercise 179: Insert the conjunction *as soon as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The break is over, come and see me in the office. 2 The Prime Minister is going to visit his Italian counterpart he's returned from South Africa. 3 The match is to continue it stops raining. 4 The water will freeze the temperature has dropped below zero degrees. 5 The bonfire celebrations begin, the mayor will address the public. 6 The customer ran out of the shopping centre the shooting began. 7 You ought to have your ears checked you're in hospital. 8 The comedian finishes his performance, he wants to go and see his sick daughter. 9 The bucket fell through the ceiling the maid put it down. 10 I became aware of the murderer's presence in the alley, I rushed back to the mall. 11 The lover left the house quickly he saw my husband in the driveway. 12 The social networking operator is to issue the first shares he's got the new website up and running. 13 The company wants to go mainstream it gets its mass production underway. 14 The old lady has locked her door, a masked man jumped out of the bush and snatched her purse. 15 I'll get back to you I'm in town again.

Exercise 180: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *as soon as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The horse became uneasy the moment it felt its master's touch.

The horse _____.

2 The second the door opened, three armed guys ran in and started shouting.

_____ started shouting.

3 My sister might chip in and help us buy the stereo when she gets paid on Thursday.

My sister _____.

4 Jack quit smoking cold turkey after he realised the fags had been making him sick.

Jack quit _____.

5 The instant the weather changed for the better, the children ran into the garden and started playing.

_____ and started playing.

6 The meeting can start immediately after Mr Thomson's arrival.

The meeting _____.

7 We will credit your gaming account with the 15,000 points on receipt of your payment.

We will _____.

8 Have a look at the corrupt data files when you come to the office, Sarah.

Have a look _____.

9 After you finish peeling the onions, why don't you wash the salad?

_____ the salad?

10 The moment the bartender decided to move to Argentina, we knew he would never be back again.

_____ be back again.

Exercise 181: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 As soon as the form master has finished marking the students' homework, he'll go home. **when**

The form master _____.

2 Li-fi technology is likely to change the way we connect to the Internet as soon as it becomes available to the wider public. **the instant**

Li-fi _____.

3 The conference will be over as soon as the director of studies has finished his speech. **after**

The conference _____.

4 The documents shall be destroyed as soon as you have read them through, Jackson. **the instant**

The documents _____.

5 The caretaker is likely to take it easy for a few days as soon as he comes back from hospital. **when**

The caretaker _____.

6 As soon as the information has been confirmed, the troops will charge the enemy. **the second**

_____ charge the enemy.

7 The phone always starts ringing as soon as I turn on the telly. **immediately after**

The phone _____.

8 As soon as the students have figured out the result, send Thomas to the headmaster. **when**

_____ to the headmaster.

9 Flight BA-493 should land as soon as the runway has been cleared. **the instant**

Flight BA-493 _____.

10 As soon as you have the presentation ready, give me a buzz, will you? **once**

_____, will you?

Exercise 182: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Akonáhle začal zvonček zvonit', bežali psy k dverám. 2 Policajti vtrhli do školy, hneď ako ostrostre-

lec trafil terorista. 3 Nepriateľ sa z mesta stiahol, len čo sa dopyčul, že vládne posily sú už na ceste. 4 Satelit utrpel poruchu, akonáhle ho zasiahol meteorický roj. 5 Hneď ako odidem z bytu chcem, aby si zamkla dvere a nikomu neotvárala. 6 Akonáhle nám dodali novú tlačiareň, starú sme uložili do suterénu. 7 Vedci z našej univerzity začnú výskumný projekt, hneď ako im budú pridelené financie. 8 Hneď ako manažér prediskutuje záležitosť s finančným riaditeľom, sa s ním porozprávame. 9 Nočný vlak odišiel zo stanice, len čo dal sprievodca signál rušňovodičovi. 10 Akonáhle môj syn skončí univerzitu, rád by sa presťahoval do Kanady. 11 Len čo okresný prokurátor získal dostatok dôkazov na zatknutie vraha, podal proti nemu obvinenie. 12 Otrokárka v našej firme rozčuluje každého okolo seba, hneď čo príde do práce. 13 Softvérový inžinier začne predávať novú hru, len čo zistí, ako najlepšie dosiahne čo najvyšší zisk. 14 Akonáhle bude mať Jack osemnásť, chce odísť z domu a cestovať po svete. 15 Cyklista sa na ulici zrútil, hneď ako vypil trochu tej zvláštnej vody vo fľaši.

4.7 But that

The subordinating conjunction **but that** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction follows a negative **to put emphasis on an action or event which is certain, sure or definite**. The three most common negative forms used with the construction are *no doubt*, *no way* and *no question*.
 - There's no doubt but that the prisoner must have had somebody to help him on the inside. Niet pochybností o tom, že väzňovi musel pomáhať niekto z vnútra.*
 - There seems to be no question about the minister's point of view but that he's opposed to the whole concept of modern agriculture. Zdá sa, že o stanovisku ministra sa nedá pochybovať, jednoducho je proti celému konceptu moderného poľnohospodárstva.*

Language Note:

The conjunction is mostly used in rather formal registers nowadays, usually in the written discourse.

Exercise 183: Insert the conjunction *but that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 There's no way the ship needs new coating. 2 There seems to be no question about John's integrity he's got none whatsoever. 3 There's no doubt the party finished a bit earlier than expected. 4 There's little doubt the Simpsons won't move to Florida. 5 I've got no doubt the junior marketing manager is the next in line for a big promotion. 6 There doesn't seem to be a plausible explanation for Simon's behaviour he's lost it. 7 There's no question about his lack of interest he's a self-absorbed stingy dude. 8 We've got no doubt the company won't make as much profit as first expected. 9 There's no telling what the mad gangster will do now it won't be a pretty sight. 10 There's no other way the shipment was lost at sea.

Exercise 184: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *but that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 There was little doubt that the crimes had been committed by an organised group.

There was _____.

2 There seems to be no reason for such drastic action except if you were offended.

There seems to be _____.

3 There's no doubt that the butcher committed the murder.

There's no doubt _____.

4 There's no way that the security guard hadn't fallen asleep during the night.

There's no way _____.

5 There's no doubt that the competition must get stronger.

There's no doubt _____.

6 There's no question that there's something wrong with the application.

There's no question _____.

7 There's little hope that the headmaster will change his mind.

There's _____.

8 I can't find any explanation for the bombing except that the men were dissatisfied with their lives.

I can't find _____.

9 There's no other way except that you break in at night.

There's no other way _____.

10 There's no telling why the desert has gone so dried except that people must have made a significant negative impact on the environment in the area.

There's no _____.

Exercise 185: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Niet pochýb o tom, že hrad nie je možné dobyť. 2 Niet pochýb o tom, že mladý pán si ostrov podmani. 3 Neexistuje žiadna iná alternatíva, než tá, že nepriateľ bude do jedného či dvoch dní porazený. 4 Nepochybujem o tom, že sa s nami naši druhovia stretnú v útočisku. 5 Zdá sa, že niet mnoho pochybností o tom, že lietajúci roboti zlyhali. 6 Kráľ veľmi neverí, že sa bude musieť vzdať. 7 Niet iného vysvetlenia, než že nás chemik zradil. 8 Niet inej alternatívy, než že sa loď potopí, ak trhlinu neopravíme. 9 Niet pochybností o tom, že súťaž vyhral úplne férovo. 10 Nepochybujeme o tom, že výskumný projekt bude úspešný.

4.8 Considering that

The subordinating conjunction **considering(that)** is used in the following way:

1 The conjunction introduces a fact or condition which **lessens the impact of the main idea** as it usually indicates a disadvantage or obstacle of some kind (Synonyms: *inasmuch as, given, as*).

- *You learn very fast, George, **considering (that)** this is your first international negotiation. Juraj, učíš sa veľmi rýchlo **vzhľadom na to, že** toto je tvoje prvé medzinárodné rokovanie.*
- ***Considering (that)** the company has been in business for twenty years, you must have done a heck of a job, Mr Carlson.*

Ak vezmeme do úvahy, že spoločnosť funguje už dvadsať rokov, iste ste odviedli skvelú prácu, pán Carlson.

Exercise 186: Insert the conjunction *considering (that)* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The father has not come to his son's tournament, you can tell what kind of father he is. 2 Jack doesn't want to talk to me anymore I told him off on Monday. 3 Jane's parents would like to move to Florida their best friends live there. 4 Dan's advancement in the company, it's no surprise he doesn't want to be seen with the likes of yours. 5 The windows should remain closed it's minus forty degrees outside. 6 The candle should not get wet it won't be easy to dry. 7 I thought you'd be enjoying the game it's your favourite team who are playing. 8 The negotiations didn't go very well the chair burst out into a fit of anger. 9 Your nasty behaviour lately, I've decided not to help you anymore. 10 The children will be disappointed they were looking forward to meeting their favourite clown in person. 11 your dad and his driving skills, I think you should be the designated driver tonight, James. 12 The milk must be off it's been sitting on the table in the scorching sun for two hours. 13 There's no other way out, we'll have to fight. 14 The microchip is worth more than my yearly salary it's brand new and extremely powerful. 15 You might want to think about joining the academy again, Sally, you're not so good at figures.

Exercise 187: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *considering (that)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 As the applicant lacks experience, we can't offer her a salary of more than 60,000 dollars a year.
_____ 60,000 dollars a year.
- 2 The broker won't give you any further advice given your rude manners and impatient character.
The broker _____.
- 3 The shopping centre will be pulled down soon as no investor is willing to pay for the repair work.
The shopping centre _____.
- 4 Seeing that you're not interested in my offer, I may as well take my leave.
_____ take my leave.
- 5 Since the downpayment is quite high, the instalments should be rather low, shouldn't they?
The instalments _____ ?
- 6 The case will be handed over to a different judge because the Honorable Jeffrey H. Wilkins has had some personal dealings with the defendant.
The case _____.
- 7 Due to the fact that the singer has lost her voice, the concert should be cancelled right away.
_____ right away.
- 8 The tourist should be thankful to the doctors for all their care since he may have lost more than just a little time if they hadn't cured him then and there.

The tourist _____ .

9 The search party couldn't continue looking for the lost trackers owing to severe weather conditions.

The search party _____ .

10 Given Laura's excellent acting skills, she won't have any problems getting a new job really soon.

_____ really soon.

Exercise 188: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Considering the governor has lost the vast majority of his supporters, he does not stand a fighting chance at the next election. **given**

The governor _____ .

2 The rock band can make a huge amount of money considering its popularity has been on the rise ever since they brought out their latest album. **since**

The rock band _____ .

3 Louis won't spot you any more money considering you haven't paid him back what you borrowed from him half a year ago yet. **because**

_____ any more money.

4 The mafia boss decided that his son should be the one found holding the smoking gun considering he had blown the whole operation. **as**

The mafia boss _____ .

5 Considering the bounty hunter's resilience, we could see the killer behind bars real soon. **looking at**

We could _____ .

6 I'd like to vouch for the master considering he's been a tremendous help to me so far. **in view of**

I'd like to _____ .

7 Considering Jason's latest achievements, he might climb the career ladder really fast. **on account of**

_____ career ladder really fast.

8 The huntsman will have killed over a million deer by the time he retires considering his outdoor activities. **knowing**

The huntsman _____ .

9 You'll get us in trouble sooner or later considering you can't keep your mouth shut. **owing to**

You'll _____ .

10 Considering the manager's outbursts of anger, he will have to have a word with the CEO. **due to**

The manager _____ .

Exercise 189: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ak zvažime, že svetlá práve zhasli v celej dedine, problém nemôže byť len v našom dome. 2 Je mi ľúto, ale Váš brat o poľnohospodárstve iste veľa nevie, keďže tento odbor nikdy neštudoval a ani

nikdy nepracoval na farme. 3 Vzhľadom na to, že počasie sa zhoršilo, búrku budeme musieť prečkať v tejto chate. 4 Zdá sa, že nový mechanik nevie zistiť, v čom je problém, pretože už dvakrát požiadal o pomoc. 5 Ten televízor je iste úžasný, keď si vezmeme, koľko peňazí si zaň pýtajú. 6 Nedokážem ti prepáčiť, pretože si ma už tak veľa krát oklamal. 7 Keďže si dva roky strávil vo väzení, nebudeš to mať ľahké nájsť si slušnú prácu. 8 Vzhľadom na to, že generálny riaditeľ nie je v meste, nemôže sa o situáciu postarať okamžite. 9 Právnik by sa najskôr rád porozprával so svedkom, berúc do úvahy závažnosť obvinení. 10 Vzhľadom na to, že maliar je taký emocionálny, možno budeš mať problémy uzavrieť s ním dohodu. 11 Keďže akadémii sa peniaze už minuli, nebude teraz ľahké udržať učiteľov motivovaných. 12 Väčšina študentov sa na univerzitu nedostane, lebo veľa času učením sa netrávia. 13 Keďže primátor pre ľudí nič neurobil, nemali by ho opäť zvoliť. 14 Tie žraloky nie sú nebezpečné, nakoľko svojmu cvičiteľovi už tri roky nijako neublížili. 15 Tie hrýby budú možno jedovaté, lebo môj priateľ sa vyhádzal len deň, potom čo ich jedol.

4.9 Except that

The subordinating conjunction *except (that)* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction introduces a statement which **explains the motivation why** an action or event is not possible, true, real, or will not happen (Synonyms: *but, because*).
 - *I'd've helped Sarah, of course, **except (that)** I myself had a short deadline. Samozrejme, že by som bol Sára pomohol, **no** sám som mal krátky termín.*
 - *Some shareholders would like to sell the company **except (that)** they don't have as many votes as to make it happen. Niektorí akcionári by chceli spoločnosť predat' až **na to**, že nemajú toľko hlasov, aby sa im to podarilo uskutočniť.*

Language Note:

The conjunction is usually used in rather informal registers, mostly in the spoken discourse.

Exercise 190: Insert the conjunction *except (that)* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 I'd love to give you a hand, Michael, I don't understand a thing about microbiology. 2 Dr Stevens must be around here somewhere, I'm not sure where. 3 The witnesses should have told the court the truth, they were too afraid for their own lives to do so. 4 Andy's car is awesome, it's not very reliable. 5 I was invited to the party, I didn't want to go, really. 6 The bungalow needs to be pulled down, the tenants are refusing to vacate it saying they've got nowhere else to stay. 7 The caring mother doesn't want the children to go out on their own at night, nobody listens to her. 8 The manager would like to give our project the green light, there's still the small problem of insufficient funding troubling her. 9 The new farming method is no different from its predecessor, you do not use as many fertilisers. 10 The detective's deductive powers might be overwhelming, he didn't have all the evidence in this case. 11 The general wanted to encourage his soldiers before going to battle, there were no encouraging words on his mind then. 12 The research assistant would be glad to help us with the experiment, he's going to be out of town tomorrow. 13 The zealous professor would let us know if he needed some-

thing, he might have lost track of time again. 14 The police might capture the arsonist, they've got a really poor description of the man. 15 I don't want to rain on your parade, the conclusions you have drawn don't seem realistic.

Exercise 191: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *except (that)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 I suppose the financial analyst doesn't want to talk to Charles but she's got to.

I suppose _____ .

2 We've been working on the project for weeks now. Unfortunately, we're not going to keep the deadline no matter how many people give us a hand now.

We've been working _____ .

3 The postman has inquired about some reinforcements, but his boss doesn't want to hire any extra help.

The postman _____ .

4 The chauffeur would like to solve the problem on his own, yet he doesn't know how.

The chauffeur _____ .

5 The manager is supposed to know about such important details. Unfortunately, nobody ever tells him all the fact necessary to do his job properly.

The manager _____ .

6 Although the suspect might have committed the crime, he doesn't strike me as the killer type who would murder two people and then have a cold drink in the pub.

The suspect _____ .

7 Some local farmers would like to pay back their loans. They are, however, lacking the financial means to do so.

Some local farmers _____ .

8 Still, the vendors didn't know all the risks.

_____ .

9 The deal seems to be extremely important to the CEO, yet I can't figure out why.

The deal _____ .

10 The murderer had obviously planned to kill the landlord. Nonetheless, there doesn't seem to be any way he might have got inside her apartment.

The murderer _____ .

Exercise 192: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 This is a dangerous situation, except nobody's ever listened to the likes of us. **unfortunately**

This is _____ .

- 2 The shop owner doesn't want to sell his late father's shop, except he doesn't make enough money to keep it running any longer. **yet**
The shop owner _____ .
- 3 The poor boy would like to buy his mother a Christmas gift, except he doesn't have any money at all. **but**
The poor boy _____ .
- 4 I can't tell you much right now, except that I'm doing fine. **apart from**
I can't _____ .
- 5 The pack of wolves is extremely dangerous, except they don't come close to the village. **fortunately**
The pack of wolves _____ .
- 6 The broker needs to pay his taxes, except that he's quite broke at the moment. **but**
The broker _____ .
- 7 I'm running out of time, except that there's still a lot I need to tell you. **still**
I'm running _____ .
- 8 The plane is flying towards the runway, except that it should be circling the airport. **however**
The plane _____ .
- 9 The phone doesn't seem to be working properly, except the battery is fully charged and the signal quality is high as well. **nonetheless**
The battery _____ .
- 10 I'd have called you, Sarah, except that my phone had broken down. **if**
I'd have _____ .

Exercise 193: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Študent by sa mal porozprávať so školskou poradkyňou, no on sa odmieta otvoriť komukoľvek. 2 O politike toho veľa neviem, až na to, že je to špinavá záležitosť. 3 Jack mi o svojej ceste do Japonska veľa nepovedal okrem toho, že to boli dva neuveriteľné týždne. 4 Okamžite by som Vás poslal k manažérovi, no tento týždeň je mimo mesta. 5 Až na to, že izba vyzerá ako chliev. 6 Chodci mali všetko povedať policajtom, ale taký divoký príbeh by im nikdy neboli uverili. 7 Chlapci mohli zmeniť život starca, ale oni sa namiesto toho rozhodli byť sebeckí. 8 Jack mi povedal, že sa už čoskoro presťahuje do Írska, no nikdy sa tak nestane. 9 Tajný agent vie veľa o súkromnom živote ministra, avšak nikdy by nič nikomu nevyzradil. 10 Obecný farár študoval na univerzite archeológiu, ale štúdium sa rozhodol prerušiť. 11 V podkroví sme nenašli nič zvláštne, až na nezvyčajnú parochňu, ktorá visela na lustry. 12 Majiteľka krčmy by Vám ten kľúč dala, ale nepamätá si, kam ho položila. 13 Tréner by bol klub zamkol, no kľúč si zabudol doma. 14 Domovník by ťa bol možno pustil dnu, ale nespoznal ťa, Henry. 15 Chytrý mladík sa rozišiel s tou jeho príšernou priateľkou, ale zabudol vymeniť zámky na dverách.

4.10 Excepting that

The subordinating conjunction *excepting that* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction conveys **a condition**, ie it states that if one action or event does not happen, another action or event will happen or come true as a result. In the vast majority of cases, *excepting that* is preceded by *not* (Synonyms: *unless, if ... not, except if*).
 - *One cannot get in the restaurant **excepting that** they have been invited by the host.*
*Do reštaurácie sa nedostanete, **ak** Vás hostiteľ nepozval.*
 - ***Excepting that** there are no charges, the suspect should not be detained any longer.*
***Ak** neexistujú žiadne obvinenia, podozrivého by ste nemali dlhšie zadržiavať.*

Language Note:

The conjunction is almost non-existent in modern English and is, in fact, replaced by *unless* and *if ... not* in both formal and informal registers.

4.11 For all that

The subordinating conjunction *for all (that)* is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction shows that **an action or event does not matter** to someone or that **someone does not care** about a particular action or event. The two most common set phrases using *for all (that)* are *for all (that) somebody knows* and *for all (that) somebody cares*.
 - *The bank robbers can go wherever they like, **for all I care**.*
Pre mňa za mňa môžu ísť bankovní lupiči kamkoľvek len chcú.
 - ***For all we know**, the gold could be buried behind the barn.*
***Napriek tomu, čo vieme**, by zlato mohlo byť zakopané za stodolou.*

Language Note:

The conjunction is mostly used in informal registers, especially in the spoken discourse.

- 2 The conjunction implies that something happens or does not happen irrespective of the facts or circumstances which precede the action or event in question (Synonyms: *despite, in spite of, even though, although, notwithstanding*).
 - *The investigator still refuses to believe the truth **for all that** evidence he's seen with his own eyes.*
*Výšetrovateľ stále nechce uveriť pravdu, **hoci** dôkazy videl na vlastné oči.*
 - ***For all that** the wealthy lady has helped our son in many a situation, I still don't believe she's a good match for him.*
***Napriek tomu, že** zámožná dáma pomohla nášmu synovi v mnohých situáciách, **predsa** si nemyslím, že je preňho dobrou partnerkou.*

Language Note:

The conjunction is hardly ever used in this way these days. If it is used with the meaning of 'despite', it is usually used as a preposition followed by an object, not a clause though.

- *The receptionist doesn't have as good an eyesight as she used to but she does a good job looking after the guests **for all that**.*
*Recepčnej už zrak neslúži tak ako kedysi, no **predsa** odvádza dobrú práca a dokáže sa o hostí dobre postarať.*
- *Unfortunately, **for all** your protests, you didn't stand a chance of winning the argument.*
*Žiaľ, **napriek** všetkým Vaším protestom ste aj tak nemali žiadnu šancu spor vyhrať.*

Exercise 194: Insert the conjunction *for all (that)* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The might have left the state already, we know. 2 The shepherd is a sweet young man that. 3 I know, you could be the murderer's accomplice. 4 That I've heard, it still seems an unbelievable story to me. 5 I care, my former girlfriend may drop dead any time she likes. 6 A murder scene is a very depressing place to be that. 7 The bloody carpenter can go to hell, I care. 8 You may spend your free time with anybody you like, I care. 9 Ms Smith is usually quite lazy that. 10 Anyone knows, she might have been a princess. 11 The mom's pushing, the daughter couldn't get a decent job. 12 The witness has seen, the person running away from the crime scene might have been a man just as well as a woman. 13 We would all like to thank you you've done for us, James. 14 Laura's hard work, she got nothing but ridicule. 15 We have heard so far, the story may be a total fabrication.

Exercise 195: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *for all (that)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The COO doesn't give a hack about our work. We can do whatever we want.

We _____.

2 As far as we know, the suspect should be locked behind bars.

The suspect _____.

3 Despite the detective's best efforts, he still couldn't solve the murder.

_____ solve the murder.

4 Despite all the things the maths teacher had done for her students, they never even thanked her once.

_____ thanked her once.

5 My sister still doesn't get the concept of solar energy although our parents have been trying to explain it to her for hours.

_____ for hours.

6 The plumber is a skilled worker in spite of everything.

The plumber _____.

7 Although you've done your share, it won't be enough to get the project rolling.

_____ the project rolling.

8 As far as I'm concerned, I wouldn't give the rascal any more money.

The rascal wouldn't _____.

9 Although the doctor has caused a lot of suffering, she's never been punished once.

_____ punished once.

10 Given what we know, the knife might have been taken by anybody present at the house at the time.

_____ at the house at the time.

Exercise 196: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Pre mňa za mňa môžete zaobchádzať s väzňami tak kruto, ako len chcete. 2 Napriek všetkému, čo ste pre svojho syna spravili, Vás nepríde ani len na Vianoce navštíviť? 3 Bývalá manažérka nedostala ani len žiaden skutočný darček k odchodu do dôchodku za všetkú tú tvrdú drinu, ktorú vynaložila pri všetkých projektoch, ktoré úspešne dokončila. 4 Čo viem, raketu ešte neodpálili. 5 Čo viem, bývalý angličtinár je ešte stále zbláznený do Lilly. 6 Väzňa popravila na elektrickom kresle napriek humanitárnym protestom. 7 Napriek všetkému, čo nám povedali, mohol byť ten cudzinec neslávny revolucionár. 8 Pokiaľ zmierovací sudca vie, pár v spoločnej domácnosti nežije už vyše roka. 9 Keďže má tvoj brat také veľké prachy, tak by ti mohol vypomôcť, Simon. 10 Hoci sa drevorubač snažil, vysokú brezu sťať nedokázal.

4.12 Forasmuch as

The subordinating conjunction **forasmuch as** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction explains **why** an action or event is important, true, right or why it has to happen (Synonyms: *as far as, so much as, in view of, with regard to, because, since*).
 - **Forasmuch as** your presence has pleased his Lordship immensely, you should consider paying him as well as his family visits on a more frequent basis in the future.
Vzhľadom na to, že Vaša prítomnosť jeho Milosť nesmierne potešila, mala by ste zvážiť, či ho ako aj jeho rodinu v budúcnosti nebudete navštevovať pravidelne.
 - The paintings must be handled with the utmost care **forasmuch as** they are all priceless and extremely important testimonies of our long-forgotten past.
*S týmito obrazmi musíte zaobchádzať čo najopatrnejšie, **nakoľko** sú všetky drahocenné a predstavujú nesmierne dôležité svedectvá o našej dávno zabudnutej minulosti.*

Language Note:

The conjunction has become quite obsolete and is hardly ever used these days anymore.

4.13 Given that

The subordinating conjunction **given (that)** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces a **condition-like statement** (ie **an assumed fact or hypothesis**) that is either widely known or taken into consideration by the speaker/writer before drawing a conclusion (Synonyms: *as, since, considering, in view of, in the light of*).
 - **Given (that)** the ministers have not made much progress in resolving the armed conflict **given (that)** they have been working on it for well over five months now.
*Ministri v otázke riešenia ozbrojeného konfliktu veľmi nepokročili, **keď si vezmeme, že** na ňom pracujú už vyše päť mesiacov.*
 - **Given (that)** the committee votes against your proposal, will you try and remake it in a way that will be more acceptable?
Ak bude výbor hlasovať proti tvojmu návrhu, pokúsiš sa ho zmeniť tak, aby bol prijateľnejší?
- 2 The conjunction introduces a **contrasting argument** which makes the main statement seem surprising, astonishing or amazing under the circumstances expressed (Synonym: *although, despite the fact that*).
 - You don't seem to have made much of a progress **given (the fact) that** you've had a budget of six million dollars at your disposal, Dr Francis.
*Nezdá sa, že by ste veľmi pokročili **a to aj napriek tomu, že** ste mali k dispozícii rozpočet vo*

výške šesť miliónov dolárov, Dr. Francis.

- **Given (the fact) that** you made a fool of yourself, we are still willing to fund your research.
Hoci ste sa zosmiešnili, stále sme ochotní financovať Váš výskum.

Language Note:

This use of the conjunction has been on the decline for quite some time as other, more common words and phrases, such as *although*, *despite* or *even though*, have been replacing it in both formal and informal registers.

Exercise 197: Insert the conjunction *given (that)* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The user's got a bad temper, I wouldn't make him any more angry than he already is. 2 Please, let me know what you are going to do about the technical issues the client is the CEO's friend. 3 We are going to get in touch with the accountant as soon as possible there are still some inconsistencies in the account details. 4 The prices have been going down steadily for quite a few months now, we are not likely to see much of a decrease anymore. 5 The data can't be retrieved now the computer's hard disk is damaged beyond repair. 6 The locust plague won't be eradicated easily there are no natural enemies of the species. 7 The pens are quite expensive they were imported from the US and shipped first class. 8 You're not to reply to any further emails from now on you're obviously not able to get the grasp of our procedures. 9 There was a lack of qualified workforce in our field two years ago, the company had to take on even fresh graduates to do the job of experienced professionals. 10 The COO will take care of the order I'm not in the office next week. 11 The Christmas party will take place in a club so many people would like to bring a friend or two as well. 12 There's no other way out, we'll have to pay the fine after all. 13 You don't have much time left to prepare to presentation the negotiation starts on Monday, Joe. 14 It's no wonder there are so few accidents on our roads these days most people use the public transport. 15 The judge decided to go over the evidence one more time she was feeling rather uneasy about the case and the defendant alike.

Exercise 198: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *given (that)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The MPs won't vote in favour of the bill considering it might put a lot of people out of work.

The MPs _____.

2 As I'm not really interested in acquiring the software manufacturer, I won't even offer a bid.

_____ offer a bid.

3 The desks were quite difficult to move around the room since they are made of stone.

The desks _____.

4 My little sister won't come to the Halloween party because she's got no fancy dress.

My little sister _____.

5 Knowing the manager well, I can tell you he won't be easily satisfied.

_____ easily satisfied.

6 Having seen the performance twice already, I don't really feeling like joining you, guys.
_____ joining you, guys.

7 Dr Berstraw, the contract shall be considered null and void in view of the fact that the signature was forged.

Dr Berstraw, the contract _____ .

8 The payment could not be completed as the Internet connection broke down while I was entering my PIN code.

The payment _____ .

9 Seeing that you're not really interested in finding a solution to the query, I may just as well take my leave now.

_____ take my leave now.

10 Considering the survey does not give much reason for optimism, the company won't even try and penetrate the Asian market.

_____ the Asian market.

Exercise 199: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Given that commodity prices have been falling steadily for the past few months, we are likely to see a saturation of the market as early as this spring. **since**

_____ as early as this spring.

2 The CFO is not going to come to work this week given he's broken his leg skiing down a slope. **as**

The CFO _____ .

3 I don't believe Marie will be admitted to the conservatoire given the fact that she's tone deaf. **due to**

I don't believe _____ .

4 My colleagues don't greet the receptionist anymore given she never says hi back to them. **owing to**

My colleagues _____ .

5 The interpreter doesn't speak Spanish given he's never taken Spanish classes. **because**

The interpreter _____ .

6 Given that the school owner is thinking about selling the school, you might be thinking about getting a new job, Sarah. **considering**

_____ getting a new job, Sarah.

7 This year's parade can't have been as grand as the one held last year given the mayor did not have as much money at his disposal as last year. **in view of**

This year's parade _____ .

8 Given that none of the students has actually passed the exam, we must be looking for the root of the problem elsewhere than just the students. **thus**

None of the students _____ .

9 Given that you're not interested in the lecture, you can leave pure and simple. **seeing**
_____ leave pure and simple.

10 We're not going to give in to your demands given that there's nothing wrong with our proposal, sir. **knowing**
We're not going to _____.

Exercise 200: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Vzhľadom na to, že neexistovala žiadna nie smrtiaca alternatíva, si generál vybral to menšie z dvoch cieľ. 2 Skupina nebude podporovať financovanie Vášho štúdijného projektu, nakoľko ste doposiaľ nepredstavili žiadne výsledky. 3 Keďže sú naše sily každým dňom slabšie, mali by sme udrieť okamžite. 4 Zradca utiekol zo svojej krajiny, lebo bol pod neustálym dohľadom. 5 Keďže ste mi neposlali žiadnu pozvánku, nevedel som, že si usporiadal pre svojho brata oslavu. 6 Životnosť batérie toho nového mobilu nie je dlhá, pretože len operačný systém zhltnie veľa šťavy. 7 Pizza chutila hnusne, lebo bola dosť studená a trochu zapáchala. 8 Vzhľadom na skutočnosť, že ste slabo argumentovali, Dr. Phillips, udelíme grant Dr. Andersonovi a jeho tímu. 9 Všetky dokumenty boli skartované, nakoľko vôbec nemali ani len existovať. 10 Keďže nám o stretnutí nikto nepovedal, nikto z nášho tímu sa na ňom nemohol zúčastniť. 11 Hoci ste mali sedem mesiacov na dokončenie projektu, veľmi ste nepokročili. 12 Joe by sa chcel presťahovať do Južnej Afriky, nakoľko tam ponúkli jeho manželke skvelú prácu. 13 Aj keď sme si nikdy neboli blízki, nikdy som toho mladého muža nenávidela. 14 Keďže toho o fyzike veľa nevieš, možno by bolo fajn, keby si si pre zmenu nechal svoje názory pre seba. 15 V tomto kvartály sme rast akcií nezaznamenali, hoci by analytici z celého sveta boli odprisahali, že akcie budú stúpať.

4.14 Granted that

The subordinating conjunction **granted (that)** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction **marks the premise of an argument** (Meaning: *if you accept, if you believe*).
 - *How should we cope with the financial problems **granted (that)** the analysis is true? Ako by sme sa mali vysporiadať s finančnými problémami, **ak** je analýza pravdivá?*
 - ***Granted (that)** the report has not been falsified, are you going to take our supplier to court? **Pripusťme, že** správa nebola sfaľovaná, budete sa súdiť s našim dodávateľom?*

Exercise 201: Insert the conjunction **granted (that)** in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The bus driver ought to have turned left there was no more space on the right. 2 The suspect should be arrested the police believe he has committed the crime. 3 Your account of the story is really true, you will have no problems in court. 4 I wouldn't lie about such an important thing, you should start looking for a new job. 5 The plane could have burst into flames the pilot hadn't attempted a water landing. 6 The police officer comes to work today, you might be able to get the information you're looking for. 7 The pub owner cannot afford to have the roof fixed his net profit has been dropping steadily for the past six months. 8 The weather doesn't improve today anymore, will you stay another day? 9 The crow is a symbol of death all those old stories are true. 10 The exam results are correct, nearly half the students failed the exam. 11 The news report is true, millions of people have been left

without running water in Pakistan. 11 The brand new floating data centre could be a great showroom there's enough space for shoppers. 12 The minister hasn't lied, we should be seeing some major changes in agriculture by the end of the year. 13 The computer might catch a virus you don't install an antivirus program. 14 Shally's right, the new project could start as early as April. 15 Mr and Mrs Dawson are happily married their constant arguments are no more than signs of affection.

Exercise 202: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *granted (that)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If you accept that the young anchor won't do as good a job as his predecessor, you might give him the job, Brit.

_____ might give him the job, Brit.

2 You can start looking for a new convertible if you believe that Mike will pay you back next month.

You can start _____.

3 If the managers really thinks Jack will be here for the presentation, she could take a day off herself.

_____ could take a day off herself.

4 The landlord can sell the house any time he wants provided he's willing to accept a huge loss.

The landlord _____.

5 If the taxi driver thinks he'll be able to afford a new car, he could take on a staff of his own.

_____ a staff of his own.

6 If you believe the CIA report is true, you might want to file charges against Mr Donovan.

_____ Mr Donovan.

7 You should buy the shares right away if you suppose the value will rise in the future.

You should buy _____.

8 Where are you going to hide the papers if you believe that the mafia are looking for them?

Where are you _____ ?

9 If you accept what Sarah has just told you as the truth, are you going to draw any consequences?

_____ any consequences?

10 Provided the young man hasn't stolen anything, will you have him fired anyway?

_____ anyway?

Exercise 203: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Dajme tomu, že riaditeľ má pravdu, potom budeme musieť budúci rok zamestnať viac učiteľov. 2

Kto mohol ukradnúť kancelárske potreby, ak predpokladáme, že zamestnanci to neboli? 3 Pripusťme,

že zbraň obete nebola nabitá, kto potom vypálil druhú ranu? 4 Dajme tomu, že prezident ľuďi oklamal,

mal by okamžite odstúpiť? 5 Ak sa skutočne už nenájde žiaden priestor na zlepšenia, zastavíme výro-

bu produktu? 6 Požiarne cvičenie bude potrebné vykonávať častejšie ak si vezmeme, že väčšina za-

mestnancov si nedala ani len tú námahu, aby opustili budovu. 7 Pripust'me, že príbeh nebol výmyslom autorovej mysle, potom to bola riadne dobrodružná dovolenka. 8 Bol by som navštívil svojho lekára, ak by som mal niečo s ramenom. 9 Novú onlineovú platform by mali spustiť vo štvrtok, ak sú zvesti pravdivé. 10 Pripust'me, že svedecká výpoveď bola úplne vymyslená, podarí sa sudcovi zistiť pravdu?

4.15 Inasmuch as

The subordinating conjunction *inasmuch as* is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **explanatory comments** which provide additional information about why or to what extent an action or event described before or after is true, real, correct or possible (Synonyms: *because, since, as, given*).
 - *Your last paper is much easier to understand, **inasmuch as** you kept your language and style simple and clear-cut.*
Váš posledný článok je ovľa ľahší na pochopenie vzhľadom na to, že ste po celý čas písali jednoduchým a jednoznačným jazykom a štýlom.
 - ***Inasmuch as** we have all already read the report, you can come to the point right away.*
Keďže sme si už všetci prečítali správu, môžete ísť hneď priamo k veci.
- 2 The conjunction introduces **additional comments which limit the scope** of what has just been mentioned or implied (Synonyms: *insofar as, to the extent that, in that*).
 - *The students did make an improvement but only **inasmuch as** they studied the topics and did their homework.*
*Študenti sa zlepšili, ale len **do tej miery** ako študovali témy a robili si domáce úlohy.*
 - *The two computers are somewhat similar, **inasmuch as** they have the same processor and the very same keyboard.*
*Tie dva počítače sú si do istej miery podobné, **nakoľko** majú rovnaký processor a úplne rovnakú klávesnicu.*

Language Note:

Nowadays the conjunction is used in formal registers only.

Exercise 204: Insert the conjunction *inasmuch as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The last report need not be re-written it gives a satisfactory insight into the problem at hand. 2 The step-brothers are somewhat similar they have the same father. 3 I have already submitted my documentation, I don't have to turn up for the meeting. 4 The manager can have the order ready in no time, she's already got the whole list of things we need. 5 Dave's new computer made my research project much easier to finish, it can also run advanced programs. 6 My son's eyesight has improved significantly, he's got a new pair of glasses. 7 You won't win the lottery you don't play systematically. 8 It seemed like an important day in Tania's life she was going to her first job interview. 9 Even though the performance ended quite well, the actors were all quite astounded it should have been a tragedy which turned out to be a comedy in the end. 10 The right of self-determination is so deeply rooted in our community I suggest that suicide be legalised asap. 11 The following terms and conditions apply only international trade is concerned. 12 English tenses are a bit of an abstraction there is no inflected future tense in existence. 13 Mr Martinson will be in charge of the department for the time being, technical and administrative issues are concerned. 14 Mr Mayer has already made some progress with

the new project, we will not have to start from the scratch. 15 The English teacher will grant us any wish we like as long as Lilly makes the proposal, we should ask for something really big and important.

Exercise 205: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *inasmuch as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The author's latest novel is rich in different characters and depictions because it's been inspired by the author's personal experience.

The author's latest novel _____.

2 The sisters don't seem to have much in common as they grew up in two different countries and had little contact with each other when they were young.

The sisters _____.

3 The new guidelines are going to make our daily life a bit more difficult since we'll have to focus our energy on more than just ordinary tasks.

The new guidelines _____.

4 Given you are responsible for the whole project and its implementation, you should be the one calling the shots.

_____ calling the shots.

5 The students will only know as much as is written in the book.

The students _____.

6 Mr Price has been working really hard lately because he wants to get promoted next summer.

Mr Price _____.

7 Since the additional funds will be used to cover the marketing costs, there's no need to worry about the financial background of the project.

_____ the financial background of the project.

8 The young students were rather shocked at the sight of the patients' condition given they had never been confronted with such a dramatic scene before.

The young students _____.

9 We are quite uncertain about the payment since Mr Charlston has not sent us any information at all.

We are quite uncertain about _____.

10 The box was really heavy given I was the only one carrying it the whole time.

The box _____.

Exercise 206: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Vzhľadom na skutočnosť, že učitelia v mojej krajine sa viac zaoberajú výučbou než samotnou prípravou učebných materiálov, je dosť možné, že sa nakoniec budeš učiť z učebníc, ktoré majú vyše 50 rokov. 2 Nasledujúce údaje platia len pre miestnych dodávateľov, pokiaľ ide o predaj. 3 Expanzívne

plány spoločnosti sa dostali do kolízie s mojimi výrobnými plánmi, nakoľko sa cieľový trh dramaticky zmenil. 4 Rokovania prebiehajú pomerne dobre, pretože sa už dosiahla dohoda v otázkach kvality a kvantity. 5 Správa nám môže prácu mierne sťažiť, nakoľko prezrádza našu slabú pozíciu na dnešnom trhu. 6 Keďže si bankár náš obchodný plán už preštudoval, môžeme všeobecnú úvodnú časť preskočiť. 7 Nový herec nie je dobre oboznámený so scenárom, lebo sa len teraz pripojil k tímu. 8 Myslím si, že v kalkuláciách máte chybu, pretože celkové výrobné náklady sú oveľa vyššie než 120 dolárov za kus. 9 Zlepšiť sa môžete len, ak budete cvičiť. 10 Vzhľadom na to, že marketingová kampaň ukázala, že o nové slúchadlá nie je veľký záujem, je na Vás, aby ste projekt teraz buď zastavili alebo v ňom napriek všetkému pokračovali.

4.16 Insofar as

The subordinating conjunction *insofar as* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **additional comments which limit the scope** of what has just been mentioned or implied and **states the degree** to which an action or event is true, real, possible or to which it occurs (Synonyms: *inasmuch as*, *to the extent that*, *to the degree that*).
 - *Some scientists tend to refer to their colleagues' works only insofar as their theories and findings suit their own purposes.*
Niektorí vedci zvyknú odkazovať na práce svojich kolegov len vtedy, keď sa ich teórie a poznatky hodia ich vlastným účelom.
 - *Insofar as I can tell after just one meeting with the Spanish businessman, we should have no difficulties reaching a compromise fast, Ms Hudec.*
Čo môžem povedať už po jednom stretnutí so španielskym obchodníkom je, že by sme nemali mať problémy rýchlo dospieť ku kompromisu, pani Hudecová.

Language Note:

Nowadays the conjunction has become quite obsolete and is used in formal registers, if at all, only.

Exercise 207: Insert the conjunction *insofar as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The marketing analyst does his job only not to get fired. 2 Master Sorenson studies maths only to pass his exams. 3 My supervisor talks just about those cases which I didn't handle well he wants to show me that I can't do the job. 4 The students can observe the detectives' work only they don't disturb them. 5 The desks will have to be moved a bit to the left there needs to be more space at the window. 6 Our students need to get a good grasp of physics they will have to understand the connections between physics and chemistry. 7 Most people only speak the truth it suits them. 8 My friends and I were chatting about our trip to Rome quite loudly yesterday, our classmates could not hear the teacher as a result. 9 The plumber is quite a skilful guy he can get a lot of things fixed, not just the plumbing. 10 When I was a little child, I learnt to speak Chinese I'm able to make myself understood and understand others too. 11 Insofar as the technical provider of our services has made the communication possible, we ought to make use of it and do our best now. 12 Our interest lies in the Asian market, we should try and use a more direct approach now. 13 The tourists who want to visit the Alps don't need to bring many things with them everything will be provided by the guides, including

warm clothes. 14 Your questions were perfectly legitimate we had to find out if the witness was actually telling the truth. 15 The contribution of every single member of our club is highly essential we need to collect as much money as possible to get the project rolling.

Exercise 208: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *insofar as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The managers agree only as far as costs are concerned.

The managers _____ .

2 The bounty hunter works with others only when there's a lot of money at stake.

The bounty hunter _____ .

3 Jane's aunts are not very different, inasmuch as they look alike and also talk the same way.

Jane's aunts _____ .

4 The murderer made the detectives' job rather easy, inasmuch as he left a trail which was easy enough to follow.

The murderer _____ .

5 The accountant studies financial analyses only to the extent that is required for her job.

The accountant _____ .

6 The news is positive inasmuch as nobody got hurt during the rescue mission.

The news _____ .

7 As far as I know, there should be no armed guards standing sentry in front of the factory.

_____ in front of the factory.

8 From what I can figure out from this message, your financial situation's getting worse by the day.

_____ worse by the day.

9 The self-study material will only help you inasmuch as you study hard every day.

The self-study material _____ .

10 The data can help you with your thesis only to the extent that it provides the theoretical background for your field research.

The data _____ .

Exercise 209: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ak tak môžem povedať, technický inžinier analýzu ešte nedokončil. 2 Citlivý spisovateľ zvykne opísať svoje postavy dosť podrobne, nakoľko chcel poskytnúť čitateľovi hlbší pohľad do ich rozpoloženia. 3 Študenti by sa mali vzhľadom na prijímacie skúšky snažiť naučiť čo najviac. 4 Martine chyby v eseji sú dosť závažné, pretože sme jej už doporučili, aby nepísala o technických podrobnostiach, no aj napriek tomu tak stále robí. 5 Novozvolený prezident urobil počas kampane skvelý dojem pokiaľ ide o nezamestnanosť a zdravotnú starostlivosť. 6 Primátor by sa rád dočkal opravy ciest a ulíc do

konca jari, keďže je v súčasnosti takmer nemožné dostať sa z miesta A na miesto B bez toho, aby musel ísť po rozbitých cestách. 7 Mechanici kontrolujú olej len vtedy, keď ich o to vodič požiada. 8 Keďže finančný riaditeľ ešte nevidel najnovšie údaje o predaji, nedokáže odhadnúť, či sa spoločnosť pohybuje v červených alebo čiernych číslach. 9 Keďže opozičné strany bojovali jedna s druhou po celý čas, podryli si dôveryhodnosť u voličov. 10 Protestný pochod sa ukázal byť úplne zbytočný vzhľadom na to, že prišlo len šesťsto ľudí, ktorí vyjadrili jasný nesúhlas s novým zákonom.

4.17 **Insomuch as**

The subordinating conjunction **insomuch as** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **explanatory comments** which provide additional information about why or to what extent an action or event described before or after is true, real, correct or possible (Synonyms: *because, since, as, given, inasmuch as*).
 - *The app update seems to have fixed all issues **insomuch as** there are no more problems with loading the games, nor is there any trouble accessing one's personal information.*
*Zdá sa, že aktualizácia aplikácie vyriešila všetky otázky, **keďže** sa už nevyskytujú žiadne problémy s načítavaním hier a ani s prístupom k osobným informáciám.*
 - ***Insomuch as** the thief has never broken the law before, the judge decided to give him a second chance and not to send him to prison right away.*
***Keďže** zloděj v minulosti nikdy zákony neporušil, sa sudca rozhodol dať mu druhú šancu a neposlať ho do rovno väzenia.*
- 2 The conjunction introduces **additional comments which limit the scope** of what has just been mentioned or implied (Synonyms: *insofar as, inasmuch as, to the extent that, in that*).
 - *The project doesn't seem to be heading the right way, **insomuch as** its implementation has been delayed twice already.*
*Nezdá sa, že projekt má správne smerovanie, **nakoľko** jeho implementáciu preložili už dvakrát.*
 - ***Insomuch as** one can ever find out about a fresh graduate's knowledge and skills at a job interview, the young man seems well versed in his field and rather smart as well.*
***Do tej miery**, ako sa len dajú na osobnom pohovore preveriť vedomosti a schopnosti čerstvého absolventa sa zdá, že sa tento mladý muž dobre vyzná vo svojom odbore a je aj celkom inteligentný.*

Language Note:

Nowadays the conjunction is used in formal registers only.

Exercise 210: Insert the conjunction *insomuch as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 You can tell from the inscription, this used to be a Mayan temple. 2 I don't have a good feeling about this new microchip, its produced by quite an unreliable contractor, Jordan. 3 This must be a trap, there is nobody in the streets far and wide. 4 Mr and Mrs Hudmat seem to be happily married you can tell from their looks and smiles. 5 You can tell from their mean looks, the guys mean business. 6 The landlord is not very strict when it comes to payment deadlines, he knows that we are honest people who always pay their debts. 7 Both the director's advisors work much harder than their boss they really take the time to get everything done properly. 8 The supervisor hasn't been satisfied with my work lately, I've made a number of silly mistakes. 9 The hotel might have to close for good eventually

it's been having some financial difficulties recently. 10 Unfortunately, we could not make ourselves understood in Japan the locals spoke a weird dialect. 11 The informant has always delivered reliable information, there's no reason to doubt him now. 12 Colleagues should be able to work together well, I suggest you pull yourself together and behave yourself, Carla. 13 The tracks will have disappeared soon there's a strong wind blowing in the area right now. 14 It was a spectacular performance you delivered last night, it looked difficult and easy at the same time. 15 The headmaster decided not to take any action at the present time the boy's father has made quite a few donations to the school fund in the past five years.

Exercise 211: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *inasmuch as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Mr Marx, as you have presented no evidence to support your claims and indications, the court has no other choice but to sentence you to five years in prison.

Mr Marx, _____ in prison.

2 The brand new OS seems to be an elaborate hoax as far as all those awesome features are concerned.

The brand new OS _____.

3 Inasmuch as the Dawsons have never been on holiday outside the US, the showmaster has bought them a luxury holiday to Europe.

_____ a luxury holiday to Europe.

4 The child shouldn't be grounded since he's done nothing wrong really.

The child _____.

5 As far as you can tell from just looking at the couple, they seem to be having some minor problems.

_____ some minor problems.

6 John's progress report has stirred up loads of negative emotions as it pointed directly at those people who were responsible for the company's unfavourable condition.

John's progress report _____.

7 The base commander is not fit for the job anymore as he's been preoccupied with other things lately.

The base commander _____.

8 The software giant is likely to go into administration inasmuch as it's suffered a huge loss last year.

The software giant _____.

9 Given that the teacher has always done her job very well, she'd like to get a pay rise.

_____ a pay rise.

10 The negotiations will be held at the five-star hotel in the city centre since the organisers want to make a great impression on the delegates.

The negotiations _____.

Exercise 212: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Továrň do konca jari zatvorí, pretože je už vyše šesť mesiacov v červených číslach. 2 Nakoľko prezident nedodrži slovo už dvakrát, je nepravdepodobné, že by ho zvolili do úradu po druhýkrát. 3 Nakoľko sa predaj v tomto kvartály znížil o 2,1 percenta, budeme musieť začať uvažovať nad novou marketingovou kampaňou. 4 Tentokrát sa novinári dovnútra nedostanú, keďže delegáti musia prerokovať niektoré naliehavé otázky za zatvorenými dverami. 5 Keďže ide o riskantný obchod, nemôžeme Vám dať inú radu, než aby ste okamžite predali Vaše akcie. 6 Do tej miery, ako len človek môže niečo o takýchto veciach vedieť, sa zdá, že ich farma skutočne prosperuje. 7 Umývačku riadu si obľúbili ako zákazníci zo Slovenska, tak aj z Česka a to preto, že za tie peniaze je to skutočne dobrá investícia. 8 Kamerami sa podarilo znížiť drobné krádeže o takmer 74 percent, nakoľko si teraz zloději dvakrát rozmyslia, či si niečo vezmú bez platenia. 9 Čo sa týka výstavby ciest, hľadá vláda nových zhotoviteľov. 10 Oddeleniu služieb zákazníkom sa podarilo zvýšiť produktivitu o 8,4 percenta, keďže zaviedli detailnejšie tikety.

4.18 In case

The subordinating conjunction **in case** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **precautions**, ie actions and events which a speaker/writer does to be prepared for situations which may happen in the future (Meaning: *because something may happen*).
 - *You should have a word with Mr Burns right away **in case** we run into trouble in the last phase of the project.*
*Mal by si sa hneď porozprávať s pánom Burnsom **pre prípad**, že v poslednej fáze projektu narazíme na problémy.*
 - *Make sure to get an insurance for your house **in case** it burns down or suffers water damage.*
*Určite si nechaj poistiť dom **pre prípad**, že zhorí alebo ho poškodí voda.*
- 2 The conjunction introduces **explanatory comments** aimed at shedding light on why somebody does a particular action or why somebody takes a particular course of action (Synonym: *if*).
 - *The operation has been going on for nearly an hour **in case** you'd like to know where all the surgeons are, Mr Davidson.*
*Operácia prebieha už takmer hodinu, **ak** by ste chceli vedieť, kde sú všetci chirurgovia, pán Davidson.*
 - ***In case** you were wondering, the police officers are here to investigate a murder which took place late last night.*
***Ak** Vás to zaujíma, policajti sú tu preto, lebo vyšetrojú vraždu, ktorá sa stala neskoro včera v noci.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *Have your firearms ready at all times **in case** you need them.*
*Zbrane majte vždy poruke **pre prípad**, že ich budete potrebovať.*
- ***In case** you're in town in March, give me a call and we can go to the parade together.*
***Ak** budeš v marci v meste, ozvi sa a pôjdeme spolu na prehliadku.*

Language Note 2:

Strictly speaking, *in case* and *if* are used in quite different situations. They express different meanings and serve different communicative purposes.

The conjunction *in case* conveys the connotation that A needs to be done first because B might happen later. By contrast, *if* points out that A needs to happen or has to be done provided B has already happened.

Although, especially in American English, many speakers like to use *in case* where *if* would normally be used, this is grammatically not correct.

Exercise 213: Insert the conjunction *in case* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 I'm running late tomorrow, do not bother waiting for me, Dave. 2 The secretary fetched the contract we needed to check some details. 3 The construction company had the site insured something went terribly wrong. 4 Always have your driver's license on you when driving you get stopped by the police. 5 The COO is coming to visit our plant next Wednesday you're wondering why we are in such a hurry to get the place cleaned properly. 6 Write down my number you can't find your way around the capital and call me if need be. 7 Don't forget to take a spare wheel you get a puncture. 8 Sarah always backs up her data at the end of the day her computer crashed and she couldn't start it again. 9 Take an umbrella it rains! 10 Do you have a second key you lose the first? 11 How about getting one more bottle our guests decide to bring a friend or two along? 12 Set up a reminder on your mobile the appointment slips your mind, Greg. 13 I'd rather have the books double-checked the external auditor should find some mistake or other. 14 Take some traveller's cheques as well your money gets stolen or you lose your credit card on the way. 15 The CFO asked for my email address she wanted to send me further information about the project.

Exercise 214: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *in case* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Why not fuel up now before we run out of petrol altogether?

Why not _____ ?

2 People who travel a lot usually have a book or two close by. They want to make sure they don't get bored on the way.

People who travel a lot _____ .

3 My grandfather always used to wear a warm hat in winter should it be too cold for him to run about outside with his head not wrapped up.

My grandfather _____ .

4 Most of my colleagues have their mobile phones turned off during meetings. They don't want to get embarrassed if their phone suddenly started ringing.

Most of my colleagues _____ .

5 If you haven't noticed, I've been waiting here for over an hour now.

_____ for over an hour now.

6 How about taking a paper. You may have to wait for a while before it's your turn, Harry.

How about _____.

7 The prison guard took his truncheon so as to be ready for a possible escape attempt.

The prison guard _____.

8 I won't leave early today. The boss may need some help, so I'll stick around for an hour or so.

I won't leave _____.

9 Let's have everything ready half an hour before the guests should be arriving. After all, one or two of them might come a little earlier and we might not get everything ready by the time the party starts.

Let's have _____.

10 Make sure to bring a map. After all, you might get lost in the woods.

Make sure _____.

Exercise 215: Complete the sentences with *if* or *in case*, so that they are grammatically correct.

1 *If/ In case* we don't sell right now, we'll lose a lot of money for sure. 2 *If/ In case* you're wondering what's going on in here, we're trying to make the hall look a bit more friendly and inviting. 3 Just take the money now *if/ in case* you need it on your way to Alaska. 4 We won't tell anybody *if/ in case* you keep your end of the bargain. 5 I don't think we'll have to go into so many details, but I'd rather have the original document here *if/ in case* we need it after all. 6 Mr Smith is not going out for lunch today. He's staying in his office *if/ in case* Ms Green gives him a call. 7 We shouldn't make a hasty decision *if/ in case* we get a better offer. 8 The teacher will write the essay for me *if/ in case* I pay him. 9 The staff won't take a break *if/ in case* you tell them to keep on working. 10 You should download the app *if/ in case* your smartphone is stolen. Then, you can track it down easily.

Exercise 216: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ak nebudem mať čas všetko Vám vysvetliť, pozrite sa prosím do mojich poznámok, ktoré Vám pošlem dnes večer. 2 Vystrašený patentový úradník nechcel vstúpiť do softbalovej ligy pre prípad, že by nehral dobre. 3 Môj priateľ mi odmietol akokoľvek poradiť pre prípad, že by jeho odpoveď bola nesprávna. 4 V prípade, že narazíte na problémy, kontaktujte Hawarda. 5 Džbán by ste mali dať pod zámok do skrine pre prípad, že si niekto tú tekutinu pomýli s vínom. 6 Vždy podpíšte zmluvu skôr, než dodáš alebo odošleš akýkoľvek tovar pre prípad, že tvoj partner nie je až taký čestný, ako tvrdil. 7 Meno svojho klienta radšej neprezradím pre prípad, že nechce, aby sa ho ostatní dozvedeli. 8 V prípade, že sa niečo stane, mi zavolaj a ja urobím, čo len budem môcť, aby som ti pomohol, Laura. 9 Učiteľ nechcel naznačiť nič neslušné pre prípad, že by to jeho študentka zle pochopila. 10 Lekár mi predpísal tie silné lieky pre prípad, že by som dostal vysokú teplotu. 11 Chcete, aby sme zostali v blízkosti pre prípad, že sa rokovanie vymkne z ruky? 12 Možno ma oškľúbú, ak mi nedáš pár dobrých rád. 13 Človek by si mal vždy určiť dediča, ktorý dostane všetok majetok pre prípad, že človek neočakávane zomrie. 14 Právnik vtedy poslednú vôľu nespomenul pre prípad, že by to vdova v takej chúlостivej situácii vní-

mala ako neslušné. 15 Turistický sprievodca sa takmer bál povedať nie krásnemu dievčaťu pre prípad, že by sa s ním prestala rozprávať.

4.19 In that

The subordinating conjunction *in that* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction provides an additional argument which serves as an **explanatory comment** supporting the idea which has just been voiced or implied (Synonyms: *because, since, given that*).
 - *The new piece of legislation is highly praised by both government critics and supporters in that it gives everybody the freedom to make their own choices.*
Nový právny predpis vychvaľujú ako kritici, tak aj zástancovia vlády, pretože umožňuje každému slobodne sa rozhodovať.
 - *The new server is much better than the old one in that it provides faster Internet access and more security at the same time.*
Nový server je oveľa lepší než ten starý, nakoľko umožňuje rýchlejší prístup k internetu a zároveň je aj bezpečnejší.

Language Note:

Nowadays the conjunction is used in formal registers only.

Exercise 217: Insert the conjunction *in that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The situation is getting more complicated by the hour the special armed forces are preparing for attack. 2 The FBI chemicals weapons specialist is highly trained he's spent the past twenty years studying and diffusing bombs all over the country. 3 The formula plays an important role in our calculations it forms a sort of a backbone for our future enterprise. 4 We need to talk business we may clear the air at last. 5 You made a very hasty decision you did not take all the consequences into consideration. 6 It was a bad idea nobody gained anything by simply firing the rockets. 7 Sarah's master thesis was a true achievement it provided the theoretical concepts which she then used to display real-life effects on society. 8 The terrorists have gone underground the government agents could not find them. 9 After the training operation is over, the building is to be pulled down nobody is able to reconstruct the exercise. 10 During wars bridges get blown up the enemy cannot advance any further. 11 The money was transferred to an off-shore bank it could not be traced back to us. 12 The new textbook on microeconomics is very well written it looks into all major aspects in more detail than its counterparts. 13 Sandra's account of the whole story is a bit different than yours it was the major who made the arsonist surrender. 14 I will make a break in a few minutes I can have a word with the captain. 15 My new memory stick is better than Mr Salinger's it provides more storage space.

Exercise 218: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *in that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The sergeant broke the rules of the exercise when he left the training area.

The sergeant _____.

2 The judge did not sustain the objections because they were groundless.

The judge _____.

- 3 Older soldiers complete their missions faster since they have had more training.
Older soldiers _____ .
- 4 The professor talked extremely slowly as he was aware of his students' poor listening skills.
The professor _____ .
- 5 The red carpet looks nicer than the green one because it's light rather than dark.
The red carpet _____ .
- 6 Forensic experts need to undergo a long training, so that they learn all that they need to do their job really well.
Forensic experts _____ .
- 7 The project did not go well given that some staff did not meet their deadlines.
The project _____ .
- 8 The new suntan lotion is a complete failure because customer won't buy it pure and simple.
The new suntan lotion _____ .
- 9 The findings are extremely important to our scientists since they could prove their theories are right.
The findings _____ .
- 10 The transport costs will go through the roof given that we'll have to pay both domestic and foreign carriers for their services.
The transport costs _____ .

Exercise 219: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The research project was a total waste of time in that it did not produce any theoretical or practical results which could be used either for domestic or international purposes. **given**
The research project _____ .
- 2 It might prove quite difficult to persuade the bank to lend you any more money in that you already owe them 7,000 dollars. **since**
It might prove _____ .
- 3 The scientists may have a hard time looking for somebody to fund their research in that it seems very theoretical and not very practical at all. **because**
The scientists _____ .
- 4 Ubuntu Edge had a really futuristic feel in that it should have been made from the best and most advanced technology at the time. **as**
Ubuntu Edge _____ .
- 5 There must be something wrong with the monitor of yours in that the pictures and text are blurred all the time regardless of the files you open. **considering**
There must be _____ .

6 The declaration mentions all the essentials we need to be aware of in that it provides a summary of the company's strategies and principles alike. **since**

The declaration _____ .

7 The opinion survey proved vital to our PR campaign in that it made us aware of some needs we did not expect to find in our target group. **in view of**

The opinion survey _____ .

8 The saw wouldn't work in that there was something wrong with the wiring. **due to**

The saw _____ .

9 The watch stopped working in that some water got into the clockwork. **owing to**

The watch _____ .

10 The official can't give you any information willy-nilly in that we need a written request which needs to be approved by our superior first. **given**

The official _____ .

Exercise 220: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Nemôžeš len tak vtrhnúť k účtovníčke a pýtať si peniaze, pretože existujú isté postupy, ktoré musí dodržiavať každý, dokonca aj ty, Juraj. 2 Šerif urobil chybu, keď sa vrátil do krčmi. 3 Prekladové semináre sú v týchto dňoch dosť nudné, nakoľko neustále študujeme tie isté texty znovu a znovu. 4 Nemôžeme ti poskytnúť azyl, pretože nie sme oficiálna inštitúcia či cirkev. 5 Pri zlovestnom pohľade, ktorý som videl v jeho očiach, mi mrzla krv v žilách, keďže som v jeho vnútri videl úplnú prázdnotu. 6 Tá prednáška môže byť pre teba celkom zaujímavá, lebo sa zaujímaš o astronómiu. 7 Svedka budeme musieť po súde presťahovať, aby sme dokázali zaručiť jeho bezpečnosť. 8 Mobil sa nedá opraviť, lebo náhradné časti sa už nevyrábajú. 9 Tá motorka je skutočne drahá, keďže stojí viac, než väčšina ľudí zarobí za celý rok. 10 Jednojazyčný slovník je oveľa lepšia pomôcka pri štúdiu jazyka na pokročilej úrovni, keďže ponúka oveľa viac informácií než len preklady. 11 Väčšina zápasníkov trénuje každý deň, pretože si chcú splniť svoj sen a dostať sa na vrchol. 12 Nemôžem sa zaručiť za tvojho brata, lebo som celý deň strávil nakupovaním so svojou priateľkou. 13 Záhrada vyzerá skutočne vkusne, pretože tráva je pokosená a živý plot je pekne ostrihaný. 14 Brownova najnovšia zbierka básní je vcelku depresívna, nakoľko pojednáva o smrti, bolesti a utrpení. 15 Zdá sa, že ide o veľkú výzvu, nakoľko si úspech projektu vyžiada všetky naše zdroje.

4.20 In order that

The subordinating conjunction **in order that** is used in the following way:

1 The conjunction introduces **the purpose** or **aim** of an action or event (Synonyms: *so that, in order to, with the aim of*).

- *Loads of people from our area are studying Chinese these days **in order that** they might be able to speak the language of their future employer.*
*Mnoho ľudí z nášho kraja sa v súčasnosti učí po čínsky **a to preto, aby** rozumeli jazyku svojho nového zamestnávateľa.*

- *Security checks are performed every day in our office **in order that** no sensitive information gets out.
Bezpečnostné kontroly sa na našom úrade vykonávajú každý deň, **aby** citlivé informácie neprenikli na verejnosť.*

Language Note:

Nowadays the conjunction is mostly used in formal registers only.

Exercise 221: Insert the conjunction *in order that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 My lawyer always does his best her clients are as satisfied with his work as possible. 2 One dental check-up a year is compulsory for all the people in our country they get their teeth checked at last every twelve months. 3 The marketing analyst would like to have a word with her he may sort out the issues regarding the database. 4 The tourists wanted to set out early in the morning they wouldn't get caught in the traffic. 5 Most students learn as much as possible they make the best of their study time. 6 You ought to leave a little earlier on Thursday you get to the office before the manager does. 7 Our system is updated every two weeks we can launch all our databases and applications. 8 The owner is thinking about selling the pub he can travel the world at last. 9 My supervisor says I should finish my thesis by April I can defend it in June. 10 Astronauts receive a lot of training before they are allowed to fly into space they are prepared for every single scenario imaginable. 11 The contract needs to be rewritten it does not contradict the new law. 12 The HR staff decided to hire the applicant the research may start as soon as possible. 13 The company will have to be sold the bills can be paid at last. 14 The casino is going to move to the big hall at the end of the street the gamblers have more space. 15 The carpenter is going to get some new tools he can do his work faster and better as well.

Exercise 222: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *in order that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Most people are moving into towns and cities these days as they don't want to commute for work.

Most people _____.

2 The fire drill needs to be practised at least twice a year, so that everybody knows what to do in case of a real emergency.

The fire drill _____.

3 You should study English in order to be able to understand and to make yourself understood when talking to people who don't speak your native language.

You should _____.

4 The backpackers ought to put up their tents, so that they don't get caught in the storm unprepared.

The backpackers _____.

5 The musician has to practise playing the violin every day if he wants to get to the top one day.

The musician _____.

6 Some people are always looking for challenges since they want to improve their skills.

Some people _____.

7 The actors have already started rehearsing for the new play given that they want to deliver a great performance.

The actors _____.

8 You ought to draw a detailed agreement so that both parties know exactly what their right and duties are in the joint venture.

You ought to _____.

9 To make sure that your smartwatch doesn't get broken easily, you should charge it every day and take good care of it.

_____ and take good care of it.

10 It seems a good idea that the two companies want to cooperate so that they can at least share the costs and divide the work to the best of their staff's abilities.

It seems a good idea _____.

Exercise 223: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Parents need to install moral values in their children in order that they grow up to be decent, law-abiding citizens. **so that**

Parents need to _____.

2 The students ought to pay more attention to their teacher's lectures in order that they understand the whole concept of seismic activity. **so that**

The students _____.

3 My sons are learning to swim this month in order that they can go on a holiday to a seaside resort. **as**

My sons _____.

4 Norbert is taking some flying lessons in order that he forgets about his problems. **to**

Norbert _____.

5 Priests-to-be are required to master both Greek and Latin in order that they can read, write and speak the languages at an advanced level. **in order to**

Priests-to-be _____.

6 All the staff had to take the course before starting their jobs in order that they learned how some internal processes work best in an international company setting.

All the staff _____.

7 Stay at home for a few days in order that you get better, Terry. **so that**

Stay at home _____.

8 The teachers took some younger students as well in order that the fare got a bit cheaper. **to the end**

The teachers _____.

9 The farmer took on some extra hands in order that he finished the harvest a little earlier. **in order to**

The farmer _____.

10 The manager is looking for a new analyst in order that Mr Handerson gets promoted at last. **so that**

The manager _____.

Exercise 224: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Na speňaženie poukážky musí klientka vpísať kód do modrého rámčeka. 2 Kovboj by si mal vziať pár dní voľna, aby sa mu rana riadne zahojila. 3 Radnica sa snaží vyzbierať 5.000 dolárov za účelom zaplataenia opravy školy. 4 V dnešných dňoch sa zvyknú študenti učiť matiku dosť poctivo, aby prešli všeobecnou skúškou zo stredoškolského vzdelania. 5 Ak nemôžete prijať podmienky, mali by ste to povedať hneď, aby spoločnosť mohla pokračovať v hľadaní inej firmy, ktorá ich bude môcť prijať. 6 Starú továreň zbúrajú, aby tam mohol developer postaviť nové obchodné centrum. 7 Radšej by sme sa na tie dva grafy mali pozrieť bližšie, aby sme našli možné nezrovnalosti medzi tými dvoma situáciami. 8 Robotníci majú právo vedieť, či riskujú svoje zdravie, keď pracujú v tej bani, aby si boli vedomí prípadných problémov, ktorým môžu čeliť v budúcnosti. 9 Nová pobočka musí s centrálou spolupracovať užšie, aby sa zamestnanci zabehli tak rýchlo, ako sa len dá. 10 Plány sa mali preštudovať podrobnejšie a to preto, aby sa mohli predstaviť alternatívy, ktorými by sme boli maximalizovali náš zisk. 11 Učiteľia zvyčajne pomáhajú deťom nadobudnúť užitočné zručnosti, aby mali lepšiu šancu nájsť si v budúcnosti dobrú prácu. 12 Žena zabila svojho manžela, aby neublížil jej malému dieťaťu. 13 Aby sa vzťah medzi marketingovou spoločnosťou a bankou rýchlo neskončil, sa marketingová firma rozhodla banke ponúknuť poradenské služby na celý rok zdarma. 14 Martin musí pracovať trochu usilovnejšie, aby získal povýšenie, z ktorého je taký nadšený. 15 Výrobca mobilných telefónov bude pravdepodobne míňať viac peňazí na inovácie, aby sa firme nevodilo rovnako, ako jej bývalej konkurencii.

4.21 Insofar that

The subordinating conjunction *insofar that* is used in the following way:

- The conjunction introduces **additional comments which limit the scope** of what has just been mentioned or implied and **states the degree** to which an action or event is true, real, possible or to which it occurs (Synonyms: *insofar as*, *inasmuch as*, *to the extent that*, *to the degree that*).
 - The calculations cannot be correct insofar that they are based on a premise which has been proven wrong already.*
Kalkulácie nemôžu byť správne, keďže sú založené na premise, ktorá sa už ukázala ako nesprávna.
 - Insofar that I have heard, the Spanish investor is going to set up a new shoe factory in the southern part of the country.*
Podľa toho, čo som počul, sa španielsky investor chystá postaviť novú továreň na výrobu topánok na juhu krajiny.
 - Insofar that Derek tells me, his sister is going to marry a rich lawyer this summer.*
Podľa toho, čo mi Derek povedal, sa jeho sestra toto leto vydáva za bohatého právnik.

Language Note:

Nowadays the conjunction has become quite obsolete and is used in formal registers, if at all, only.

4.22 In the event that

The subordinating conjunction *in the event that* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **conditions** and states what will happen if another action or event occurs (Synonyms: *if, provided, in case*).
 - *Make sure to call this number **in the event that** something unexpected happens.*
*Určite zavolajte na toto číslo **v prípade, že** sa stane niečo nepredvídané.*
 - ***In the event that** doctors should really go on strike on Monday, the army will take over their duties.*
V prípade, že by doktori mali v pondelok skutočne štrajkovať, prevezme ich úlohy armáda.

Language Note:

The conjunction is mostly used in British English only.

Exercise 225: Insert the conjunction *in the event that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The pilot will attempt an emergency landing he's got no more fuel to fly on. 2 Jim and his cousins will bunk in with us at the weekend they come to town. 3 Will I get my money back the match is canceled? 4 The headmaster drops in, please stand up and greet him the moment he comes into the classroom. 5 Dan's nephew will have lost loads of money the horse does not come first. 6 The meeting can start a little earlier the bankers arrive sooner than expected. 7 The mayor does not win the election, he'll probably retire to his ranch in South Carolina. 8 Please give this envelope to the DA something bad should happen to me. 9 Father has to do overtime, we can start dinner without him. 10 The door should be locked, please use the bell to call the receptionist. 11 I'll give you a call I should be running late. 12 The football match might be cancelled it starts raining suddenly. 13 The storm might hit towns and villages in our area the wind turns south. 14 Make sure to have your gun loaded we meet again, Tom. 15 The joker can't give me a definite answer, I'll quite the game.

Exercise 226: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *in the event that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If the suspect tries to molest you, just shout out loud and we will come to your rescue.

_____ and we will come to your rescue.

2 The boys will not be able to carry the buckets if they are filled to the brim.

The boys _____ to the brim.

3 In case I can't make it on Saturday, I'll send you a text, alright?

_____ you a text, alright?

4 The competition won't be held in our town if we can't agree on the location.

The competition _____.

5 You'll have to forfeit some of your prerogatives provided you keep making mistakes like these.

You'll have to _____.

6 If there's nobody to pick up the phone, the answering machine will finally pick it up.

- _____ pick it up.
- 7 We won't be able to get in anymore if the performance has already started.
We won't be _____.
- 8 The minister might have to resign from office if he's found guilty of fraud.
The minister _____.
- 9 The chair could call for an extra meeting if something very important came up.
The chair _____.
- 10 The desk jockey would have to do much more work than at present provided he'd like to get promoted any time soon.
The desk jockey _____.

Exercise 227: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The religious maniac wrote the letter in the event that something should happen to him. **in case**
The religious maniac _____.
- 2 In the event that your brother does indeed pass the entrance exams, I'll be happy to take him under my wings, so to say. **should**
_____ to take him under my wings, so to say.
- 3 The surgeon always carries a pair of surgical gloves in the event that he has to perform surgery outside the usual settings. **just in case**
The surgeon _____.
- 4 Even in the event that there's a mistake in the calculation, you need to finish the project by Friday. **though**
Even _____.
- 5 You'd better come up with a different story in the event that the guys don't believe what you've just told me. **in case**
You'd better _____.
- 6 Do you have a back-up plan in the event that you fail to reach the sales target? **should**
Do you have _____?
- 7 Always have the first-aid kit ready in the event that you need to use it fast, really fast. **in case**
Always have _____.
- 8 In the event that the judge ruled in favour of the defendant by mistake, the supreme court will find out for sure. **if**
_____ will find out for sure.
- 9 In the event that you don't enter the correct code within fifteen seconds on opening the window, the system will lock you out. **unless**
_____ will lock you out.

10 Push the fire button and leave the building at once in the event that you detect smoke coming out of the offices. **if**

Push the fire button _____ .

Exercise 228: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 V prípade, že je nákladiak už plný, nalož tie obrazy do mojej dodávky. 2 Pani Greenová mi brnkne, ak by náhodou narazila na nejaké problémy. 3 Myslím si, že ceny komodít budú opäť stúpať v prípade, že zákazníci začnú nakupovať drahé byty a domy. 4 V prípade, že Vaša manželka súťaž nevyhrá, budete mať na ňu horší názor než teraz? 5 Aké sankcie uložíte zodpovedným pracovníkom v prípade, že spoločnosť bude musieť pokutu zaplatiť? 6 Ak sa Lilly za Petra nevydá, rozhodne ho to položí. 7 Ak výrobca počítačov nepredá prinajmenšom šesť miliónov kusov nového modelu počítača už v prvom roku predaja, je dosť možné, že zbankrotuje. 8 Buď pripravený rýchlo zabrzdiť v prípade, že auto zrýchli príliš rýchlo. 9 Budú musieť podnikatelia prísť aj budúci týždeň v prípade, že dnes nedospejeme k dohode? 10 Pre prípad, že to neprežijeme, chcem, aby si vedel, že som nikdy nezneužil tvoju dôveru. 11 Výrobca odporúča, aby sme si zvolili piateho súťažiaceho pre prípad, že by jeden z nás ochorel. 12 Rečník možno preskočí prvú časť svojej prezentácie v prípade, ak budeme trochu meškať. 13 V prípade, že bude opäť nedostatok ropy, sa aj jej ceny nepochybne opäť vyšplhajú do závratných výšok. 14 Listy nebudú pred pondelkom odoslané v prípade, že ich nedoručíš na poštu pred piatou. 15 Viem, že sa už čoskoro budeme musieť začať obzerať po novej práci v prípade, že naša nasledujúca kampaň neprotiahne cieľovú skupinu, ktorú chce pán Swansee prilákať na produkt.

4.23 Now that

The subordinating conjunction **now (that)** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction gives **an explanation** which sheds light on the consequences of an action or event (Synonyms: *since, as, given that*).
 - *The newly appointed CEO can do whatever he pleases **now (that)** he is the man in charge of the whole company.*
*Novovymenovaný generálny riaditeľ si môže robiť čokoľvek sa mu len zapáči, **keďže** má na starosti celú firmu.*
 - ***Now (that)** you have the public's attention, what exactly are you going to do?*
***Keď** si si už získal pozornosť verejnosti, čo presne sa chystáš spraviť?*

Language Note:

The conjunction is mostly used in fairly information registers.

Exercise 229: Insert the conjunction *now that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 I have your undivided attention, we can finally start the seminar. 2 The washing machine won't keep breaking down anymore it's been fixed. 3 The CFO will do his best to get us the funding he's finally understood the importance of innovation. 4 The widow won't spend as much time alone as she used to she's found some friends to keep her company. 5 I have her number, I'll call her every week. 6 The students have passed their last exams, their holidays can start. 7 The children will behave themselves

you've given them something to look forward to. 8 The security guards will check big bags we know how the thieves have managed to steal all the office supplies. 9 Justice has been served, we can all breathe again. 10 You'll be able to use the laptop on the go again it's got a new battery. 11 The patient will have to remain at home for a few weeks he's been released from hospital. 12 The company revenues should go up steadily this quarter nearly 250 staff were made redundant. 13 You should not use that syringe anymore it's been used to vaccinate the young man against the flu. 14 The war is over, the survivors can return to their families and start rebuilding their homes. 15 I suppose the nightmare for the people of Egypt will start all over again one dictator has replaced another dictator.

Exercise 230: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *now that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 You will be able to save the file since the virus has been removed.

You _____.

2 The crows have flown away as the old man sounded the horn.

The crows _____.

3 Given that the wall is freshly painted, you shouldn't lean on it anymore, Sarah.

_____ it anymore, Sarah.

4 The goods will be delivered by Saturday afternoon since you have now confirmed the delivery.

The goods _____.

5 Lucas doesn't want to talk to me anymore because I said some nasty things about him on Monday.

Lucas _____.

6 Since the priest has already locked up the church for the night, you will not be able to get in till tomorrow morning.

_____ till tomorrow morning.

7 As the judge has already closed the hearing, the surprise witness won't be able to testify anymore.

_____ to testify anymore.

8 The village can be rebuilt at last because the flood water has finally drained.

The village _____.

9 The party guests would like to leave since there's no more food left.

The party guests _____.

10 Jack's friends don't want to have anything to do with him anymore because he's lost his job and run out of money already.

Jack's friends _____.

11 As the company is likely to go bankrupt, 1,200 people will lose their jobs.

_____ their jobs.

Exercise 231: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Now that the marketing manager has retired, maybe one of us has a chance to become the new master of creative powers in our company. **given**

_____ creative powers in our company.

2 The meeting will start shortly now that all business associates have gathered. **since**

The meeting _____ .

3 Now that you bought all the ingredients necessary to prepare the lasagne, we can start cooking. **as**

_____, we can start cooking.

4 Mr Thomas shouldn't be late anymore now that he's got himself a new car. **considering**

Mr Thomas _____ .

5 What are you going to do at the weekends now that you sold your cottage? **since**

What are you going to do _____ ?

6 The signal is quite clear now that there's no more interference. **because**

The signal _____ .

7 How about doing more exercise now that you've got more free time on your hands? **given**

How about doing _____ ?

8 Will you move to Florida now that you don't have any other commitments in Vienna? **seeing**

Will you move _____ ?

9 The staff can take a break for a few minutes now that we've reached the target for today. **in view of**

The staff can _____ .

10 The building block should be empty now that everybody's been evicted. **due to**

The building block _____ .

Exercise 232: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Teraz, keď sa už búrka rozišla, sa dedinčania môžu vrátiť k svojim každodenným životom. 2 Ubezpečujem Vás, že koč na Vás bude čakať pred vlakovou stanicou, keďže ste nám povedali, kedy prídete. 3 Pacient by už mal začať cvičiť, nakoľko už môže vstať z postele. 4 Keď už mor pomínul, je načas začať počítať jeho obeť. 5 Krajčír zostane hore celú noc a bude ti šiť maškarný kostým, keďže už vie, že mu zostávajú len dva dni na dokončenie. 6 Jim na teba bude čakať na mostíku, keďže prehliadku lode skončil. 7 Nakoľko už motor funguje, môžeme konečne prístav opustiť. 8 Študenti sa môžu začať učiť po čínsky okamžite, lebo sa otvárajú dva kurzy čínštiny. 9 Myslím si, že nebude ľahké počítač opraviť, pretože nášho vylial kakao. 10 Keď už uchádzač vie, čo tá práca skutočne obnáša, sa nezdá, že by mal o ňu príliš veľký záujem. 11 Gangster ťa nedá zabiť, lebo si sa zasnúbil s jeho dcérou. 12 Odkedy sa bývalý angličtinár prestal o čokoľvek zaujímať, cíti sa oveľa šťastnejší a slobodnejší. 13 Tvoji starí ro-

dičia by mali svoju farmu radšej čo najskôr predať, nakoľko ceny nehnuteľností v okolí išli hore. 14 Nakoľko sopka každým okamihom vybuchne, už niet miesta, kde by sa dalo schovať. 15 Keď už všetká nádej zomrela, nezostáva nám nič iné, než čakať na koniec.

4.24 Provided that

The subordinating conjunction **provided (that)** is used in the following way:

1 The conjunction introduces **conditions** and states what can happen if another action or event occurs (Synonyms: *if, only if*).

- *The bank will lend you the money **provided (that)** you agree to pay it back at a 2.3 per cent interest.*
*Banka ti peniaze požičia, **teda ak** budeš súhlasiť s tým, že im ich splatíš s úrokom 2,3 percenta.*
- ***Provided (that)** the competition in the market is too strong, the start-up company may not be able to survive the first year at all.*
Za predpokladu, že je konkurencia na trhu príliš silná, novozaložená spoločnosť možno neprežije ani len prvý rok.

Language Note:

The conjunction often conveys the connotation that an action or event can happen only if another action or event happens first, and it thus tends to serve more emphatic purposes than *if*.

Exercise 233: Insert the conjunction *provided that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The magician can take a break he's already finished at least half the performance. 2 You can repay your debts, the bank won't take ownership of your house and car. 3 Jo will be running a little late tonight she stops at Jane's again. 4 I won't hold a grudge against you you pay me back by Saturday. 5 Right, you can take your baby brother as well he behaves this time. 6 The warden is strict enough, he can join our staff any time he likes. 7 You can get rid of the mice you take better care of your household. 8 Our home planet will explode we cannot find a way to stabilise its core. 9 The king will surrender the leader of the rebels guarantees his safety. 10 The hitman might kill you you do not strike a better deal with him. 11 The knight returns by midnight, I will personally set you free. 12 Our neighbours will take good care of the kitten we invite them to our Christmas party next month. 13 The cat doesn't make a mess in my house, you can take it with you. 14 The CEO might give you a pay rise you produce an awesome advertising campaign. 15 The scientists will be able to get in the lab you remember the correct entry code.

Exercise 234: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *provided that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If I don't get into a lot of money soon, I might lose my house, my car and even my job.

_____ and even my job.

2 The bullies stop hurting the young boy only if he gives them his pocket money.

The bullies _____.

3 The workers will keep it a secret on condition that you let them leave early on Friday.

The workers _____.

- 4 The bodyguard would have protected the singer if the manager had paid him in advance.
The bodyguard _____ .
- 5 Only if the dancer had more brains, would I have agreed to give her a hand.
_____ give her a hand.
- 6 Providing you show me around, I'll give you five bucks.
_____ five bucks.
- 7 We might still strike a deal if we offer the producer some additional incentive to do business with us.
We might still _____ .
- 8 The construction workers are willing to work at night only if we pay them double the salary we agreed on.
The construction workers _____ .
- 9 The bachelor would get married only if he found a really terrific woman to be with.
The bachelor _____ .
- 10 If the judge lets my daughter walk free, I'll get him whatever he wants.
_____ whatever he wants.

Exercise 235: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The murderer will be brought to justice provided the witness testifies against him. **only if**
_____ to justice.
- 2 The teacher will give me the test results just like that provided I offer her a great bribe. **providing**
The teacher _____ .
- 3 The chemist will retire this year provided his nephew will be ready to take over for him. **condition**
The chemist _____ .
- 4 The students might listen to your lectures more attentively provided you scare them well. **if**
The students _____ .
- 5 Provided you leave me alone, I will leave you alone as well. **say**
_____ alone as well.
- 6 The researchers might actually put the theory into practise provided they manage to crowdfund their research project. **should**
The researchers might _____ .
- 7 Provided my wife is at home, she'll pick up the phone and fax me the documents right away. **if**
_____ the documents right away.
- 8 The banking sector will recover once again provided the EU steps in and gives its banks a helping hand. **given**

_____ its banks a helping hand.

9 My sister will pitch in too provided she can come to your birthday party, Greg. **condition**
My sister _____.

10 Provided the ratings improve, the TV show won't be cancelled by the end of the season. **only if**
The TV show _____.

Exercise 236: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Technici sa na tú záležitosť pozrú ihneď, ak im pošlete zopár vzorových prípadov. 2 V prípade, že už nebudeme mať k dispozícii žiadnu ropu, čo bude ľudstvo robiť? 3 Zvykneš si dodržiavať také prísne pravidlá, ak ti ponúknu dosť dobrý plat? 4 Pete by bol Lilly pomohol s čímkoľvek, ak by mu bola darovala jeden z tých jej krásnych úsmevov. 5 Ak sa auto ešte raz pokazí, rozhodne si kúpim nové. 6 Môžeš vziať deti do zoo, ak sa o ne dobre postaráš. 7 Píla vôbec nie je nebezpečná za predpokladu, že s ňou zaobchádzaš opatrne. 8 Štúdia poskytnú spoľahlivé výsledky, ak opýtané páry budú odpovedať na otázky úprimne. 9 Ak si dám dom natrieť na zeleno, dostanem päť percentnú zľavu. 10 Môj otec sa na teba nebude hnevať, ak mu povieš pravdu. 11 Ak človek chápe jedinečnosť častice, dokáže oceniť jej krásu. 12 Finančný riaditeľ na stretnutie príde, ak ho vyzdvihneš a dotiahneš do zasadačky. 13 Za predpokladu, že sa nevyskytnú žiadne ďalšie komplikácie, bude diaľnica dokončená do konca roka. 14 Chcel by som, aby mi dal herec svoj podpis, ak je ešte stále v obchode. 15 Ak námorníci prežijú krutú zimu na mori, vrátia sa domov silnejší, než boli kedykoľvek predtým.

4.25 Save that

The subordinating conjunction **save that** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction introduces a statement which **explains the motivation why** an action or event is not possible, true, real, or will not happen (Synonyms: *except, but*).
 - *The marketing staff would have produced a great PR campaign, **save that** they did not come up with any original and inspiring ideas whatsoever.*
*Marketingoví zamestnanci by boli vytvorili skvelú reklamnú kampaň, **ale** neprišli s vôbec žiadnymi originálnymi a inšpiratívnymi nápadmi.*
 - *Little is known about the origins of the universe, **save that** it all began with the Big Bang.*
*O pôvode vesmíru sa veľa nevie **okrem toho, že** sa všetko začalo Veľkým treskom.*

Exercise 237: Insert the conjunction *save that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The agents have learned everything from the suspect they wanted to know, he used to be linked to a dangerous terrorist network. 2 The marketing manager has already postponed the meeting, he hasn't notified us yet. 3 I have never been to Switzerland, your theory sounds rather believable. 4 Little is known about the effects of smoking e-cigarettes, it's not nearly as dangerous as smoking the real thing. 5 Mr and Mrs White would like to go on holiday to Australia, they don't have enough money to pay for the lot. 6 Mr Burton's last will was found at last, it was not signed. 7 The interpreter wanted to help us, she doesn't speak French. 8 I don't have a single clue about electronics, I'd say the gadget is broken pure and simple. 9 The manager was looking for his PA, she's already gone home. 10 I don't

want to bother her again, there's no one else around. 11 If the entrepreneur is really keen on buying some more shares, it's all right with me, they now cost 28 dollars more than before. 12 The famous singer is acting as though we've never met before, we went to the same school for four years. 13 My brother is quite a cool guy he doesn't drive an expensive car. 14 The officers have done a terrific job catching those armed robbers they forgot to read them their rights. 15 He must be at home he won't answer the phone.

Exercise 238: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *save that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The mechanic would have fixed the engine, but he couldn't get the spare parts needed.

The mechanic _____.

2 The football coach might go easier on the boys except he wants them to be successful.

The football coach _____.

3 The chair is rather uncomfortable. Still, it's the only one in the office that's still free.

The chair _____.

4 The supervisor has no idea what Marc is doing all the time, and yet he's well aware of the fact that he's not doing his job.

The supervisor _____.

5 The dancers won't give any more performances apart from the fact that they want to continue and train the youngsters.

The dancers _____.

6 Children shouldn't play truant except when they're going away on holiday with their parents at the end of the school year.

Children shouldn't _____.

7 Marleen has refused to take over her colleague's duties, but she's the only qualified substitute.

Marleen _____.

8 The company ought to hire more staff for the winter season. Unfortunately, there's not enough money to pay for their salaries.

The company _____.

9 The Prime Minister is not likely to accept the terms and conditions dictated by the US unless they change their attitude towards the country's internal affairs.

The Prime Minister _____.

10 The speaker would have interrupted the MEP except his mic stopped working all of a sudden.

The speaker _____.

11 The receptionist could give us a hand. However, she broke her leg last week so she won't be in.

The receptionist _____.

Exercise 239: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 None of the staff will tell you their login data save that you promise not to misuse it. **unless**
None of the staff _____ .
- 2 Ms Salinger has already left for Austria save that she's left her ticket behind. **except**
Ms Salinger _____ .
- 3 The delivery guys would have moved the furniture save that they were in a hurry. **unfortunately**
The delivery guys _____ .
- 4 We cannot file the order save that the CFO agrees to it first. **provided**
We can _____ .
- 5 It was a marvellous afternoon save that Sarah almost choked to death. **apart from**
It was _____ .
- 6 The teacher would have told the parents the truth save that she's a kind-hearted person. **but**
The teacher _____ .
- 7 The young officer offered to help the lady with the bags save that she declined. **however**
The young officer _____ .
- 8 I would respectfully agree, save that I do not believe there's any justice in this country left. **yet**
I would _____ .
- 9 The host offered us some crisps save that they were all spicy. **but**
The host _____ .
- 10 We know very little about the terms of the contract save that they are quite unfavourable to both the company and the workers. **apart from**
We know _____ .

Exercise 240: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Polícia nevie, kde hľadať väzňov na úteku okrem toho, že ich možno videli v istom mestečku na Floride.
- 2 Barmani v súčasnosti nemajú veľa práce okrem toho, že podávajú nápoje niekoľkým opitým námorníkom.
- 3 O Dávidovi Charlestonovi neexistujú žiadne informácie len to, že sa narodil v Texase.
- 4 Okrem toho, že má knihovnička veľké dlhy, o nej kolegovia vôbec nič nevedia.
- 5 Toto je aktualizovaný zoznam nezvestných dievčat z nášho okolia až na to, že Laura Dawsonová na ňom už nefiguruje.
- 6 Myslím si, že Klára by si rada našla novú prácu až na to, že nemá ani tušenia, čo by chcela robiť.
- 7 Kňaz svoje návyky nikdy nezmení, no možno si zadováži nové oblečenie.
- 8 Pete by bol Delilahu požiadal o ruku až na to, že ona o neho vôbec nemala záujem.
- 9 Turisti by sa boli do hotela vrátili aj skôr, no neboli si istí, či na poslednej križovatke majú zabočiť doľava alebo doprava.
- 10 Firma by rada faktúru zaplatila, no nemá na to peniaze.
- 11 Len málo sa koná v otázke riek a nedostatku rýb okrem

toho, že primátor prisľúbil podniknúť kroky, ktorými by sa zabezpečilo prežitie rýb, ktoré v nej stále žijú. 12 Katkini rodičia majú niekoľko vplyvných priateľov, ale tí im v prípade potreby nepomôžu. 13 Ohľadom rastúceho počtu áut a nákladných vozidiel v našom meste sa nič nepodnikne okrem toho, že miestni možno spustia petíciu na vylúčenie kamiónov z centra mesta. 14 Neexistujú žiadne dôkazy, že chemická spoločnosť je zodpovedná za ekologickú katastrofu na rieke len to, že nafta iste pochádza z miestnej firmy. 15 Predseda sa podobá na prezidenta okrem toho, že má na ľavom líci jazvu.

4.26 Seeing that

The subordinating conjunction *seeing (that)* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction gives **reason** and states why something happens or why something is described in a particular way (Synonyms: *since, as, inasmuch as, in view of the fact that*).
 - *I'd've fired the bum right away **seeing (that)** he was just walking round the office all the time talking to the others and actually keeping them from doing their work as well. Toho lenivca by som bol okamžite vyhodil, **lebo** sa celý čas len prechádzal po kancelárii a bavil sa s ostatnými a v podstate ešte aj ich zdržiaval pri práci.*
 - ***Seeing (that)** your brother is a good-for-nothing, I won't hire him in the future anymore. **Keďže** je tvoj brat darmožráč, v budúcnosti ho už nezamestnám.*

Language Note:

The conjunction is used in information registers and is sometimes considered slang.

Exercise 241: Insert the conjunction *seeing that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 There are still issues regarding the production process, we need to inform our marketing department of the new launch date. 2 The children shouldn't have any more chocolate before going to bed they can't really get to sleep afterwards. 3 It's going to be a hard sell your partners are not willing to negotiate much. 4 He had no chance to win his darling's heart, the young professor turned his back on love for good. 5 The desks at the reception need to be replaced asap they look like they were in use during WWII already. 6 You might want to check the cables before calling a technicians you've done some redecorating today. 7 He was totally exhausted, Sarah let her husband sleep all day long. 8 The teacher won't let you leave early today you actually lied to her last time. 9 The holiday season is about to start soon, the malls have already started to work on their special offers. 10 The gate shall remain closed the rebels are still trying to get in the city. 11 The machine guns will be delivered im April, the last shipment was cancelled. 12 The refugee camp is overcrowded, you'll have to find some other place for this group. 13 The minister did not want to postpone the meeting any further it was high time something was done about the problem. 14 The break is almost over, the students are returning to their classrooms. 15 The walls will be painted green nobody liked the yellow paint.

Exercise 242: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *seeing that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Since I knew Sarah would write the meeting minutes, I didn't even bother bringing my notebook.

_____ bringing my notebook.

2 The Italian painter won't sell his drawings yet as his sons like them a lot.

The Italian painter _____ .

3 The escaped prisoners started shooting into the crowd as they became aware of the fact that police officers were closing in on them.

The escaped prisoners _____ .

4 Because land prices are expected to go up soon again, the mayor started buying estates all over the country.

_____ all over the country.

5 The hotel owner won't have you as you've already brought three hotels to the brink of bankruptcy.

The hotel owner _____ .

6 Your boyfriend may of course come to the party since you might turn down your invitation if he couldn't come along too.

Your boyfriend _____ .

7 The marketing analysis can't be right given that the target group provided quite a few negative answers in the questionnaire.

The marketing analysis _____ .

8 The shark won't return again since it's already found another prey.

The shark _____ .

9 The victim wouldn't testify against the criminal because the judge would have set him free anyway.

The victim _____ .

10 Given you're an alcoholic, you're not welcome in our pub anymore.

_____ in our pub anymore.

Exercise 243: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The English teacher doesn't want to test our knowledge yet seeing that we're still not prepared for the final exam. **because**

The English teacher _____ .

2 Seeing that the printer has been fixed a few times already, it might be high time to get a new one. **as**

_____ get a new one.

3 The senior accountant doesn't work very hard anymore seeing that he'll be fired by the end of the year anyway. **given**

The senior accountant _____ .

4 The British royal family is to visit the US in the summer seeing that they've already made some arrangements with their American friends. **since**

The British royal family _____ .

- 5 I won't let you drive seeing that you've had six glasses of whiskey. **after**
I won't let _____.
- 6 Seeing that there are no more glasses in the cupboard, the PA has just gone to the other office to fetch some more. **given**
_____ to the other office to fetch some more.
- 7 The commander is likely to retire at the end of the year seeing that he's already too tired to do his job properly. **since**
The commander _____.
- 8 Jane's cousin won't accept the job offer seeing that she'd have to start work at 7.00 am. **due to**
Jane's cousin _____.
- 9 Seeing that the company would not be able to retain its market position for much longer, the CEO has made a firm decision to start innovation right away. **because**
_____ innovation right away.
- 10 The oil tycoon might sell his computer shares any time now seeing that his investment is not likely to yield much profit in the future. **owing to**
The oil tycoon _____.
- 11 Seeing that the submarine wouldn't be able to leave the port for another two days, the captain took a day off. **as**
_____ took a day off.

Exercise 244: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Možno by si sa mal začať zamýšľať nad novou prácou, nakoľko sa firma chystá prepustiť päťsto zamestnancov už toto leto. 2 Keďže nikde nebolo vidno žiadnych policajtov, chlapec schmatol koláčik a rýchlo utiekol preč. 3 Tak ťa teda už nebudem viac zdržiavať, keď vidím, že máš plno práce. 4 Vzhľadom na to, že manažér nebol v kancelárii, to zamestnanci brali pre zmenu trochu zľahka. 5 Nakoľko generálny riaditeľ nevidel z problémov žiadne východisko, vybral si zo stola zbraň a bez váhania si strelil do hlavy. 6 Čo keby si sa k nám pridala a išla s nami na koncert, keď už som zaplatil za štyri lístky? 7 Pokojne môžeš zjesť celého homára, keď som zaňho už zaplatil. 8 Vodič kamiónu si chce dať skontrolovať auto skôr, než sa vydá do hôr, nakoľko má niečo s motorom. 9 Baby by mali v sobotu rozhodne prísť na párty, lebo Mišo bude oslavovať narodenky. 10 Učiteľka bude mať tento rok veľa práce, pretože má v triede pár protivných žiakov. 11 Keďže mladí nemajú úctu pred staršími, sa môj dedko nechce zoznámiť s mojimi priateľmi. 12 Banka ti už asi viac peňazí nepožičia, lebo máš problémy splatiť svoje súčasné dlhy. 13 Pravdepodobne budeš musieť zaparkovať trochu ďalej od obchodov, lebo dnes otvárajú na rohu nový obchod. 14 Keďže dodávka dostala šmyk a zastala priamo pred autobusom, si jeden s cestujúcich vybral mobil a volal pomoc. 15 Kaderník bude možno už čoskoro musieť predať svoje kaderníctvo, pretože krížom cez ulicu otvoria nové vlasové štúdio.

4.27 So that

The subordinating conjunction *so (that)* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction expresses **purpose** or introduces **an explanation**. It makes clear that an action or event produces a certain result, and thus conveys a cause-and-effect relationship between the main and the subordinate clauses (Synonyms: *in order that*).
 - *The businesspeople lowered their voices, so that no one would hear what they were saying. Obchodníci hovorili tichšie, aby nikto nepočul, o čom sa rozprávali.*
 - *Every manager has to show up for the meeting this time, so that we can finally wrap up the initial stage of the project. Tentokrát musí prísť na schôdzu každý manažér, aby sme už konečne ukončili prvú fázu projektu.*

Language Note 1:

Although both *so that* and *in order that* convey the same meaning, the former phrase is by far more common in modern English, especially in informal registers.

So that as well as *in order that* are commonly followed by a wide range of modal auxiliary verbs, in particular *can*, *will* and *may*. *May* is often used in rather formal registers.

Language Note 2:

Many subordinate clauses expressing a temporal or temporal-like meaning do not co-occur with future tenses when talking about the future. This is also the case with *so that*, which is often followed by present rather than future tenses, even though the idea expressed refers to the future.

- *I'll type the letters right away so that you have them on your desk in ten minutes. Listy okamžite napíšem, aby ste ich mali na stole do desať minút.*
- *Can you get us some coffee so that we don't have to take a break, Susan? Zuzana, mohli by ste nám priniesť kávu, aby sme si nemuseli dať prestávku?*

Exercise 245: Insert the conjunction *so that* in the correct places in the sentences.

- 1 The ledger won't bother you again, you can finish the analysis asap.
- 2 The negotiations were postponed until Monday, all participants could study the documentation in more detail.
- 3 Lucy is thinking about getting a faster computer, she can run more advanced software at home too.
- 4 Your desk will be moved to the other office while you're away on holiday, we don't bother you while at work.
- 5 The secret agent informed his superior, the country is ready for the terrorist.
- 6 The mechanic has been doing overtime for the past six months, he can get himself a great bike.
- 7 The villagers want to have the dam built before the winter, they can be sure that their village won't get flooded just like last winter.
- 8 I suggest you get a faster Internet connection, you can surf all kinds of websites in no time.
- 9 The spy will be careful the whole time, he doesn't blow his cover.
- 10 We'll be in touch, we can confirm the details of the meeting.
- 11 The team leader has decided to produce new templates, the team may finally increase their productivity as well as quality.
- 12 The staff need to be more careful, similar mistakes can be avoided in the future.
- 13 You haven't been hired you can dismantle the organisation.
- 14 The vice-president will talk about the issue with the department head, he can communicate his vision directly to the person in charge.

Exercise 246: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *so that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The old must die in order that the young may live.

The old _____.

2 As many as 200 staff need to be laid off if the company wants to keep it's growth rate stable.

As many as 200 staff _____.

3 The applicant will have to do much better than this to impress the CFO.

The applicant _____.

4 Mr Harlington must have done something really exceptional to get such an awesome promotion.

Mr Harlington _____.

5 The yacht will have to be sold asap if you want to keep your head above water, Daniel.

The yacht _____.

6 The order has to be filed one more time in order that you may receive the goods needed.

The order _____.

7 The boys should get a bit stronger if they want to carry such heavy weights.

The boys _____.

8 The tenant gave me the rent right away in order that he didn't have to think about it next week.

The tenant _____.

9 The engineer will shed some light on the matter in order that we're not kept in the dark any longer.

The engineer _____.

10 You'd better wrap up warm in order to keep healthy throughout this cool winter, darling.

You'd better _____.

Exercise 247: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Charlie's generous mother is going to buy him a gold watch, so that he's got something to remember her by. **in order to**

Charlie's generous mother _____.

2 The guests should remain calm so that they don't do something stupid. **so as to**

The guests _____.

3 Patrol the borders carefully so that the illegal refugees don't get past you. **make sure**

Patrol _____.

4 Give me the gun so that I may finish what you failed to do. **because**

Give me _____.

5 The hospital will be reconstructed so that it can remain operational. **in order that**

- The hospital _____ .
- 6 Jack's going to drop by on Saturday afternoon so that he can help us move the big cupboard. **to**
Jack's going to _____ .
- 7 Helen is going to pay me back on Thursday so that we're square again. **in order that**
Helen _____ .
- 8 The Greek restaurant is going to move to bigger premises so that it can host bigger feasts. **so as to**
The Greek restaurant _____ .
- 9 The taxi is already waiting for your, so that you don't miss your train to Moscow. **in order that**
The taxi _____ .
- 10 The maid will clean up the mess, so that the cook can make dinner. **in order that**
The maid _____ .

Exercise 248: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Prosim ťa, pošli mi email, aby som vedel, že ste pricestovali v poriadku. 2 Navrhujem, aby ste predali svoj podiel v spoločnosti, a tak mohli vyplatiť veriteľov. 3 Balón vzlietne cez víkend, aby sa každý mohol prísť pozrieť na jeho prvý vzlet. 4 Projekt sa spustil vo štvrtok, aby programátori mohli ešte dovedy nájsť poruchy. 5 Nechaj pekára na pokoji, aby si mohol konečne trochu oddýchnuť. 6 Dnes by sa mal každý naučiť hovoriť po anglicky dobre, aby sa dokázal dorozumieť v cudzom prostredí. 7 Zákazník vrátil pokazený telefón do obchodu, aby ho mohli opraviť. 8 Mišo mi pomôže s úlohou z matematiky, aby sme mohli ísť večer von. 9 Tlmočnica si musela požičať od manžela auto, aby sa dostala na stretnutie načas. 10 Novinárka bude čakať na svedka v kaviarni, aby s ním urobila exkluzívny rozhovor. 11 Obžalovaného neprepustia na kauciu, aby sa nemohol snažiť ovplyvňovať svedkov. 12 Kominár musí loziť po všetkých tých vysokých budovách, aby mohol vyčistiť ich komíny. 13 Akrobati vždy používajú záchranú sieť, aby si neublížili, či aby sa dokonca nezabili, ak sa predstavenie v istom okamihu nevydarí. 14 Presuňme to obrovské kreslo do kúta, aby bolo v strede viac miesta. 15 Čo by si povedal na pár dní voľna, aby sme sa mohli zabaviť?

4.28 Such that

The subordinating conjunction **provided that** is used in the following ways:

- The conjunction shows what the **result or consequence** of something should be or should look like (Meaning: *to the extent that, in such a way that*).
 - The bus driver fell badly whilst getting off the bus last night **such that** he had to see his doctor today.*
*Vodič autobusu včera večer škaredo spadol, keď vystupoval **a to tak** škaredo, že dnes musel ísť k lekárovi.*
 - “Teaching should be **such that** what is offered is perceived as a valuable gift and not as a hard duty.” (Albert Einstein)*
*Výučba by mala byť **taká, že** to, čo sa ponúka sa vníma ako cenný dar a nie ako ťažká povinnosť.*

2 The conjunction introduces a **condition** which is used to define a mathematical problem or formula (Meaning: *in such a way that*).

- Find all integers **such that** $5x^2 - 1$ is prime, please.
*Nájdite prosím všetky celé čísla **tak, aby** bolo $5x^2 - 1$ prvočíslo.*
- Take x to be a real number **such that** $10x^2 - 2$ is greater than 5.
*X má byť reálne číslo **tak, aby** $10x^2 - 2$ bolo väčšie ako 5.*

Language Note 1:

The conjunction is mostly used in maths talk or writing and is seldom employed in everyday speech or writing, except in formal registers that often have to do with mathematics.

Language Note 2:

Although there is a semantic connection between *such that* and *so that*, the meanings expressed do differ in the standpoint taken. Broadly speaking, *such that* implies that the emphasis lies on the result, *so that* indicates the emphasis is on the cause.

- *The construction workers used cheap material when building the block of flats **such that** the whole building collapsed a year later.*
(The sentence conveys the connotation that the construction workers used cheap building material perhaps because they didn't know better, ie they did not want the building to collapse.)
*Stavbári použili lacný materiál, keď stavali panelák, **takže** celá budova sa o rok neskôr zrútila.*
- *The construction workers used cheap material when building the block of flats **so that** the whole building collapsed a year later.*
(The sentence conveys the connotation that the construction workers used cheap building material on purpose, ie they wanted the building to collapse.)
*Stavbári použili lacný materiál, keď stavali panelák, **(tak) aby /a preto** sa celá budova o rok neskôr zrútila.*

Exercise 249: Insert the conjunction *such that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Please, find all integers $8x^2 - 2$ is prime. 2 Make sure to connect the sentences they constitute a fine narrative. 3 Investigate the issues in more detail the COO is satisfied with our results. 4 Our staff's work should be what they do deserves praise and not further improvement or correction. 5 Take good care of the technical aspects of the project there are no complaints about the program. 6 The strongest belief will always win, but doubts can water down any belief it isn't very effective. (Anita Anderson) 7 West Ham United THE feel-good factor here is the club's managing director, Peter Storrie, has predicted a serious challenge. (Independent) 8 The heady lifestyles of the rich and famous are monogamy, after a while, is no longer an option. (Glasgow Herald) 9 Lately, Jane's childish and immature behaviour has been it required a face-to-face talk with the supervisor. 10 Each exercise should be carried out smoothly for the allotted time, some 15-20 repetitions are performed on each exercise. (Tony Lycholat)

Exercise 250: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *such that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The inexperienced GP changed Ms Huderton's medication as a result of which she suffered a massive heart attack and died a week after seeing the doctor.

The inexperienced GP _____.

2 The students' anxiety was so great that they could not fall asleep.

- The students' anxiety was _____.
- 3 The baker slipped on the wet floor and broke his leg. Consequently, he could not come to work for two whole months.
The baker _____.
- 4 Take x to be a real number and arrive at the conclusion that $8x^2 - 2$ is greater than 6.
Take x _____.
- 5 Find all the integers in such a way that $20x^2 - 4$ is prime, please.
Find _____.
- 6 In maths, an arithmetic progression is a sequence of numbers which works in such a way that the difference of any two successive members of the sequence is a constant.
In maths, an arithmetic progression _____.
- 7 The night sky was of a beauty, and thus we watched it all night long.
The night sky _____.
- 8 Take x to be a real number in such a way that x^2 is negative.
Take x _____.
- 9 The careless janitor switched off the lights while his hand was wet. As a result, he blew the fuse.
The careless janitor _____.
- 10 The banker gave bad advice to the client. Consequently, Mr Smith lost 100,000 dollars.
The banker _____.

Exercise 251: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Elektrikár dal do lampy vadnú žiarovku, a preto prestala elektrina fungovať v celom dome. 2 X má byť reálne číslo, aby x^2 bolo kladné. 3 Moja kamarátka mi dala akýsi čudný liek, po ktorom som celý víkend zvracal. 4 Dalilah má sladký a pôvabný hlas, a preto by ju Petr najradšej neustále počúval. 5 Tí dvaja bratia sa rozvášnene hádali, a tak dostal starší z nich infarkt. 6 Technici dostali väčšie monitory, aby mohli svoju prácu odvádzať rýchlejšie a ľahšie. 7 Finančná poradkyňa firmu okrádala, a preto ju minulý mesiac vyhodili. 8 Nájdite prosím všetky celé čísla tak, aby $15x^2 - 4$ bolo prvočíslo. 9 Zdá sa, že lekár počas operácie pochybil, takže pacienta budú musieť ešte raz operovať. 10 Kňaz povedal pár skutočne nechutných vecí o jednej z jeho ovečiek a kvôli tomu musel ísť navštíviť biskupa.

4.24 Supposing that

The subordinating conjunction **supposing (that)** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction introduces a **hypothetical situation** which either asks for clarification or gives further information about the actions and events which followed as direct consequences of the supposition (Meaning: *upon the premise that*; Synonyms: *in the event that, if*).
 - Supposing (that)** you don't get the job, what will you do then?
Dajme tomu, že tú prácu nedostaneš, čo budeš potom robiť?

- **Supposing (that)** *we had signed the contract at that time, we would be rich beyond our wildest dreams now.*
Za predpokladu, *že by sme vtedy boli podpísali zmluvu, by sme teraz mali viac peňazí, než si vo sne dokážeš predstaviť.*

Exercise 252: Insert the conjunction *supposing that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Do you really believe the customers would have liked the tablet better if it had better specs? 2 You had managed to beat your opponent, what would you have done with the prize money? 3 The constructors wouldn't have come to the meeting if you'd told them Mr Baker was coming as well. 4 I had a million dollars, I might get myself a new house. 5 The mobile phone would be ok if you hadn't dipped it into the pool last night. 6 The mechanic had a closer look at the brakes, do you think he could have seen the loose screw? 7 You could live anywhere in the world, where would you like to spend the rest of your days? 8 I don't think the athlete could have won the race if he came in sixth only. 9 Some of our business partners might have signed the deal if they had been offered better working conditions. 10 Your neighbours didn't have a dog, would you still be trying to find a new place to live? 11 What would he be doing right now if the Chinese manufacturer hadn't given him this excellent job? 12 We sold the cottage this year, could we afford to buy a small house in Venice? 13 The architect will keep to your project if you pay him well. 14 The detective had been wearing some sort of disguise, do you honestly believe the murderer would not have recognised him? 15 The ship might have sunk on its first voyage if you hadn't done anything about the rear issues.

Exercise 253: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *supposing that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If the harbour were further away, our properties would be worth much more than at present.

_____ much more than at present.

2 The taxi driver might be earning a lot more money if he had studied harder while still at school.

The taxi driver _____.

3 The interrogators would have tortured the prisoner unless he had told them the whole truth.

The interrogators _____.

4 Say you were a rich man, would you still care about your poor friends?

_____?

5 The sons would still be arguing with each other if the father hadn't interrupted them.

The sons _____.

6 If the analyst hadn't read the report before, he wouldn't have trusted it at all.

_____ trusted it at all.

7 If the basketball player wasn't aware of his potential, he wouldn't be putting so much effort into his training and all the exercise.

- _____ training and all the exercise.
- 8 Say the paramedics had arrived five minutes later, would they still have been able to save the child's life?
_____ the child's life?
- 9 If the survey had proven that the product has gone out of favour with the target group, would you have discontinued its production altogether?
_____ its production altogether?
- 10 Let's say the research team had unlimited resources at their disposal, would they be able to make the machine work in about a year or so?
_____ in about a year or so?

Exercise 254: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 Supposing the angle had been five more degrees to the left, the shooter wouldn't have missed the target. **provided**
The shooter _____ .
- 2 The Slovak athletes would take part in the competition supposing it took place in Europe. **if**
The Slovak athletes _____ .
- 3 Supposing the yacht hadn't sunk so fast, the sailors might have survived. **on condition**
_____ might have survived.
- 4 Supposing the director had lied to us, we've got enough reason to have him replaced. **unless**
_____ to have him replaced.
- 5 Some of the company's assets will have to be auctioned in a month or two supposing the owner sees no other way to keep the project going. **should**
_____ in a month or two.
- 6 Supposing the lights had gone out at midnight, the poker party would have come to a quick end. **say**
_____ to a quick end.
- 7 The energy consumption of the plant will go up supposing it opens a new section. **if**
The energy consumption _____ .
- 8 The printer might be a bit more difficult to operate supposing it's the latest model. **provided**
The printer _____ .
- 9 Sarah's boyfriend might be able to come to the party on Sunday supposing he's in town. **if**
Sarah's boyfriend _____ .
- 10 Supposing the sensei had trained the boys better, they wouldn't be feeling so powerless now. **if**
The boys wouldn't _____ .

Exercise 255: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Predpokladajme, že farmárka by neprišla o polovicu úrody, bola by potom mohla splatiť svoje dlhy?
2 Elektrikára by elektrický prúd nebol zabil za predpokladu, že by mu bol povedal, že elektrina bola ešte stále zapnutá. 3 Dajme tomu, že v kvíze sú dve správne odpovede, čo potom urobíme? 4 Predpokladajme, že majster v karate v noci narazí na problémovú osobu, potom ju zbije tak, že na to do konca života nezabudne. 5 Predpokladajme, že tvoja nehnuteľnosť má hodnotu dva milióny dolárov. Potom by si bol hlupák, ak by si ju predal za 1,5 milióna. 6 Dajme tomu, že ťa na ulici osloví cudzinec a poprosí ťa o pár eur, dáš mu ich? 7 Predpokladajme, že Váš syn by bol posledným mužom na svete. Aj napriek tomu by som nechcela, aby mi robil spoločnosť. 8 Riaditeľka by predala svoje staré auto za predpokladu, že by si mohla dovoliť nové. 9 Dajme tomu, že by si bol prišiel o všetky peniaze na burze. Ako by si bol tieto správy oznámil svojej rodine? 10 Nuž, moja neter by mu nepomohla, ak by ju požiadal o pomoc. 11 Za predpokladu, že by sa spojenci obrátili proti nám, budeme sa brániť alebo ustúpime? 12 Dajme tomu, že by sa stal požiarnikom v malom mestečku, to si skutočne myslíš, že by si dokázal zarobiť na živobytie len hasením ohňov? 13 Môžeme si zahrať privátny zápas, samozrejme za predpokladu, že v miestnosti vtedy nebudú žiadni ďalší hráči. 14 Ak by mala moja mama lepšie platenú prácu na plný úväzok, nemusela by trikrát do týždňa po nociach brigádovať. 15 Predpokladajme, že bohatá krajina požiadala chudobnú krajinu, aby jej centrálnej banke požičala obrovské množstvo peňazí, aby si jej obyvatelia mohli udržať svoju vysokú životnú úroveň, súhlasila by chudobná krajina s takouto pôžičkou?

5 CORRELATIVE SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Correlative subordinating conjunctions (aka *correlatives*) are pairs of words or phrases which co-occur in double constructions to express a wide variety of meanings. They always consist of two units, the first of which is termed *the endorsing item* and the second *subordinator*.

The term *correlative* suggests that the two pairs of the conjunctions work together (ie *co-*) to carry equal weight in a sentence (ie *relate*). As for their scope, correlative subordinating conjunctions may join words, phrases, and even clauses alike.

Unlike their correlative coordinating counterparts, correlative subordinating conjunctions are higher in both number and the meanings expressed.

In many ways, however, correlative subordinating conjunctions are more similar to correlative coordinating conjunctions than subordinating conjunctions proper as the sentence fragments they link are fairly equal in sentence weight.

5.1 As . . . so

The subordinating conjunction *as ... so* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction shows that **two actions or events are closely interconnected or interdependent**, often pointing out that there is a cause-and-effect relationship between them (Meaning: *in the same manner as, for the same reason as*).
 - *As consumption is on the rise, so are retail prices of tablet computers.*
Nakoľko stúpa odbyt, stúpajú aj maloobchodné ceny tabletov.
 - *As a lot of people have been moving to cities and towns lately, so have villages and small towns been turning into ghost towns still inhabited by the aged only.*
Čím viac ľudí sa v poslednom čase sťahuje do veľkomiest a miest, tým viac sa dediny a malé mestečká menia na mestá duchov, v ktorých bývajú už len starí ľudia.

Language Note 1:

The conjunction mostly occurs in formal registers. The *as ... so* constructions are often considered archaic these days.

Language Note 2:

The conjunction is usually used in the set phrase **just as ... so (too)** where *too* is an optional element. However, constructions including *too* are far more common than the phrases which drop the adverb.

- **Just as a healthy body needs regular exercise, so (too) the brain needs regular stimulation.**
Rovnako ako si zdravé telo vyžaduje pravidelné cvičenie, aj mozog potrebuje pravidelnú stimuláciu.
- **Just as famous celebrities go to celebrations and parties with their friends, so (too) ordinary people like to get out and enjoy themselves.**
Rovnako ako celebrity chodia s priateľmi na oslavy a večierky, aj bežní ľudia radi chodievajú von a zabávajú sa.

Exercise 256: Insert the conjunction *as ... so* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 A man needs a woman's love, a woman needs a man's love. 2 The quality of goods drops, the buyers' willingness to purchase such products decreases. 3 The mayor has lost all his friends, the president is about to lose his supporters. 4 Interest rates fall, do the banks' profits. 5 The pupils' attention faded, did the teachers' resilience. 6 The witnesses could not identify the arsonist, the judge could not send the defendant to prison. 7 The alien had to leave for his home planet, the officers had to

go their separate ways. 8 You sow, shall you reap. 9 Most of John's friends have moved to Italy, his sister has just decided to relocate there. 10 The surgeon failed to save the man's life, the hospital failed to notify his family. 11 The entrepreneur did not meet his end of the bargain, the Chinese manufacturer did not deliver the goods. 12 The workers do not get paid much, they don't work very hard. 13 The French like their wine, the Germans like their beer. 14 The British love soccer, Americans love baseball. 15 True patriots hate traitors, traitors hate patriots for actually hating them.

Exercise 257: Rewrite the sentences from Exercise 256 using the construction *just as ... so (too)*.

1 A man needs a woman's love, a woman needs a man's love. 2 The quality of goods drops, the buyers' willingness to purchase such products decreases. 3 The mayor has lost all his friends, the president is about to lose his supporters. 4 Interest rates fall, do the banks' profits. 5 The pupils' attention faded, did the teachers' resilience. 6 The witnesses could not identify the arsonist, the judge could not send the defendant to prison. 7 The alien had to leave for his home planet, the officers had to go their separate ways. 8 You sow, shall you reap. 9 Most of John's friends have moved to Italy, his sister has just decided to relocate there. 10 The surgeon failed to save the man's life, the hospital failed to notify his family. 11 The entrepreneur did not meet his end of the bargain, the Chinese manufacturer did not deliver the goods. 12 The workers do not get paid much, they don't work very hard. 13 The French like their wine, the Germans like their beer. 14 The British love soccer, Americans love baseball. 15 True patriots hate traitors, traitors hate patriots for actually hating them.

Exercise 258: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *just as ... so (too)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Mike learnt to speak Spanish in less than a year. In the same way, he can master French.

_____ master French.

2 The CFO doesn't know anything about marketing. The marketing manager doesn't know anything about finances.

_____ about finances.

3 The attorney general has not prepared the documents yet. Likewise, the investigator has not finished his work yet.

_____ his work yet.

4 The shop assistant doesn't earn a high salary. In the same way, the shop owner does not have high profits.

_____ have high profits.

5 You can help me the same way you helped Freda.

_____ help me.

6 Your eyes need rest to recuperate. Your brain needs worthy stimuli that challenge your common sense.

_____ common sense.

7 You should charge your smartphone every day. Similarly, you ought to clear its cache regularly.
_____ regularly.

8 Dave's brother has to go to school on a daily basis. Likewise, your parents have to go to work every day.
_____ every day.

9 A pianist practises the piano all the time. In the same way, a violinist needs to practise the violin on a daily basis.
_____ on a daily basis.

10 The house burnt down. Your place burnt down too, Charlie.
_____, Charlie.

Exercise 259: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Rovnako ako Rimania, boli aj Gréci známi pre znamenitú kultúru. 2 Tak ako si niektorí herci nepamätali svoj text, si ani hlavná herečka všetko nenacvičila. 3 Rovnako ako mi predali byt bez môjho súhlasu, tak aj garáž mi zbúrali bez toho, aby som o tom čokoľvek vedel. 4 Rovnako, ako turisti nevedeli rozluštiť mapu, ani sprievodca nevedel pochopiť, prečo títo dobrodruhovia z veľkomesta chceli ísť na takú nebezpečnú túru. 5 Ako auto dostalo šmyk a narazilo do stromu, začal horieť aj motor. 6 Podobne ako sa Jane pokazil v pondelok mobil, mala aj problémy s tabletom. 7 Rovnako ako architekt dokončil plány, boli aj stavbári pripravení na polozenie základov. 8 Rovnako ako vinohrad nedokáže zachrániť farmu, ani farmári nedokážu zozbierať toľko peňazí, aby splatili svoje dlhy. 9 Ako dlh stúpaj a stúpaj, tak aj veritelia boli čím ďalej netrpezlivejší. 10 Ako sa bývalý angličtinár prestal zaujímať o ľudí okolo seba, tak si aj uvedomil, aké nezmyselné bolo hľadanie skutočnej lásky.

5.2 As ... as

The subordinating conjunction **as ... as** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction is used to **form comparisons**, and thus to refer to the degree or extent of something (Synonym: *so ... as*). Broadly speaking, the utterance produced ranks as a comparison on the positive, ie equal level.
 - The car manufacturer sells as many cars today as he did ten years ago.*
Výrobca automobilov predáva v súčasnosti toľko áut, ako pred desiatimi rokmi.
 - The new PA cannot type as fast as her retired predecessor.*
Nová osobná asistentka nevie písať na počítači tak rýchlo ako jej predchodkyňa, ktorá je už v dôchodku.

Exercise 260: Insert the conjunction *as ... as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The cuckoo clock does not work reliably these days it used to ten years ago. 2 The Spanish professor publishes many papers nowadays when he started doing the job. 3 My grandparents still come to visit us in town often they used to. 4 The meadow is not sunny it once was. 5 The local tattoo artist did not have many customers when he started he's got today. 6 The barn's not nearly modern and fashionable the painter wants it to be. 7 Much I'd love to bust the crooked guy, there's not enough evidence to do

so. 8 There were few bystanders around church-goers at church on a Friday evening. 9 The fire is not fierce you wanted us to believe. 10 Not much work gets done around here some twenty years ago. 11 Hard the students tried, they still could not pass the final exam. 12 Little the GP knew about English, her daughter knew still less. 13 The Chinese minister doesn't have reliable contacts his Japanese colleague. 14 Much he would like to have helped us, the young gentleman had his hands tied. 15 The French professor taught the students much stuff was possible within such short period of time as two months.

Exercise 261: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *as ... as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The streets are not so dangerous during the day as during the night.

The streets _____.

2 The butcher tried hard to make his business a success, but he failed in the end.

_____ in the end.

3 The old school bus used to look better than it does now.

The old school bus _____.

4 The council members are not so generous a folks as their predecessors.

The council members _____.

5 Beware for the young teacher is far more impatient than her older colleague.

Beware _____.

6 The dentist gives all the patients black looks all the time. Never ever changes with him, never.

The dentist _____.

7 The elderly translation expert does not translate documents so precisely as she used to.

The elderly translation expert _____.

8 The new calculation does not seem so detailed as the first model we have had a look at.

The new calculation _____.

9 Drivers used to drive a bit slower in the old days then they do nowadays.

Drivers _____.

10 The meals your wife cooks contained less spice when I came to see you last than today.

The meals _____.

Exercise 262: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 As painstaking as studying kanji may seem to you right now, you'll find there's no better feeling than actually mastering that difficult script.

_____ **although** mastering that difficult script.

- 2 As silly as the plan was, it worked out just all right. **however**
 _____ just all right.
- 3 My junior students were a total disappointment as they did not study nearly as hard as they used to when I had them in their freshman classes. **than**
 My junior students _____ .
- 4 The evenings in Toronto are getting as cold as the ones in Montreal. **so ... as**
 The evenings _____ .
- 5 As sweet as the girl looks, she's as thick as a short plank. **even though**
 _____ as a short plank.
- 6 The speaker tried to speak as loudly as he could, but we still couldn't hear her. **very**
 The speaker _____ .
- 7 The guests wouldn't eat from those plates as clean as they were. **though**
 The guests _____ .
- 8 As slowly as the major spoke, the recruits still couldn't figure out what he was saying. **yet**
 _____ what he was saying.
- 9 The fleet was being assembled as fast as possible. **extremely**
 The fleet _____ .
- 10 The miners don't work as carefully now as they did last month. **than**
 The miners _____ .

Exercise 263: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

- 1 Svah nie je až taký šmykľavý, ako mohol byť, ak by bolo celú noc snežilo. 2 Nech sa kamarát snažil ako chcel, na horu vyliezť nedokázal. 3 Sused, tá krava je tak dobrá, ako ktorákoľvek iná. 4 Manažér tvrdí, že pozná toľko ľudí, ako samotný prezident. 5 Pokým žiješ pod mojou strechou, budeš žiť podľa mojich pravidiel, mladá dáma. 6 Aj keď bolo sklamanie veľké, deti to rozchodia. 7 Hoci by sme ti radi pomohli s projektom, ty si zaň zodpovedný, miláčik. 8 Nech už je tvoj úsmev sebe krajší, nič nemení na mojom názore o tebe. 9 Mladý inštruktor lyžovania trávi na hore toľko času, ako jeho otec v kancelárii. 10 Hoci bola voda ľadová, deti si chceli ísť zaplávať okamžite. 11 Napriek tomu, že strešný byt je priestranný a úžasný, párik si ho nemôže dovoliť. 12 Nech je vyjednávač prešibaný ako chce, pána Dawsona sa mu oklamať nepodarí. 13 Piráti nezajmú španielsku loď, nech sa plavia sebe rýchlejšie. 14 Hoci bol pustovník poriadne hladný, pokušeniu sa mu podarilo odolať. 15 Náš syn nám zavolá tak často, ako sa mu len dá.

5.3 So ... as

The subordinating conjunction *so ... as* is used in the following way:

1 The conjunction is used to **form comparisons**, and thus to refer to the degree or extent of something (Synonym: *as ... as*). Broadly speaking, the utterance produced ranks as a comparison on the positive, ie equal, level.

- *The net profit is **so** high this year **as** it was laster year.*
*Čistý zisk je v tomto roku **rovnako** vysoký, **ako** aj v minulom roku.*
- *The teachers at my university have remained **so** strict and hard-working **as** I remember them from my school days.*
*Učiteľia z mojej univerzity sú stále **takí** prísni a usilovní, **ako** si ich pamätám z mojich čias.*

Language Note:

Unlike *as ... as*, the conjunction *so ... as* ist mostly used with a preceding negative, usually *not*, to indicate that a person or thing exhibits less of a quality than the person or thing compared to.

- *The annual meeting did **not** last **so** long **as** we had expected.*
*Výročná schôdza netrvala **tak** dlho, **ako** sme očakávali.*
- *The young accountant's skills are **not so** good **as** the CFO had hoped they were.*
*Zručnosti mladého účtovníka nie sú až **také** dobré, **ako** finančný riaditeľ dúfal, že budú.*

Exercise 264: Insert the conjunction *so ... as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The bargains this year are not great they were last year. 2 The surfer hasn't been quick this time he was last week. 3 The local boat races are boring always. 4 The dressmaker does not make much money these days he used to some ten years ago. 5 The bounty hunter does not fight violently or aggressively she used to. 6 The carrots are not tasty and juicy they once was. 7 He is not dumb and naïve an accountant his predecessors. 8 The meadow doesn't seem green it was when I was a kid. 9 The soldier's pain was not exruciating that he couldn't withstand it. 10 The MASH choppers are not safe and comfortable the regular thing. 11 The guide's wife's not smart and intelligent her husband. 12 The detective doesn't seem to be gullible and thick his brother. 13 My journey to work takes long a trip to San Francisco. 14 The harbour looks deserted today a cinema on a Monday morning. 15 The bank robbers won't reveal your secret long they live.

Exercise 265: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *so ... as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The nights are not as cold and chilly as they once were.

The nights _____.

2 It's much harder to catch a butterfly than the local criminals.

The local criminals _____.

3 Your nephew is more big-headed than my little sister.

My little sister _____.

4 This fish is really valuable in Japan. You could sell it for \$ 200 easily there.

This is _____.

- 5 The old planes are not as comfortable and spacious as the new ones, I guess.
I guess the old planes _____ .
- 6 The bed doesn't cost as much as the sofa, does it?
The bed _____ ?
- 7 Clara's French doesn't seem to be better than her Spanish, does it?
Clara's Spanish _____ ?
- 8 Actually, Jack's new stereo cost more money than his furniture.
Actually, Jack's furniture _____ .
- 9 My little brother refused to fork out as much money for a concert ticket as he earns in a whole week.
My little brother _____ .
- 10 I feel less comfortable sitting in that big chair than on this bar stool.
I don't feel _____ .

Exercise 266: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 This is not so good an advertising campaign as to attract the attention of the masses. **as ... as**
This advertising campaign _____ .
- 2 There were not so many people at the hospital opening as was originally expected. **than**
There were _____ .
- 3 The supervisor does not speak so highly of Chuck as he used to when he joined the company. **as ... as**
The supervisor _____ .
- 4 Nowadays children can't read so well and accurately as we could when we were their age. **than**
Nowadays _____ .
- 5 I suppose there are not so many visitors to the gallery as there were when it first opened. **as ... as**
I suppose there are _____ .
- 6 The author's short stories do not strike me as being so rich in character descriptions as they were when he started writing. **as ... as**
The author's short stories _____ .
- 7 The plot of your last novel was not so captivating as in your previous stories. **less**
The plot _____ .
- 8 Gabriela's former German teacher has become so indifferent to other people's feelings and needs as to be completely oblivious to their sorrows and dreams. **as ... as**
Gabriela's former German teacher _____ .
- 9 The old SUV is not as fast as the new convertible. **faster**
The _____ .

10 Gerry is not so fluent in Chinese as in Japanese.

more

Gerry _____

Exercise 267: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Prenajímateľ iste nepozná toľko ľudí, ako nám tvrdí. 2 Seriál sa musel tak pohoršiť, že prišiel takmer o polovicu divákov, a to len počas jedného mesiaca. 3 Vodovodné potrubie muselo byť také pokazené, že prasklo bez najmenšieho dôvodu. 4 Mladí ľudia sú často tak idealistickí, že vyznievajú takmer nereálne. 5 Nikdy som sa nestretol s tak pomstychtivým a zatrpknutým mužom, akým je náš generálny riaditeľ. 6 Sára, myslím si, že tam môže byť len toľko ľudí, koľko si pozvala. 7 Povedal by som, že tvoj nový počítač je taký dobrý, aký len v súčasnosti môže byť. 8 Záverečná práca neznie až tak perfektne, ako nám ju študent vykreslil. 9 Deti by nemali dostávať toľko cukríkov, koľko len chcú. 10 Bytová výstavba nie je v súčasnosti ani zďaleka taká pomalá, ako bola v minulosti. 11 Nebol tak triezvy, aby mohol odšoférovať domov sám. 12 Nikdy nebola taká dobrosrdečná zamestnávateľka, aby dala svojim zamestnancom jeden či dva dni dovolenky navyše. 13 Mladá manažérka nie je taká tvrdohlavá, aby si neuvedomila a nepriznala vlastné chyby. 14 Víťazstvo bolo také ohromujúce, že ho vysielali na všetkých kanáloch. 15 Podujatie nebolo až také veľkolepé, aby si ho mnohí uchovali v pamäti.

5.4 Such . . . as

The subordinating conjunction *such ... as* is used in the following way:

- The conjunction indicates that **a quality is not sufficient to serve a particular purpose**.
 - Such impulsive behaviour as your sister's is most definitely not characteristic of a true lady. Také impulzívne správanie, aké má Vaša sestra, rozhodne nie je typické pre skutočnú dámu.*
 - The mayor could never understand how such stupid and ignorant people as the town council members managed to get elected twice in a row. Primátor nikdy nedokázal pochopiť, ako sa takým hlúpym a neotesaným ľudom, ako sú členovia mestskej rady, podarilo dostať do mestskej rady dvakrát po sebe.*

Language Note:

Nowadays, the conjunction is mostly used in formal registers only.

Exercise 268: Insert the conjunction *such ... as* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The gardener has never seen a high hedge mine. 2 A useless thingy this tiny hammer has not been invented yet. 3 The former headmaster is well-known for erratic behaviour she's just described. 4 This was the first time the captain had faced an overwhelming enemy the pirate king. 5 Tormented people Mr and Mrs Jordan have not asked for the psychologist's help yet. 6 A nasty cold Taki has ought to be cured by a lot of hot fluids and a few days of good old rest. 7 I can't figure out how guillible people your nephews could ever make so much money. 8 Changes the coach made last week are quite common before an important match. 9 The bus drivers have never seen a long congestion the one they're stuck in right now before. 10 Kate's parents are lovely people to fulfil their daughter's every wish. 11 Bad experience we made on our last trip to Korea are best forgotten at once. 12 The HR staff has never spoken to a stupid person the last applicant before. 13 Your father will give you a good

beating you deserve. 14 Cool weather this is quite untypical of this season, actually. 15 You should never have submitted an erroneous report this to your supervisor, Carol.

Exercise 269: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *such ... as* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The advisor has little knowledge of these matters. Thus, he can't help us.

The advisor _____.

2 The COO earns a huge amount of money. Common people earn far less than she does.

Common people _____.

3 The company does a lot of dubious business which is hardly typical of our industry.

_____ typical of our industry.

4 The opera singer has such a sonorous voice that she might well be one of the best singers in our country.

_____ in our country.

5 Ms Rodrigues teaches such attentive students that you might consider them all quite exceptional.

_____ all quite exceptional.

6 This is the first time the zoologist has ever seen such a small insect. This bug is really tiny.

This is the first time _____.

7 The staff have been experiencing slow performance lately. It cannot be caused by a minor glitch in the system though, considering its magnitude.

_____ though, considering its magnitude.

8 Heavy suitcases such as the ones owned by Mr Taylor are best carried on one of those trolleys of yours.

_____ on one of those trolleys of yours.

9 If you are a heavy smoker such as your brother, you may well suffer from loads of smoking-related diseases later on in your life.

_____ smoking-related diseases later on in life.

10 Working conditions as horrible as these are hardly worth of somebody who's spent their whole life delivering high quality classes at university.

_____ high quality classes at university.

Exercise 270: Check the sentences are state whether they are grammatically correct.

1 Such repulsive comments are the ones made by our oldest party member, should best be forgotten. 2

Such a nasty cough as you've got should be treated by a professional, really. 3 Such severe weather conditions as we've seen in the past few weeks may become commonplace in our region in the winter.

4 Such candid opinions are Lucy's are seldom seen in young people these days. 5 Such a grumpy old man as my neighbour is found nowhere else in the world. 6 The shop owner has never had such huge

problems as these. 7 Such a hard shell as this is not easily cracked. 8 Such small ants as the ones you can see now are only found in Africa. 9 Such simple, yet effective techniques are our company's using to produce the new screens are unique in the whole world. 10 Such a gorgeous woman as my former student has not walked the face of the earth before. 11 Such tasty food as this is served nowhere else in our city. 12 Such a beautiful casket as Mr Jackson's has not been made yet. 13 Such a black look as he has just given me could hardly be considered friendly. 14 Such a monumental disaster as the campaign is hardly worth talking about. 15 Such a hip club as Amy's is definitely worth visiting really often.

Exercise 271: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Nikdy nenájdete také duchovné miesto, akým je tento chrám. 2 Odvážlivec nikdy nečelil takej veľkej výzve, akou je zoskok z dvestopodlažnej budovy. 3 Také prestížne ocenenia, ako sú tieto, sa len zriedka udeľujú čerstvým nováčikom. 4 Taký ohľaduplný človek, akým je náš účtovník, by mal byť vzorom pre našich tínedžerov. 5 Taká úžasná oslava, akú si usporiadal minulý týždeň, nie je ani zďaleka také bežná, ako by si si mohol myslieť. 6 Hračku vyrobili tak, že sa rozpadne hneď, ako sa jej dotkneš. 7 Takú ťažkú úlohu, akou je prepustenie šesto zamestnancov pred Vianocami, nie je ľahké zvládnuť. 8 Ak chcete zlomiť tak dobre vyškoleného agenta, akým je pán X, sa poriadne narobíte. 9 Také super správy, aké sú tie Vaše, som nepočul už dlho. 10 Vieš, že nie je možné vyprať pokrývky tak, aby boli také biele, ako tie tvojej manželky. 11 Taká skorumpovaná vláda, ako tá naša, si zaslúži zvrhnúť. 12 Ak taký hnusný vírus, akým je *I love you* prenikne do kernelu tvojho počítača, je dosť možné, že na vždy stratíš všetky údaje. 13 Taká dramatická zmena v správaní, akú sme v poslednom čase zbadali na Vašom synovi, by sa mala preskúmať. 14 Záhradník by mal vedieť niečo urobiť s tou škaredou buriňou, ktorá nám rastie v záhrade za domom. 15 Katka, také mizerná kopírka, akú si práve kúpila, ani zďaleka nestojí za tie peniaze.

5.5 So ... that

The subordinating conjunction *so ... (that)* is used in the following way:

- The conjunction **emphasises a fact, a quality in a person or thing by stating its result**. Thus, a cause-and-effect relationship may be observed between the fact and the subsequent consequence.
 - The cake was so hard (that) none of us could eat it.*
Koláč bol taký tvrdý, že ho nikto z nás nemohol zjesť.
 - The roads are so slippery (that) drivers are being warned to stay away from highways if possible.*
Cesty sú také šmyklavé, že sa šoférom odporúča, aby sa vyhli diaľniciam, ak môžu.

Exercise 272: Insert the conjunction *so ... that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The matter at hand is complicated we may have a lot of difficulty figuring out how to solve it. 2 There were many people at the club last night the investigators may never find the killer. 3 The team have little information about the new airborne virus they cannot find its origin. 4 Just by looking through the report, I can see many typos I'd feel ashamed to have handed it to the manager. 5 The entrepreneur speaks little French she can't make herself understood in France at all. 6 The plane was

overloaded it couldn't take off. 7 Cat has much work she can't join us for the movie tonight. 8 The patients seems sick they should be quarantined for sure. 9 The gold watch is hot it's almost smoking. 10 The software solution is effective there's no reason to search for a different program. 11 The tree is high you'd be almost 40 metres above the ground if you climbed to the top. 12 The young police officers are well trained they can deal with anything. 13 The old man's pain is deep and excruciating he can't have an hour's shut-eye without waking up bathed in sweat. 14 The crimes the general has committed are grave and monstrous he wouldn't be allowed out on bail at all. 15 Delilah is incredible Pete can't take his eyes off her.

Exercise 273: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *so ... that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 It's really cold today. You could freeze your butt off if you stayed out for too long.

It's _____ .

2 The lawyer's work is very poor indeed. He should be sacked soon.

The lawyer's work _____ .

3 The paper pusher has loads of work. He definitely needs somebody to help him.

The paper pusher _____ .

4 The air is toxic. If you breathe it in, you'll die instantly.

The air _____ .

5 The news is too old. You can't base your decisions on it anymore.

The news _____ .

6 The chef can cook really well. He might come first if he entered the competition.

The chef _____ .

7 The laundry is still wet. You can't wear it today, Carol.

The laundry _____ .

8 My uncle speaks very little Spanish. He wouldn't be able to order a coke if he had to do so in Spanish.

My uncle _____ .

9 The sky has turned very dark indeed. I almost thought a blizzard was approaching.

The sky _____ .

10 The magician's performance was awesome. The children want to go again tomorrow.

The magician's performance _____ .

11 The chair is such a big-headed guy that he won't let anyone give him any advice whatsoever.

The chair _____ .

Exercise 274: Check the sentences and state whether they are grammatically correct.

1 The teacher speaks so loudly you can still hear her clearly four classes down the corridor. 2 The GP has so nasty a rash he had to stay at home for a few days. 3 The university is so well known it's got no problems attracting the brightest students from all over the world. 4 The farmer is so pig-headed most of her friends don't want to talk to her anymore. 5 The research team have so much work they don't have any time for your puzzles, Craig. 6 The pop singer is so popular her concerts are always sold out. 7 The tram was so packed the pupils had to wait for another one. 8 The films are so boring nowadays most people don't even bother going to the cinema anymore. 9 Ms Smith is so strict a teacher she's got the nickname 'the killer.' 10 The seats in the office are so comfortable visitors don't want to leave. 11 The outbreak was so sudden and unexpected nobody could have mastered the crisis faster than Colonel Brakes. 12 Your sister's got so many issues she doesn't know what to do anymore. 13 The bus drivers in our city are so careful parents don't need to worry about their children's safety while on the way to school at all. 14 The call center agent has so few positive features he doesn't have any friends at all. 15 The products are so awesome they'd sell without a proper advertising campaign too.

Exercise 275: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Program musí spracovať toľko údajov, že počítač bude rozhodne pracovať pomaly. 2 Výskumníci nemajú k dispozícii toľko zdrojov, aby nimi mohli plyvať na čomkoľvek, čo sa im zapáči. 3 Maliar nemaľuje tak dobre, aby sa jedného dňa mohol stať slávnym. 4 Analytik tvrdí, že má toľko skvelých nápadov, že by mohol stráviť aj celý deň ich spisovaním. 5 Laboratórium prišlo o tak veľa dobrých zamestnancov, že vedúci tímu bude mať problémy udržať si vysoký štandard práce. 6 Prieskum bol taký chaotický, že jeho výsledky vôbec nie sú hodnoverné. 7 Ten kábel je taký dlhý, že bude trvať aspoň dve hodiny, kým zistíme, v čom je problém. 8 Uchádzač je taký talentovaný, že by sme ho mohli hodiť do studenej vody a on by začal plávať ako ryba. 9 Masér čaká na túto príležitosť už tak dlho, že urobí čokoľvek, aby podujatie nezmeškal. 10 Larry, táto záležitosť je taká komplikovaná, že potrebujeme viac času, aby sme zistili podrobnosti. 11 Si taký tvrdohlavý, že ma takmer bolí, keď si pomyslím, že si môj vlastný syn. 12 Jachta bola taká stará, že sa dala použiť už len na plávanie okolo pobrežia. 13 Súťažiaci už urobil toľko chýb, že už nemôže vyhrať prvú cenu. 14 Martinova dcéra má také šťastie, že ani ona samotná nevie uveriť tomu, čo sa jej prihodilo. 15 V dnešnej dobe sa nájde toľko úžerníkov, že si musíš dávať pozor kdekoľvek sa len pohneš, zlatičko.

5.6 Such . . . that

The subordinating conjunction **such ... that** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction **emphasises a fact, a quality in a person or thing by stating its result**. Thus, a cause-and-effect relationship may be observed between the fact and the subsequent consequence.
 - *It was **such** bad weather (**that**) no ships could set sail that week at all.*
*Počasie bolo **take** zlé, **že** vôbec žiadna loď v ten týždeň nemohla vyplávať.*
 - *Lilly's got **such** a charming smile (**that**) her English teacher can't resist making her laugh.*
*Lívinôčka sa usmieva tak okúzľujúco, **že** jej angličtinár nedokáže odolať a rozosmieva ju.*

Exercise 276: Insert the conjunction *such ... that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Helen's students have insolent behaviour I'd expel them from school right away. 2 This will be a terrible hurricane most people have bought supplies to last them for more than a week. 3 Your sister's a busybody you can't say anything in front of her or she'll tell every-body. 4 I'm afraid my students used to be arrogant, ill-mannered and thick guys I felt sick when around them. 5 The Dutch professor has high standards hardly anyone can measure up to them at all. 6 They are famous songs anybody knows the lyrics. 7 The whole project documentation is a mess is able to figure out when the final phase was supposed to start. 8 Jim used to be a sickly child barely anyone believed he'd live long enough to celebrate his 18th birthday. 9 The tablet you bought at the market two months ago is a piece of garbage you can't get any work done on it at all. 10 Mr Rotery is an angry man he'd shout at you for no apparent reason at all. 11 Some of the people over there are great artists they might be as famous as Picasso one day. 12 It's a long way the pupils have to walk home from school that the teacher gives them a lift from time to time. 13 There are tall trees in front of our house you won't be able to see the mountains because of them. 14 Schools has become an odious place recently students don't want to go there anymore. 15 Mr Kensington's painting style is characteristic of dark motives you might even feel depressed at times.

Exercise 277: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *such ... that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The accountant is so careless you can always find mistakes in her work.

Clara _____.

2 Kate's brother makes so much money he could pitch in and help us out with the project.

Kate's brother _____.

3 The teacher is so knowledgeable she could easily get a job at a private school or university.

Greta _____.

4 You speak so well and eloquently that you might be mistaken for a professional speaker.

You have _____.

5 The captain flies so well he was awarded a special prize last year.

The captain _____.

6 This ship is so damaged it won't be allowed to sail anymore.

This ship _____.

7 Lucy provokes people a lot, and then she always gets into a heap of trouble.

Lucy _____.

8 David has made so many mistakes as provost that he ought to be sacked soon.

David _____.

9 The new workers are so slow they won't be able to get the job done by Friday.

The new staff _____.

10 The servants behave so strangely that you might want to keep an eye on them.

The servants _____.

Exercise 278: Check the sentences are state whether they are grammatically correct.

1 The new system administrator is such a pain in the butt he will do anything to get promoted. 2 They are such ambitious students you won't be able to hold them back even for a moment. 3 The machines are in such a desolate state it might take months to get them up and running again. 4 The kitchen seems to be in such a great mess everybody will have to help the parents to clean it up. 5 The ship anchored in such straits it may not be able to leave so easily. 6 It was such a dangerous trip the guides refused to take responsibility for the tourists' lives. 7 The soldiers managed to survive such a harsh winter they'll never forget their time in Russia. 8 The dragon has such bloodthirsty offspring nobody can beat them. 9 These are such dangerous times we need to stay alert and watch our step. 10 That was such an easy mission the spies returned home with the information in less than forty-eight hours. 11 This is such an unstable chemical compound it might blow the whole block to smithereens. 12 The research is in such a chaotic state it will not be finished by the end of the year. 13 The lawyer acts in such an arrogant way that you might mistake him for a complete asshole. 14 The business plan is showing such a great promise it must be worth the try. 15 A lot of species live in such a complicated social structure it's very hard to analyse it properly.

Exercise 279: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Je isté, že búrka bude mať také ničivé následky na naše okolie, že sa s touto krízou budeme musieť vysporiadať na národnej úrovni. 2 Riaditeľ vedie nemocnicu s taký šialenými zamestnancami, že ma prekvapuje, že nie sme sťažnosťami zaplavení každý deň. 3 Starostova popularita mizne tak rýchlo, že je možné, že v nadchádzajúcich voľbách nebude mať žiadnu šancu. 4 Firma prosperuje do takej miery, že pravdepodobne bude už čoskoro expandovať na nový trh. 5 Toto auto je tak nespoľahlivé, že by si s ním nemal veľmi jazdiť, lebo sa už čoskoro pokazí. 6 Inštalatéri sa už zaoberali takými hroznými problémami, že by si im tie príbehy ani neuveril. 7 Tlačiarne sa predávajú za tak vysoké ceny, že momentálne za kúpu nestoja. 8 Moja sesternica je taká neúnavná pracantka, že vždy zostáva v práci dlho, dokonca aj v piatky. 9 Študenti sa nikdy nenaučia hovoriť po poľsky tak dobre, že by zvládli aj tie najvyberanejšie oblasti tohto jazyka. 10 Potrubie skorodovalo do takej miery, že inštalatéri budú musieť vymeniť celý systém. 11 Zo Zuzani sa stala tak zábudlivá osoba, že si nič nezapamätá, ak si to nezapíše. 12 Samantina oslava bola takým sklamaním, že sa všetci hostia rozišli ešte pred polnocou. 13 Nové kategórie sú tak chaotické, že zamestnanci neprídu na to, kto je teraz kto. 14 Toto je tak efektívne oddelenie, že všetkým zamestnancom by mali už čoskoro zvýšiť plat. 15 Kanceláriu by mali presťahovať do takých nových priestorov, že väčšina zamestnancov bude cestovať hodinu, kým príde do práce.

5.7 Less ... than

The subordinating conjunction *less ... than* is used in the following way:

1 The conjunction refers to **an amount which is smaller** than the amount of another unit, smaller than before, or smaller than would be expected.

- *The new mobile phone featuring brand new hardware uses **less** power **than** its predecessor. Nový mobil, ktorý má najnovší hardvér spotrebuje **menej** energie **než** jeho predchodca.*
- *Broadly speaking, new cars need **less** petrol **than** older cars. Nové autá potrebujú vo všeobecnosti **menej** benzínu **než** staré autá.*

Exercise 280: Insert the conjunction *less ... than* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The company seems to be making profit two years ago. 2 Would you have thought any of me if I hadn't actually broken into the store? 3 The scout has shown he's got stamina anyone of us. 4 The boys sold orange juice the girls. 5 There will be fighting in our area now ever before. 6 The financial advisor seems to have brains a monkey. 7 You've got time left you might think, Sarah. 8 Mr Callan's associates shouldn't get money his brother-in-law. 9 There's chewing gum in the cupboard now half an hour ago. 10 No doubt there's water in the oasis now some five months ago. 11 Why is there much wine in the bottle there should be? 12 The bartender gave me whiskey last time. 13 The patient has of a fever now she did two days ago. 14 There was free beer at the party the guests had originally expected. 15 The staff are allowed room for error these days they were twenty years ago.

Exercise 281: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *less ... than* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 There's no as much light in the office now as during the summer.

There's _____.

2 Miss Cunnings doesn't speak as much French as she does Spanish.

Miss Cunnings _____.

3 Nowadays students don't work as hard as they used to some ten years ago.

Nowadays students _____.

4 The young actress seems to be a bit more camera-shy than her boyfriend.

The boyfriend _____.

5 Jack's saliva didn't contain as much alcohol as his brother's.

Jack's saliva _____.

6 The researchers are not as optimistic about the funding of their new project as their leader.

The researchers _____.

7 The coach is much more aggressive than the boxer himself.

The boxer _____.

8 The old caravan is not as luxurious as your villa.

The old caravan _____ .

9 The painting doesn't appeal to me as much as the drawings.

The painting _____ .

10 The movie doesn't display as much action as the actor's fans are used to.

The movie _____ .

Exercise 282: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Your department has become less productive than marketing, Kate. **as**

Your department _____ .

2 Tom's son seems to speak Greek less fluently now than when I last met him. **deteriorated**

Tom's _____ .

3 I guess there was less bad blood between the brothers when they were children than now. **get on**

I guess the brothers _____ .

4 There will be less candy for the little ones in the future than they were hoping for. **so**

There _____ .

5 The general's got less guts than the common soldiers he's commanding. **much**

The general _____ .

6 The analysts have made much less of a progress this year than they did last year. **nearly**

The analysts _____ .

7 This debate proved less productive than a women's talk at the hairdresser's. **as**

This debate _____ .

8 There's less commotion in the streets than in the mayor's office. **as**

There's _____ .

9 Clearly, there was less milk in the jar than in the barrel. **more**

Clearly, there _____ .

10 You can smell less smoke coming from the kitchen than from the children's room. **more**

You can smell _____ .

Exercise 283: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Niet pochýb o tom, že v Spojených štátoch je menej problémov než v niektorých afrických krajinách. 2 Zdá sa, že na predmestiach sa vyskytlo menej nepokojov než v centre. 3 Je zrejmé, že tento smartfón využíva menej energie než jeho predchodca. 4 Manažér má na našu prezentáciu menej času, než si myslel, že bude mať. 5 Teroristická bunka je na juhu menej aktívna než na západe. 6 To dievča nie je až taká panna, ako si to jej priateľ o nej myslí. 7 Jednotlivé hodnoty nie sú sú menej dôležité než

celkový výkon. 8 Tvoj brat nie je až taký pesimista, ako som si to o ňom kedysi myslel. 9 V miestnosti bolo menej kyslíka než je priemer pre miestnosť takejto veľkosti. 10 Tí tvoji učitelia nehovoria až tak profesionálne, ako by človek očakával. 11 Cesta do hôr nebola až takou výzvou, ako to od teba vyznelo. 12 Finančný riaditeľ nie je až taký odborník na financie ako jeho nástupca. 13 V káve je menej mlieka než v čaji. 14 Myslím, že v chladničke bolo menej ľadu než v bazéne. 15 Teraz majú akcionári na účtoch menej peňazí než pred tromi dňami.

5.8 More ... than

The subordinating conjunction *more ... than* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction refers to **an amount which is larger** than the amount of another unit, larger than before, or larger than would be expected.
 - *The committee need to gain **more** supporters from the lines of ordinary people **than** this small group of peasants.*
*Výbor si potrebuje získať **viac** priaznivcov z radov obyčajných ľudí, **než** len túto skupinku roľníkov.*
 - *It is **more** fresh water **than** medical supplies that the country needs desperately.*
*Krajina naliehavo potrebuje **viac** pitnej vody **než** zdravotnícke potreby.*

Exercise 284: Insert the conjunction *more ... than* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 It seems there's trouble down at the harbour we thought. 2 The customer support agents have been in contact with our western branch with the southern or eastern ones. 3 Mr Jones has work now he did two weeks ago. 4 The part-time workers have learnt in the time those full-time staff in half a year. 5 Are you sure this task is not vital to be handled by a mere assistant? 6 The chauffeur drives carefully his colleagues. 7 The sheep are independent the shepherd originally thought. 8 The slow performance plays importance in our work any other aspect of computer technology. 9 The old man's leg used to hurt when it was going to rain when the weather was fine. 10 The final chapter of the book proved surprising I thought. 11 The contest won't yield any profit it already has. 12 There's a lot time to be spent on the project you made us believe, Craig. 13 There are benefits to this job you might believe, Mr Anderson. 14 There were guests at the party last weekend we had invited. 15 The situation proved ridiculous any of us thought possible.

Exercise 285: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *more ... than* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The player was credited 1,000 chips. He paid for 500 only, though.

The player _____.

2 There seem to be fewer people waiting in the corridor than outside in the street.

There seem to be _____.

3 Clara doesn't have as high a salary as her sister Trudy.

Clara's sister Trudy _____.

4 We noticed fewer staff coming to work early in the morning than in late afternoons.

- We noticed _____ .
- 5 There are not as many mistakes in John's last essay as in his first one.
There were _____ .
- 6 The accountant's got fewer assignments this month than he did the same time last year.
The accountant _____ .
- 7 There were not as few churchgoers at the casino opening as the priest had originally thought.
There were _____ .
- 8 You may find there are not as many facilities in the countryside as in the capital.
You may find _____ .
- 9 The manager didn't catch as many fish as his superior.
The manager's superior _____ .
- 10 It is my knowledge that there are fewer problems with the hardware than the software we use.
It is my knowledge _____ .

Exercise 286: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 There are more cows than sheep grazing on the hills. **not as**
There are _____ .
- 2 There were more witnesses around last time than during the attempted murder. **fewer**
There were _____ .
- 3 The young scholar has more talent than his sister. **not so**
Jane _____ .
- 4 The analysts have found more advantages than disadvantages to the deal. **fewer**
The analysts _____ .
- 5 Sarah seems to have more freedom at work than most of her colleagues. **less**
Sarah's colleagues _____ .
- 6 There are more places Adrian wants to visit than just Austria and Germany. **other**
Apart from _____ .
- 7 The detective didn't watch more people at the party last night than at the hotel gathering. **many**
The detective _____ .
- 8 Last year's celebration was much more lively and cheerful than Walden's boring get-together. **as**
Walden's get-together _____ .
- 9 Luke doesn't seem to be smarter than his younger brother, does he? **so**

Luke _____, does he?

10 There are way more SUVs on our streets these days than some thirty years ago. **as**

There were _____.

Exercise 287: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Na účet ti denne prúdi viac peňazí, než úspešnému politikovi za mesiac. 2 So šampiónom chcelo bojovať viac zápasníkov, než by si človek pomyslel. 3 Derekova manželka zvykla pracovať dlhšie, keď bola ešte slobodná, než potom čo sa vydala. 4 Tieto dôkazy svedčia o tom, že viacero ľudí než len premiér bralo za ostatné tri mesiace úplatky. 5 Nájdu sa nejaké dôležitejšie veci, než sú vplyv a peniaze? 6 Najnovšie aktualizácie opravujú závažnejšie závady než len jednoduché štylistické problémy. 7 Vláda tvrdí, že v našom regióne bude po voľbách viacero operátorov než teraz. 8 Vojna v Egypte by mohla byť v súčasnosti pre prezidenta nebezpečnejšia než čokoľvek iné. 9 Našli sa aj niektoré naliehavejšie otázky než len klimatické zmeny, o ktorých sa malo diskutovať. 10 Po jedinom týždni výskumu sme mali viac výsledkov, než Vy po celých dvoch mesiacoch. 11 Myslím si, že v oblasti je ukrytých ešte viac bomb, než nám terorista povedal. 12 Život ponúka viac než len prácu, Lukáš. 13 Hovorím viacerými jazykmi, nie len po španielsky. 14 Čaká nás ešte viac prekážok, ktoré musíme zdotlať, než len menšie problémy pri implementácii. 15 Povedali by ste, že má Váš brat viac nepriateľov ako priateľov?

5.9 No sooner than

The subordinating conjunction **no sooner than** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction shows that one action or event occurs **immediately after** another action or event (Synonyms: *the moment that, the instant that, when, after*).
 - No sooner had I signed my contract than the company went bankrupt.**
Sotva som podpísal zmluvu, spoločnosť skrachovala.
 - Our team leader had no sooner completed the research than he was assigned a whole bunch of other tasks.**
Akonáhle náš vedúci tímu dokončil výskum, dali mu robiť množstvo rôznych iných úloh.

Language Note 1:

The conjunction is usually used in the initial position in a sentence to put emphasis on the immediacy of the two actions or events talked about. Being a semi-negative (ie non-assertive) element, it requires the use of inversion, ie that the auxiliary verb be used before the subject even though the utterance produced is a statement, not a question.

- No sooner had I opened the window than I realised it was snowing heavily.**
V momente, keď som otvoril okno, som zistil, že husto sneží.
- No sooner had the deal been made than the CEO embezzled the funds and fled the country.**
Akonáhle bola dohoda uzatvorená, generálny riaditeľ spreneveril finančné prostriedky a ušiel z krajiny.

To make clear which action or event happened first, perfect tenses are commonly used in the *no-sooner*-structure showing that first I opened the window and it was only then that I realised it was snowing, first the deal was signed and it was only afterwards that the CEO embezzled the funds and fled the country (see examples above).

The use of perfect tenses is particularly common in British English.

Language Note 2:

In modern English, the conjunction is mostly used in rather official registers, especially in the written discourse. It is, however, seldom used in speech, in particular in casual conversations. It is, by far, most readily encountered in literary texts.

Exercise 288: Insert the conjunction *no sooner than* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Had the PA walked back in the office the phone started ringing. 2 Had the mechanic found a new job the garage he was working for went bankrupt. 3 Had John's sister fled the country two FBI agents came looking for her. 4 Had the door got stuck the bank robbers were trying to get away. 5 Had the traffic warden finished the ticket the car owner ran to him pleading for mercy. 6 Had the storm passed the sun rose again. 7 Had the security guard flushed the toilet he heard the alarm. 8 Had the racing driver hurt his leg his mates got burned in a car accident on the track. 9 Had the rock star sung his first great gig he was offered more money for his work. 10 Had I seen the stop sign the ambulance suddenly braked in front of us. 11 Had the shoe been stolen I remembered my wife hid some money in it. 12 Had the printer broken down the manager needed to print his presentation for the CFO. 13 Had the pickpocket been nabbed his accomplice got killed in a shooting. 14 Had the city slickers left the ranch a twister came rolling on the whole place. 15 Had Bradley's motorbike been stolen he saved up enough to get himself a new one.

Exercise 289: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *no sooner than* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 First, Mr Mitchell fixed the leaks in the roof. Second, he renovated the bathroom.

No sooner _____.

2 At first the gangsters hid the money away, and then they dealt with the informant.

No sooner _____.

3 My dad bought the tickets. Afterwards, he got us some cool caps.

No sooner _____.

4 First of all, the private investigator got paid. Subsequently, he started investigating the crime.

No sooner _____.

5 The wealthy oil tycoon invested loads of money into a hardware manufacturer which went bankrupt three months later.

No sooner _____.

6 First, the prince lost his throne to a bastard. Second, he got banished from the kingdom.

No sooner _____.

7 I managed to save my thesis just in time before the whole system crashed.

No sooner _____.

8 It was touch and go as to whether or not the Turkish tourists would catch the plane, but they made it in the end.

No sooner _____.

9 First, the tunnel was closed to all vehicles and then there was an accident on the bridge.

No sooner _____.

10 The researchers completed the study just shortly before they published it.

No sooner _____.

Exercise 290: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 No sooner had the agreement been signed than one of the contracting parties learnt about the dubious practises of his new associates. **only after**

It was _____.

2 No sooner had the gunman fired the first shot than the guards reached for their guns. **before**

The gunman _____.

3 No sooner had my brother taken up Japanese than he met a gorgeous Japanese girl. **when**

My brother _____.

4 No sooner had the gas exploded than the miners started running out of the mine. **the moment**

_____ out of the mine.

5 No sooner had Jack lost a fortune on horse races than his wife got fired. **after**

_____ got fired.

6 No sooner had the boys started mowing the lawn than it started raining heavily. **first**

_____ started raining heavily.

7 No sooner had the young woman recognised her sister's murderer than she herself became his next victim. **only to**

The young woman _____.

8 No sooner had the sky cleared than the plane took off. **only after**

_____ sky cleared.

9 No sooner had the rocket been launched than the professor found a mistake in his calculation. **before**

The rocket _____.

10 No sooner had the shop assistant closed the shop for the night than a man ran towards her begging her to let him buy some groceries first. **moments after**

_____ some groceries first.

Exercise 291: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Sotva pašeráci predali svoj tovar, urobili agenti FBI raziu na ich sklad. 2 V momente, keď vystúpil

prezident na pódium, vypálil niekto smrteľnú strelu priamo do jeho srdca. 3 Akonáhle zločinca odmaskovali, bohatý gróf zomrel na infarkt. 4 Akonáhle sa kombajn pokazil, začali farmárovi robotníci štrajkovať. 5 Len čo sa loď potopila, bola nejaká nákladná loď na dohľad. 6 Sotva sa generálny riaditeľ vrátil zo služobnej cesty do Berlína, zmrazili daňové orgány všetok jeho majetok. 7 Akonáhle technik opravil poškodenú rúrku, odhalil problém s brzdou. 8 V momente, keď lietadlo pristálo, dostal pilot infarkt. 9 Sotva sa smartfón pokazil, si vedúci potreboval vybaviť súrny telefonát. 10 Akonáhle zamestnanec odoslal email, odišla elektrina v celej budove. 11 Akonáhle odhalil pravdu, bolo už príliš neskoro na to, aby niečo v tejto situácii podnikol. 12 Sotva kňaz vypil trocha vína, modlil sa k Bohu. 13 Sotva školu na prázdniny zatvorili, sa rekonštrukčné práce mohli začať. 14 V okamihu, keď bankára obvinili z podvodu, ho vzali do väzby. 15 Sotva faktúru doručili, manažér oznámil, že nemáme peniaze na jej zaplatenie.

5.10 Barely ... when

The subordinating conjunction *barely ... when* is used in the following way:

- The conjunction shows that one action or event occurs **immediately after** another action or event (Synonyms: *the moment that, the instant that, when, after, no sooner ... than*).
 - Barely had the storm passed when the farmer found out his crop was destroyed.*
Sotva sa búrka rozišla, keď farmár zistil, že jeho úroda bola zničená.
 - The mechanic had barely started working on the engine when his supervisor called him to his office to tell him some bad news.*
Mechanik ešte ani poriadne nezačal pracovať na motore, keď si ho vedúci zavolať k sebe, aby mu oznámil zlé správy.

Language Note 1:

The conjunction is usually used in the initial position in a sentence to put emphasis on the immediacy of the two actions or events talked about. Being a semi-negative (ie non-assertive) element, it requires the use of inversion, ie that the auxiliary verb be placed before the subject even though the utterance produced is a statement, not a question.

- Barely had the app been launched when some users found a few dangerous glitches.*
V momente, keď aplikáciu uviedli na trh, našlo niekoľko užívateľov pár nebezpečných chýb.
- Barely had the COO analysed the latest data when the CEO asked him to present a detailed summary of his findings.*
Prevádzkový riaditeľ ešte len zanalyzoval najnovšie údaje, keď ho generálny riaditeľ požiadal, aby odprezentoval súhrn svojich zistení.

To make clear which action or event happened first, perfect tenses are commonly used in the *barely*-structure showing that first the app was launched and it was only then that some users found a few dangerous glitches in it, and that first the COO analysed the latest data and that the CEO asked him to present a detailed summary of his findings shortly afterwards only (see examples above).

The use of perfect tenses is particularly common in British English.

Language Note 2:

In modern English, the conjunction is mostly used in rather official registers, especially in the written discourse. It is, however, seldom used in speech, in particular in everyday conversations. It is, by far, most readily encountered in literary texts.

Exercise 292: Insert the conjunction *barely ... when* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Had the window been closed one of our colleagues said he needed some fresh air and opened it again. 2 Had my cousin bought a lovely little cottage in the mountains his son told him about some financial difficulties he was having. 3 Had I spoken to the manager I learnt that he gave in his notice. 4 Had the train stopped the jumper gave the loco a signal to continue the journey. 5 Had the premises been rented the landlord increased the rent by five per cent. 6 Had the wall been painted blue some of the staff protested against the choice of the colour. 7 Had Martin's phone started ringing he realised that his battery was draining much faster than was usually the case. 8 Had the snail died a frog came hopping dying in the very same spot as the snail. 9 Had the call center agent finished one call the phone started ringing again. 10 Had the headmaster admitted a new student he received a formal complaint from one of the other parents criticising his decision. 11 Had the water been contaminated some tourists drank from it and died as a result. 12 Had the smog covered the city the mayor put special measures in place. 13 Had the power gone out some of my neighbours started panicking. 14 Had it stopped snowing the kids ran out to build their first snowman this winter. 15 Had the water in the well frozen the farmer had to find a different way to water her plants.

Exercise 293: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *barely ... when* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The moment the president got out of the car, he was shot by a sharpshooter hiding on the roof.

_____ hiding on the roof.

2 The murderer was arrested just seconds after he boarded the plane.

The murderer _____.

3 The instant the car stopped, two armed robbers got out and entered the bank.

_____ and entered the bank.

4 When the alarm went off, the clerks ran out of the building frantically.

The alarm _____.

5 As soon as the mouse stopped working properly, the staff asked for a new one.

_____ for a new one.

6 The HR head got in touch with the applicant the instant the first round of interviews was over.

_____ with the applicant.

7 The company had just launched the production of a new line of tablet computers when it had to close down several of its outlets all over the world.

_____ all over the world.

8 The instant the orchard was bought by a chemical company, it was converted into a storage facility.

The orchard _____.

9 The management sacked as many as five hundred staff as soon as they had sold their mobile division

to the software giant.

_____ as many as five hundred staff.

10 Right after the plane took off, a number of armed terrorists seized control over the aircraft.

_____ over the aircraft.

Exercise 294: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 Barely had the department run out of office supplies when the manager announced that a number of important foreign associates was coming for a visit. **the moment**

_____ was coming for a visit.

2 The telly had barely been on for about two minutes when the picture started to bounce up and down. **the instant**

The picture started to bounce _____.

3 Barely had the soldiers recovered from the stress and strain of their last battle when the general ordered them to charge the enemy again. **shortly after**

The general _____.

4 The mechanic had barely fixed the brakes when the owner came asking for his car. **the second**

_____ for his car.

5 Barely had the blizzard passed when the eager tourists wanted to continue their journey. **directly**

_____ continue their journey.

6 Barely had the deal been broken when the Chinese manufacturer found out about business partner's his fraudulent activities. **as soon as**

The Chinese manufacturer _____.

7 The exercise had barely been over when some of the recruits had to be admitted to the infirmary with cuts and bruises all over their bodies. **when**

_____ cuts and bruises all over their bodies.

8 Barely had the conference started when several members discovered their documentation was missing. **until**

It wasn't _____.

9 The doors had barely closed when the bus started moving again. **just as**

_____ started moving again.

10 The goods had barely been delivered when the manager ordered some more supplies. **the instant**

The manager _____.

Exercise 295: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Vojská sotva ustúpili, keď nepriateľ obkľúčil hrad. 2 Nádejná ľudská delová guľa ešte ani poriadne nestihla zdokonaľiť svoje vystúpenie, keď si poranila chrbticu a tým sa jej kariéra nadobro skončila. 3 Akonáhle vežu postavili, prišiel si ju generál obzrieť. 4 V momente, keď svedok vypovedal proti dro-

govému dílerovi, ho našli mŕtveho v opustenej uličke. 5 Auto ešte len opravili a už začalo vykazovať prvé známky problémov. 6 Akonáhle sa žaby presťahovali ďaleko od ľudských domov, sa presne na tom istom mieste objavil vzácny druh slimákov. 7 Sotva sa šablóny revidovali, sa vedúci tímu rozhodol urobiť niekoľko dodatočných zmien. 8 Veterány ešte ani poriadne nevystavili, keď istý návštevník výstavy rozbil jedno z čelných skiel. 9 Akonáhle vreckárov chytili, ich okresný prokurátor musel opäť prepustiť na slobodu. 10 Kasíno ešte ani poriadne neotvorili a už čelí prvej veľkej výzve. 11 Koncert sa ešte ani len poriadne nezačal, keď jedna z faniniek omdlela. 12 Akonáhle močiar vyschol, začala doňho miestna spoločnosť vyvážať svoj toxický odpad. 13 Diaľnicu sotva dokončili a už na nej došlo k nehode. 14 Akonáhle postavili lešenie okolo starého kostola, už sa istý veriaci začal vypytovať, čo tam tí muži robia. 15 Sotva vyhral hráč vysokú stávkku, keď sa hrací automat pokazil.

5.11 The ... the

The subordinating conjunction *the ... the* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction shows the **relation between two quantities or qualities** and states how the change in one quality or quantity increases or decreases in relation to the other. The conjunction uses comparative adjectives and adverbs in both parts of the construction.
 - *The sooner the contract is signed, the sooner we can start making loads of money.*
Čím skôr sa zmluva podpíše, tým skôr začneme zarábať kopec peňazí.
 - *The faster the goods are delivered, the more satisfied our customers will be.*
Čím rýchlejšie tovar dodáme, tým spokojnejší naši zákazníci budú.

Exercise 296: Insert the conjunction *the ... the* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 Harder you practise, better you get. 2 Greater the magician's powers become, more spectacular his performances get. 3 Jason says more troublesome the software becomes, faster it will be replaced. 4 Cleaner the classrooms get, more students will be eager to study with us. 5 Slower my daughter drives, safer I'd feel. 6 More money the debtor owes the bank, sooner he might lose his business. 7 Sharper the watchers' eyes get, more chances we've got to get to the witness. 8 Prettier Sarah's mother becomes, more men she'll attract. 9 Looser the beggar's trousers are, colder he feels. 10 Sweeter the pudding you make is, better it'll sell. 11 Smarter the company technicians get, more work will they do. 12 Greater the risk, greater the prize. 13 More the choir practises, better it'll get at singing. 14 Hotter the weather around here gets, more people will hit the beach. 15 Younger they are, easier they are to teach new things.

Exercise 297: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *the ... the* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If you continue eating like that, you'll get even fatter.

_____ you get.

2 If the manager works more hours, he'll get a higher salary.

_____ his salary will get.

3 The paediatrician might help more children in need if she does more research.

- _____ help.
- 4 If they fly really high, they fall really low.
_____ they fall.
- 5 The students will get better exam results if they study harder.
_____ will get.
- 6 If you emphasise the important ideas, the audience will respond more passionately to your words.
_____ to your words.
- 7 The car would definitely be more reliable if you had it checked more often.
_____ it will be.
- 8 If the chair speaks any more, the MPs won't be listening to him at all.
_____.
- 9 We might have an accident if you keep driving faster and faster, Jarod.
Jarod, _____ have an accident.
- 10 Just spend more time with Hilda and you'll definitely get to know her better.
_____ you get to know her.

Exercise 298: Put the words given into meaningful sentences using the conjunction *the ... the*. Make sure to follow the instructions in brackets.

- 1 You / wait long / out in the cold / chances high / you / get sick (present simple)
_____.
- 2 He / drive far away from home / a lot / he / get homesick (past simple)
_____.
- 3 A lot of time / he / spend / at work / little / he / have contact / with his family (present perfect)
_____.
- 4 You / train / a lot / you / get really good / fast (past simple)
_____.
- 5 He / become strong / little / he care about the others (past simple)
_____.
- 6 The child / grow weak / bad / chances be / for his survival (present simple)
_____.
- 7 The interpreter / speak fast / a lot / attentive / the audience / need to be (past simple)
_____.
- 8 I / a lot / think about the case / I / a lot / be convinced / the suspect / be the killer (present simple)

9 You / practise the flute / often / you / fast / you improve (present simple)

10 The work / difficult / bad / the pay (present simple)

Exercise 299: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Čím pestrejšia bude kniha na koniec, tým lepšie sa bude predávať. 2 Čím mäkkšia bude pohovka, tým pohodlnejšie sa na nej bude sedieť. 3 Čím ružovejšie si prostoduché dievča predstavuje svoju budúcnosť, tým bolestivejšie pre ňu bude vyrovnáť sa s nudnou realitou. 4 Čím rýchlejšie športovkyňa pobeží, tým lepšie budú jej šance na víťazstvo v pretekoch. 5 Čím pozornejší budete počas výskumu, tým menej chýb sa pravdepodobne dopustíte. 6 Čím menej bude tvoj brat fajčiť, tým lepšie pre jeho zdravie. 7 Čím chladnejšie bolo, tým teplejšie sa dedinčania museli obliekať. 8 Čím všestrannejší spisovateľ je, tým viac obľuby by si mohol získať medzi čitateľmi. 9 Čím hlučnejší moji susedia boli, tým sa mi vedľa nich ťažšie bývalo. 10 Čím sladučkejší bol Lívinôčkin hlas, tým ťažšie som dokázal odolať tomuto nádhernému anjelikovi. 11 Čím viac sa usilujete o dokonalosť, tým viac sa svojmu cieľu približujete. 12 Čím menej sa angličtinár zaujímal o svet, tým spokojnejší bol. 13 Čím kozmopolitnejšie veľkomestá a mestá sú, tým viac narastá aj ich znečisťovanie. 14 Čím viac času uplynulo, tým bolo jasnejšie, že informátor sa nakoniec predsa len nedostaví. 15 Čím viac rameno bejzbólistu meralo, tým viac sa obával, že sa mu nepodari trafiť loptičku.

5.12 Whether ... or

The subordinating conjunction **whether ... or** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction introduces **two or more possibilities**. The implication is that the speaker/writer does not know which of them is true, real, genuine, or possible (Meaning: *either ... or*).
 - *I've got no idea **whether** the company broke any laws **or** if it's just being harassed by the authorities.*
*Nemám ani potuchy, **či** firma nejaký zákon porušila, **alebo** ide len o buzerovanie zo strany úradov.*
 - ***Whether** the shipment arrives this **or** next month is still not known.*
***Či** zásielka dorazí tento **alebo** budúci mesiac ešte stále nie je známe.*
- 2 The conjunction introduces **two or more possibilities** which the speaker/writer can choose from.
 - *There's a heated debate over **whether** the manufacturer should be allowed to sell his business to the software giant **or** rather be pressed to stay in business by himself.*
*Vášnivo sa debatuje na tému, **či** by sa malo výrobcovi umožniť odpredať svoju firmu softvérovému gigantovi **alebo** by sa naňho malo radšej tlačiť, aby naďalej podnikal sám.*
 - *The marketing manager is still not sure **whether** to use the blitz campaign **or** to stick to more conventional advertising.*
*Marketingový manažér si stále nie je istý, **či** by mal použiť bleskovú kampaň **alebo** by sa mal radšej držať konvenčnej reklamy.*

- 3 The conjunction states that **a given situation will remain unchanged** regardless of which of the two possibilities is chosen.
- *Well, the journey takes two and a half hours **whether** you take the ship **or** go by plane.
No, cesta trvá dve a pol hodiny, **či** už pôjdeš loďou alebo lietadlom.*
 - ***Whether** the department receives more funds **or** not does not change anything about the fact that the money will never be spent wisely.
Či oddelenie dostane ďalšie finančné prostriedky **alebo** nie, na skutočnosti, že peniaze nikdy nepoužije múdro, sa nič nemení.*

Exercise 300: Insert the conjunction *whether ... or* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The postman delivers the letters today tomorrow we'll get the post anyway. 2 The printer works not, the manager needs the presentation right now. 3 The PA will let you know we've made the deal if you should get in touch with your US associate. 4 The Chinese producer can deliver the goods now in a week or two doesn't really matter. 5 It works not the project has to be finished by the end of the month. 6 The party will start on Monday you like it not. 7 The police officer had to leave the force he wanted to not. 8 The power grid is strong enough to keep us online not we need to have the computers up and running in no time. 9 The sailors anchor in the harbour remain at sea, they need to get the supplies asap. 10 The mayor approves of our plan disagrees with every single detail, we have to keep pushing, Dave. 11 The girls will be disappointed their father gets them dolls a play station. 12 The router works well breaks down from time to time the bill for the Internet connection has to be paid. 13 The level of blood pressure gets higher stays low, he needs to take care of himself better. 14 The accountant gets worked up you do your job well not. 15 Sarah's daughter has always managed to take care of herself she had a job was pounding the pavement.

Exercise 301: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *whether... or* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 You can sell your options or you can keep them. This will not affect your profit margin this year.
_____ profit margin this year.
- 2 The committee need to decide if they want to expel Mr Burns. If not, he'll remain a member.
The committee need to _____.
- 3 It doesn't really matter if their clients sell or buy their shares, the brokers always get their commission.
_____ get their commission.
- 4 You'll have to pay tax on the products no matter if you buy them in the Netherlands or China.
You'll have to _____.
- 5 The delivery service can get the tools to us this week or next week. All the same, we are going to start construction work at the beginning of December only.
_____ at the beginning of December only.
- 6 It didn't really matter if we hurried or not, we'd still be late for the concert.

- _____ for the concert.
- 7 The judge didn't care if the defendant was guilty or innocent, he wanted to put him behind bars.
_____ behind bars.
- 8 It doesn't matter if you take the underground or the bus it will take you more than an hour to get to the airport.
_____ to get to the airport.
- 9 We're going regardless of your liking or not liking it.
We're going, _____.
- 10 She's got to find out about the truth sooner or later. So, you can tell her or I can do so instead.
She's got to find out _____.

Exercise 302: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 Whether the circumstances are favourable to us or not we will push on with the project. **regardless**
_____ with the project.
- 2 The farmer will have to sell her estate whether she likes it or not. **no matter**
The farmer _____.
- 3 Whether the weather turns out fine or rainy the sportsmen will have to do their exercise. **irrespective**
_____ do their exercise.
- 4 People need jobs whether there is an economic downturn or not. **despite**
_____ need jobs.
- 5 Whether there are some minor implementation issues or not the website has to be in perfect working order by Monday at the latest. **I don't care if**
_____ by Monday at the latest.
- 6 Whether there's a shortage of goods or not we cannot afford to pay the workers for simply standing around and doing nothing. **may**
There _____.
- 7 The mines are not going to close down whether the president likes the idea or not. **regardless**
The mines are not _____.
- 8 Whether the plumbing gets fixed or not the block of flats is going to be pulled down by the end of the month. **no matter**
_____ by the end of the month.
- 9 The bill has to get passed asap whether the Republicans agree with it or not. **irrespective**
The bill _____.
- 10 Whether the business takes off or not the bills will have to be paid. **regardless**

Exercise 303: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Či je už balíček zabalený alebo nie, mali by ho dodať každú chvíľu. 2 Či nám už nejaké peniaze zvýšili alebo nie, nájomné budeme musieť zaplatiť, miláčik. 3 Nie som si celkom istá, či pokladník zamkol alebo nie. 4 Toto bude nepríjemná dohoda, či už bude cena sedieť alebo nie. 5 Či už svedok povie pravdu alebo bude aj naďalej klamať, jeho šéf nikdy neuvidí väzenie z vnútra. 6 Skutočný priateľ by ti vždy pomohol, či už mu za to niečo dáš alebo mu len poďakuješ. 7 Väzenský dozorca nič neurobí a na svedka nedohliadne, či už ho o to poprosíš alebo mu zaplatíš. 8 Či už som niečo videl alebo počul, iste nepôjdem svedčiť na súd. 9 Či už je ten príbeh pravdivý alebo ide len o výplod fantázie malého dievčatka, polícia ho bude musieť prešetriť. 10 Či si už účty zaplatím vopred alebo s oneskorením, moji veritelia vždy dostanú, čo im dlžím. 11 Taxikár si svoju prácu odvedie, či už mu za ňu zaplatia slušne, alebo mu dajú len drobné. 12 Bude sa debatovať o tom, či by sa mala diaľnica postaviť v tomto alebo budúcom roku. 13 Či už sme manažérovi sympatickí alebo nie, bude s nami obchodovať. 14 Či sa už nájde vysvetlenie pre Janovo nestále správanie alebo nie, rozhodne do značnej miery ovplyvnilo celý tím.

6 MARGINAL SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

6.1 Even if

The subordinating conjunction *even if* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction emphasises that **an action or event remains the same** regardless of whether another action or event may be true, real, or genuine (Synonym: *irrespective of*).
 - *The accountant will tell the police everything he knows even if it means he ends up dead the next morning.*
Účtovník policii povie všetko, čo vie, aj keby to znamenalo, že sa rána nedožie.
 - *Even if the kidnappers don't play by the rules, we will, Jason.*
Hoci únoscovia nehrajú podľa pravidiel, my budeme, Jáson.

Exercise 304: Insert the conjunction *even if* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 I knew where the alleged murderer is hiding, I wouldn't tell you, Sir. 2 The weather turns bad again, the ship will have to set sail. 3 The dragon had to be defeated it meant that the brave knight would die in the process. 4 The balloon crashes somewhere in the mountains, we will be able to track its exact location. 5 The computer screen always goes a bit dark after a few hours you don't make any changes to the settings. 6 The manager wants some of the tools exchanged they are still in perfect working order. 7 There's no reason for worry, my mother always finds something to worry about. 8 The children will have to be inoculated against malaria they won't travel to South Africa. 9 I'll give you a call I arrive late at night. 10 the investment turned sour, the rich investors would still be in possession of enough financial resources to cover their losses. 11 The biker wouldn't reveal his friends' secrets it meant trouble for him. 12 The children have to go to school it rains or snows. 13 The detective swears he's going to nab the criminal he has to look for him all over the world. 14 The diamonds were still in the safe, somebody would have to be held accountable for the breach of security in the main building. 15 I will give her a hand she doesn't appreciate my work, George.

Exercise 305: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *even if* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The postman doesn't earn a lot of money, he's a happy man though.

_____ a happy man.

2 The chair usually works long hours. However, he wouldn't change his job for any other in the world.

_____ in the world.

3 Laura's brothers will continue studying Chinese even though they may take years to learn it.

Laura's brothers _____.

4 The accountant may go to prison eventually, but he'll tell the investigator the truth.

The accountant _____.

5 The accused is determined to prove his innocence. However, he may have to appeal to the highest court.

The accused _____.

6 The wedding will take place. The bride's father may have to drag his daughter to the church.

The wedding _____ .

7 The milk will go off in a few days although you may put it in the fridge.

The milk _____ .

8 Although Mr Mitchells doesn't want to sell his company, we will remain close associates.

_____ close associates.

9 Even though the plan may not work as well as we'd like it to, we have to give it a try.

_____ give it a try.

10 The investment may not be as lucrative as the last one, but we'll still make loads of money.

_____ loads of money.

Exercise 306: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The banker won't be fired even if he loses his clients' money on the stock exchange. **although**

The banker _____ .

2 The Marines will remain loyal to their commander even if he's found guilty. **even though**

The Marines _____ .

3 Even if the hacking attack is not successful, the damage to the website will be done. **however**

The hacking attack _____ .

4 The operation will start as planned even if there are some minor inconsistencies in our intel. **still**

The operation _____ .

5 Even if the plane crash landed on a deserted island, the passengers all survived. **disregarding**

_____ all survived.

6 The staff will not receive any bonuses this year even if they work really hard. **as**

Hard _____ .

7 Even if the lost necklace doesn't turn up, the owner will probably not miss it anyway. **although**

_____ miss it anyway.

8 The PA will give you a call even if there's no news about your missing daughter. **still**

There _____ .

9 Even if the whole block burns down, the insurance company will pay for all the damage. **but**

The whole block _____ .

10 The singer may not perform the gig live even if he's not hoarse anymore. **despite**

The singer _____ .

Exercise 307: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Napriek tomu, že náš hlavný systém riadne nefunguje, sa aj tak musíme dobre postarať o našich zákazníkov. 2 Nebudem ti môcť pomôcť, aj keby som mal byť vtedy v meste. 3 Návrh zákona neschvália aj keď si predseda myslí, že ide o dôležitý zákon. 4 Autonehody by sa stávali, aj keby ľudia dávali lepší pozor na dopravu. 5 Finančnú analytičku už čoskoro prepustia, aj keď sa jej výsledky zlepšia. 6 Hoci mi másiar za moju prácu veľa neplatí, výpoveď nedám. 7 Knihu musí dokončiť do 9. júna, aj keby na nej autorka musela celý týždeň písať. 8 Súkromný učiteľ donúti svojich študentov vždy usilovne študovať, aj keď sú príliš leniví na to, aby sami študovali. 9 Aj keď si zabudla, ako sa táto práca vykonáva poriadne, iní to nezabudli, Júlia. 10 Aj keď sú šance mizivé, náš tímlíder sa nikdy nevzdáva. 11 Vojaci budú v bojoch pokračovať, hoci je nepriateľ oveľa silnejší než oni. 12 Aj keď sa Diane sny nespĺnia okamžite, je to bystré a talentované mladé dievča, ktoré iste skôr či neskôr dosiahne všetko, čo chce. 13 Hoci sa loď potopila, jej poklad sa podarilo zachrániť. 14 Radiátory budú vymieňať v piatok a to aj napriek tomu, že sa ti tento dátum veľmi nepozdáva, Franklin. 15 Hoci psy nechali v psinci, dobre sa tam o ne postarajú.

6.2 Every time that

The subordinating conjunction *every time (that)* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction states that an action or event occurs whenever something else happens (Meaning: *at each occasion that*; Synonym: *whenever*).
 - *Our investments go sour every time (that) Mr Arnold is responsible for handling the contracts. Naše investície sa nikdy nevydaria, keď pán Arnold zodpovedá za zmluvy.*
 - *Every time (that) the company asks for a loan, it gets rejected right away. Kedykoľvek spoločnosť požiada o úver, okamžite ho zamietnu.*

Exercise 308: Insert the conjunction *every time (that)* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The supply chain tends to break down the demand exceeds the supply. 2 The managing director is away on business, the staff leave work quite early. 3 The building construction seems to slow down new material needs to be delivered. 4 Most chefs do their job perfectly they are put under some pressure. 5 The hen lays eggs, the farmer comes and takes them away. 6 There's a problem with gas, the landlord calls his son-in-law who fixes the issue in no time. 7 Our train arrives late the weather condition is not favourable. 8 The roads in our town are fixed somebody famous decides to drop in for a visit. 9 Money-laundering schemes get uncovered by the police they are investigated. 10 Teachers at my school get silly answers they ask serious questions. 11 I swear a dog gets killed around here a lorry passes by. 12 The astronomer looks at the stars, you can see that his dream has come true. 13 Dan has a glass of wine he comes home from work. 14 My granddaughter used to work really hard she was to take an important exam. 15 The phone rings, the PA picks it up and greets the person on the other side with a smile on her lips.

Exercise 309: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *every time (that)* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 Whenever the drunkard comes to the pub, the bartender throws him out right away.
The bartender throws _____.
- 2 The equipment is maintained whenever the workers take a company holiday.
_____ is maintained.
- 3 Whenever the buses are running late, the passengers keep swearing.
_____ keep swearing.
- 4 The carpenter works on his small projects whenever he finds some spare time for himself.
The carpenter _____.
- 5 Whenever the phones are down, the call centre agents enjoy a free paid break.
The call centre agents _____.
- 6 The flight attendants hand out cushions whenever a passenger wants to get some shuteye.
The flight attendants _____.
- 7 Whenever the cook burns the dinner, the master scolds him severely.
The master _____.
- 8 The puppet master makes a great show whenever he's sober as a judge.
The puppet master _____.
- 9 Whenever it gets dark, those honest people living in our community fear to walk the night streets.
_____ the night streets.
- 10 The actors practise their lines whenever they're not rehearsing the play as a group.
The actors _____.

Exercise 310: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 Every time the delivery is made, somebody from our department has to sign the receipt. **when**
_____ to sign the receipt.
- 2 The bushes get cut every time they get as high as two metres. **the moment**
The bushes _____.
- 3 Every time the sun rises, the soldiers pick up their machine guns and return to fighting. **as soon as**
_____ return to fighting.
- 4 Jack reads his baby sister fairy tales every time she's too scared to go to bed alone. **whenever**
Jack reads _____.
- 5 Every time the window gets shut, the rooms get pretty hot in a few minutes. **when**
The rooms _____.

- 6 The flagship sets sail first every time the fleet goes to war. **whenever**
 _____ sets sail first.
- 7 Every time the siren goes, the villagers start running into shelters. **the instant**
 _____ into shelters.
- 8 The wife puts two spoonfuls of sugar into the tea every time she makes her husband a good-night tea. **when**
 The mother _____.
- 9 Every time you pull the trigger, think about the consequences of your actions first. **whenever**
 Think about _____.
- 10 Every time you want to cross the street, make sure there are no cars coming from either direction first, Henry. **whenever**
 _____ from either direction first, Henry.

Exercise 311: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Vždy, keď upratovačka umyje tie obrovské tabule, dá si krátku prestávku. 2 Pokaždé, keď sa počítač prehreje, automaticky sa vypne. 3 Sudca zvažuje všetky dôkazy, ktoré boli na súde predložené pokaždé, keď má rozhodnúť, či je obžalovaný vinný alebo nevinný. 4 Kedykoľvek nájomníci počujú ako lietadlá vzlietajú, zajajčia. 5 Námorníci si berú dlhú dovolenku vždy, keď zakotvia v prístave. 6 Väčšina horolezcov nosieva veľikánske ruksaky pokaždé, keď sa snažia vystúpiť na vrchol vysokej hory. 7 Pokaždé, keď chudobné deti dostanú darčeky, sa milému mužovi či žene, ktorá im ich dala, poďakujú. 8 Vždy, keď lanovka zastane, nájdú sa jeden či dvaja ľudia, ktorých ako-tak zachváti panika. 9 Krajčír musí pracovať dlho do noci vždy, keď je v meste maškarný bál. 10 Zakaždým, keď Jimove dcéry idú na vidiek, vrátia sa domov neskoro. 12 Kedykoľvek zomrie skrytý agent pri výkone služby, zapíše sa do knihy jedna hviezdička, ktorou si ho pripomíname. 13 Telefón nikdy neprestáva zvoniť, keď máme špeciálnu ponuku. 14 Vrchol veže vyzerá stále nebezpečnejšie a nebezpečnejšie pokaždé, keď idem okolo. 15 Vždy, keď profesorka číta básne svojim študentom, oni pozorne počúvajú a robia si poznámky.

6.3 If only

The subordinating conjunction **if only** is used in the following ways:

- 1 The conjunction expresses **hope** when used with present tenses or the *will*-future.
 - **If only** the broker sells the shares at the highest price possible.
Kiežby maklér predal akcie za čo najvyššiu cenu!
 - **If only** the profits go up by five per cent at least.
Kiežby zisk stúpol aspoň o päť percent!
- 2 The conjunction expresses **regret** when used with past tenses.
 - **If only** the managers were working a bit harder on the project.
Kiežby manažéri pracovali na projekte trochu usilovnejšie!

- ***If only*** we had sold our shares two hours ago.
Kiežby sme boli predali naše akcie pred dvomi hodinami!

3 The conjunction expresses **regret** or a **not very hopeful wish** regarding the present or the future. In this case, the *if only*-construction is followed by a *would*-structure.

- ***If only*** the accountant would pay more attention to detail.
Kiežby kládol účtovník väčší dôraz na detaily!
- ***If only*** the professor would stop criticising his students' work all the time.
Kiežby prestal profesor neustále kritizovať prácu svojich študentov!

Language Note 1:

The subordinator is used to say that we would like something or somebody to be different or that we would like to change a situation.

If only conveys the same meaning as *I wish*, but since it's an emphatic structure, it carries more weight than *I wish*.

If only is a bit more typical of informal registers and is usually used in the spoken discourse.

Language Note 2:

As far as tenses are concerned, *if only* is most commonly used in three constructions, namely:

- a) *If only* + past to talk about the present
- ***If only*** the manager **had** more opportunities to change the good old ways the system works.
... But he doesn't.
 - ***If only*** the supervisor **let** us work as we please.
... But he doesn't.
- b) *If only* + past perfect to talk about the past
- ***If only*** we **had acquired** the company ten years ago.
... But we didn't.
 - ***If only*** the production of the tablet computer **had never been approved**.
... But it was.
- c) *If only* + would + bare infinitive to talk about the future
- ***If only*** the CFO **would stop** talking about all those foreign investments.
... But he won't.
 - ***If only*** the company **would be** worth five million dollars by the end of the year.
... But it won't.

Exercise 312: Insert the conjunction *if only* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The referee had been paying more attention to the game. 2 My daughter would tell me about her plans. 3 The beer were here already. 4 The power cord hadn't broken down last night. 5 The water dispenser were still working. 6 You would listen to your parents. 7 The CEO hadn't forgotten the safe combination. 8 The businesspeople would finally close the deal. 9 The construction work progressed at a faster pace. 10 The rats would go away eventually. 11 The basement hadn't been flooded. 12 The teacher's students were at least a bit smarter. 13 The tower were taller. 14 The hitman had been paid more money. 15 Our enemies weren't as strong.

Exercise 313: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *if only* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 I wish the chief had told me about his plans earlier.

_____ earlier.

2 I wish the prisoners were moving faster.

_____ faster.

3 I wish the marriage counsellor would talk more openly with both of us.

_____ with both of us.

4 I wish the new mobile phone had a better battery life.

_____ battery life.

5 I wish the chopper hadn't been blown out of the sky.

_____ out of the sky.

6 I regret not studying Spanish harder when I was still at school.

_____ at school.

7 I really hope your son wins the competition on Saturday.

_____ on Saturday.

8 I hope the CFO is willing to listen to the analyst as regards cost reduction.

_____ as regards cost reduction.

9 I wish my pitiful existence would finally come to a quick end.

_____ a quick end.

10 I sincerely hope your supervisor will be willing to give you the pay rise you've asked for.

_____ you've asked for.

Exercise 314: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 If only the jeweller hadn't trusted his assistant with all those gems.

wish

I _____ with all those gems.

2 If only my brother weren't as gullible as you are, Dave.

I wish

_____ as you are, Dave.

3 If only the temp worker hadn't deleted the files.

I wish

_____ the files.

4 If only the astronauts would solve the issues as soon as they dock at the station.

I hope

_____ dock at the station.

5 If only the general will listen to your plan, Michael.

be willing

If only _____.

- 6 If only my grandfather hadn't sold those valuable shares. **I regret**
 _____ those valuable shares.
- 7 If only the door was locked every evening. **I wish**
 _____ every evening.
- 8 If only you would tell me sooner about your plans next time. **I hope**
 _____ next time.
- 9 If only the surfer hadn't broken his leg last week. **I wish**
 _____ last week.
- 10 If only the new staff picked up some more practical skills during the training. **I regret**
 _____ during the training.

Exercise 315: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Ak by sa len tým mladým motivovaným zamestnancom podarilo zmeniť všetky tie zložité procesy v našej firme! 2 Kiežby nám dal tento rok generálny riaditeľ všetkým veľkú vianočnú prémie! 3 Kiežby nemusel profesor odísť dnes večer tak skoro! 4 Ak by sa len prezidentova dcéra bola stala mojou manželkou! 5 Kiežby bol gepard bežal pomalšie! 6 Kiežby boli dávali tí zmrzačení usmrkanci väčší pozor, keď pred všetkými tými rokmi prechádzali cez ulicu! 7 Kiežby boli stavbári odvedli lepšiu prácu pri stavbe stien! 8 Kiežby kňaz skončil kázeň o čosi skôr, než zvyčajne! 9 Kiežby sa nebola raketa rozpadla na milión maličkých kúskov pri vstupe do zemskej atmosféry! 10 Kiežby továreň zarobila budúci rok oveľa viac peňazí! 11 Kiežby boli steny zelené a nie žlté! 12 Kiežby bola búrka už prešla! 13 Kiežby sa svadba konala v krajšom kostole! (*Svadba sa koná práve teraz.*) 14 Kiežby neboli sprisahanci poskytli minulý mesiac tie správy tlači! 15 Kiežby som teraz nemal oblečené tieto špinavé šaty!

6.4 The minute that

The subordinating conjunction **the minute (that)** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction states that an action or event occurs **at the same time or immediately after** another action or event (Synonyms: *when, immediately after, as soon as*).
 - The football team always start training **the minute (that)** they get out on the pitch.*
*Futbalový tím začne vždy trénovať **hneď, ako** vkročí na ihrisko.*
 - The minute (that)** you spot a possible breach of security, please give a call to our security expert.*
***Akonáhle** spozorujete možné narušenie bezpečnosti, ohláste to prosím nášmu bezpečnostnému expertovi.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- The supplies will be inspected **the minute (that)** Mr Petterson returns from his meeting.*
*Kontrola zásob prebehne **v okamihu, keď** sa pán Petterson vráti zo stretnutia.*

- **The minute (that)** *Julia opens her mouth, everybody notices she is not very intelligent.*
Akonáhle Júlia otvorí ústa, každý si všimne, že nie je veľmi inteligentná.

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *the minute (that)* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *The diplomats left the embassy **the minute (that)** they had broken off the negotiations.*
*Diplomati opustili veľvyslanectvo **hneď, ako** prerušili rokovania.*
- **The minute (that)** *the pizza boy has delivered the pizzas, he's supposed to come back to the pizzeria.*
V momente, keď roznášač odovzdá pizzu, sa má vrátiť do pizzerie.

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

The same meaning as the one expressed by the phrase *the minute (that)* is also conveyed by the marginal subordinators *the instant (that)* and *the second (that)*. There is, in fact, no difference in meaning between the three set phrases at all.

Exercise 316: Insert the conjunction *the minute that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 That door opens, I want you to start clapping your hands, children. 2 The sacrifice is made, the gods will spare our beloved daughter. 3 The lawn is to be mowed the sun goes up. 4 The bikers will set off on their trip they've had breakfast. 5 The cat will catch the cunning mouse it gets hungry. 6 The police arrived, the bank robbers grabbed their guns and started shooting at them. 7 You've told the kidnappers where the money is hidden, the hostages will be killed. 8 The pancakes will be on the table Father comes through that door. 9 The MEPs saw their Spanish colleague walk in the room, they went silent and started staring at him. 10 The geese shall be slaughtered they are fat enough to be sold at a high price. 11 The DJ has turned down the music, the clubgoers stopped dancing altogether. 12 The raging commander shot the sergeant he stepped in to his office. 13 The drunkards gave the young man the beating of his life they left the pub. 14 The CEO will be with you she's finished her call. 15 The plane touched down, two armed police officers came on board and arrested the Palestinian rebel.

Exercise 317: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *the minute that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The armed gunmen entered the shop the instant the shop assistant was going to lock the front door.

The armed gunmen _____.

2 The Swiss company's bank accounts were frozen the moment the FTA learned about some suspicious transactions made with a number of African firms.

The Swiss company's bank accounts _____.

3 The fire fighters rushed to the scene as soon as they heard about the fire.

The fire fighters _____.

4 The passengers boarded the plane immediately after they went through the check-in.

- _____ the plane.
- 5 Shortly after visiting Spain and Italy, the English singer decided to visit the Netherlands.
_____ the Netherlands.
- 6 As soon as the desks had been delivered, the driver asked for a signature to confirm the delivery.
The driver _____.
- 7 The mainframe computer shall be rebooted the instant the head technician has backed up the files.
The mainframe computer _____.
- 8 Lucy will give us a call when she arrives in Scotland.
Lucy _____.
- 9 The news was announced on TV shortly after the deal had been signed.
The news _____.
- 10 Make sure to send us an email as soon as you receive the payment confirmation.
Make sure _____.

Exercise 318: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 The minute the mobster felt there was something wrong, he fled the club in a hurry. **the instant**
The mobster _____.
- 2 The foreign secretary will brief us on the topic in more detail the minute he's returned from Bosnia. **as soon as**
The foreign secretary _____.
- 3 The minute a hired gun loses control over themselves, you ought to run and hide fast. **the moment**
_____ run and hide fast.
- 4 The governor resigned from office the minute he was accused of having embezzled a large number of national funds. **the second**
The governor _____.
- 5 The minute the mother heard about her son's untimely death, she collapsed and never regained consciousness again. **just as**
_____ consciousness again.
- 6 The surgeon had to perform an emergency operation the minute he arrived at the hospital. **the instant**
The surgeon _____.
- 7 The minute the manager looked into her colleague's eyes, she knew she would never be able to persuade him to help her out. **shortly after**
_____ to help her out.
- 8 The police found the smoking gun the minute they started searching the premises. **the moment**

_____ the smoking gun.

9 The minute the farmer couldn't pay back his debts, the bank seized control over all his assets. **just as**

The bank seized control _____.

10 The minister will call a press conference the minute he's got something important to tell the people.

as soon as

The minister _____.

Exercise 319: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Akonáhle sa manažér nepozeral, sa sekretárka vykradla z kancelárie a išla na nákupy. 2 Susedov pes začne riadne hlasno štekať v momente, keď prichádza poštár. 3 Hneď, ako mačky vyskočili von oknom, sa ich majiteľka ponáhľala zistiť, či sú ešte v poriadku. 4 Akonáhle vláda zvýšila DPH, protestujúci z celého štátu vyšli do ulíc. 5 Ján, úradník Vás bude kontaktovať, akonáhle sa dozvieme niečo nové. 6 V okamihu, keď búrka prešla, vyšlo opäť slnko. 7 Vedúci sa porozpráva s brigádnickou hneď, ako táto príde. 8 V okamihu, keď bola platba dokončená, boli hráčovi herné body pripísané na účet. 9 Technik opravil môj počítač hneď, ako zistil, v čom bola chyba. 10 Akonáhle sa narodeninová oslava skončila, začali hostia odchádzať. 11 V okamihu, keď havran odletel, sa náhodní diváci prežehnali. 12 Dodávka bude realizovaná hneď, ako bude tovar na sklade. 13 Akonáhle sa bohatému chlapcovi minuli peniaze, ho jeho priatelia opustili a priateľka mu ušla s najlepším kamarátom. 14 Zločinci sa vlámali do domu v okamihu, keď zistili, že ich novým susedom je policajt. 15 Akonáhle zacítil Lukáš nebezpečenstvo, vždy hneď utiekol do bezpečia.

6.5 The moment that

The subordinating conjunction **the moment (that)** is used in the following way:

- The conjunction states that an action or event occurs **at the same time or immediately after** another action or event (Synonyms: *when, immediately after, as soon as*).
 - A team of armed police officers stormed the casino **the moment (that)** the last gambler on the guest list went in.*
*Tím ozbrojených policajtov vtrhol do kasína **vo chvíli, keď** dnu vošiel posledný hráč na zozname hostí.*
 - The moment (that)** a manager speaks his mind, he gets replaced by some nitwit from HQ.*
***Akonáhle** si manažér povie svoj názor, nahradí ho nejaký hlupák z ústredia.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- The gangster will start terrorising his former business associates **the moment (that)** he gets out of prison.*
*Gangster začne terorizovať svojich bývalých obchodných partnerov **v okamihu, keď** ho prepustia z väzenia.*
- The moment (that)** you are in town, do give me a call, Henry.*
***Akonáhle** budeš v meste, zavolaj mi.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *the moment (that)* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *The IPO is going to start **the moment (that)** the CEO has made sure of its success.*
*Počiatočná verejná ponuka sa začne **hneď**, ako si bude generálny riaditeľ istý jej úspechom.*
- ***The moment (that)** the shares have been sold, the former shareholders are going to stop trading in this industry for good.*
*V **momente**, keď dôjde k predaju akcií, prestanú bývalí akcionári nadobro obchodovať v tomto odvetví.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

The same meaning as the one expressed by the phrase *the moment (that)* is also conveyed by the marginal subordinators *the instant (that)* and *the second (that)*. There is, in fact, no difference in meaning between the three set phrases at all.

Exercise 320: Insert the conjunction *the moment that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The syringe ought to be thrown away it has been used. 2 The astronauts stepped out of the capsule the control centre gave them the green light. 3 The novelist will publish the short story he's finally written the last chapter. 4 The tower found out about the technical issues, it was already too late to abort the landing. 5 The wine was sold the producer opened his stand. 6 The lantern was lit, the guests started clapping their hands. 7 The new regulation was published, every member of our team had to read it carefully. 8 The jumper started to check the passengers' tickets the train had left the station. 9 the janitor's friends arrived at the party, the other guests started to leave suddenly. 10 The bonuses will be paid out the CEO has signed the cheques. 11 the new hardware arrives, I want you to take everything to our command centre and unpack the lot. 12 The singer left the stage, his fans started shouting out loud for him to come back. 13 The new headset will be fixed our technician returns from Sidney. 14 The driver made a pitstop he realised he was running low on gas. 15 Trevor's nephew might want to sell his old mobile phone a better one is around.

Exercise 321: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *the moment that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The sermon will begin the instant the priest has greeted the special guests.

The sermon _____.

2 The hero was praised the second he'd slain the beast.

The hero _____.

3 Mr and Mrs Donaldson might move houses the minute they've found a better place to live.

Mr and Mrs Donaldson _____.

4 As soon as the supplies get depleted, the COO will file another order.

The COO _____.

5 Immediately after the agency closed down, dozens of black and whites surrounded the building.

Dozens of black and whites _____ .

6 The PM signed the agreement shortly after talking to his financial advisor.

The PM _____ .

7 When the sculptor started presenting his latest work, he specifically pointed out the colours used.

The sculptor _____ .

8 The instant a passer-by saw the car accident, he dialled 911.

A passer-by _____ .

9 The gig started after the band had introduced their new vocalist.

The gig _____ .

10 As soon as the shooting began, several people called their loved ones to say goodbye.

Several people _____ .

Exercise 322: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The small pharmacy closed down the moment a chain opened its store next door. **as soon as**

The small pharmacy _____ .

2 The birds outside started chattering the moment the sun went up. **the instant**

The birds _____ .

3 The planet will explode the moment the comet hits its surface. **immediately after**

The planet _____ .

4 The particles were discovered the moment the chemical reaction occurred. **the second**

The particles _____ .

5 The moment the skiing instructor spotted the avalanche, he brought his students back to the hotel.

the minute

The skiing instructor _____ .

6 The moment the librarian found the book I needed, she gave me a call.

shortly after

The librarian _____ .

7 The old tower will be renovated the moment the mayor has found enough funds to cover the costs of the repairs. **when**

The old tower _____ .

8 The moment my uncle quit his job, he lost all his friends.

after

My uncle _____ .

9 The door blew shut the moment the young officer was bringing in those heavy baskets. **just as**

The door _____.

10 The moment the wedding started, a rookie pianist started playing the wrong tune. **as soon as**

A rookie pianist _____.

Exercise 323: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Akonáhle začal prenajímateľ vyberať nájomné, nájomníci sa mu začali vyhýbať. 2 V okamihu, keď sa pokazilo auto, zavolať si šofér pomoc. 3 Jankino šteniatko ochorelo v momente, keď zacítilo večeru. 4 Akonáhle sa turistka vrátila z dovolenky, porozprávala svojim priateľom všetky krásne zážitky zo Švédska. 5 Domovník sa pozrel na kanalizáciu hneď, ako opravil zámok. 6 Veterinár operoval hneď, ako chorú mačku priviezli. 7 V okamihu, keď sa otvoria dvere, sa budete môcť opäť dostať dnu. 8 K preťaženiu rozvodnej siete môže dôjsť hneď, ako si všetci zapnú klimatizáciu. 9 Akonáhle zbadal krv na stole, bolo otcovi jasné, že sa stalo niečo strašné. 10 Výbor bude mať ďalšie otázky, akonáhle si členovia preštudujú zmluvu a prílohy. 11 V okamihu, keď si podnikateľ zaplatí dane, budú jeho účty rozmrazené. 12 Akonáhle sa preteky skončia, pôjdu vodiči každý svojou cestou. 13 Vedúci oddelenia bude informovať zamestnancov hneď, ako sa dozvie niečo nové. 14 Teplé deky sa rozdávali hneď, ako prišli skauti do tábora. 15 Akonáhle mi zubár opraví protézu, budem môcť opäť jesť všetko možné.

6.6 The instant that

The subordinating conjunction *the instant (that)* is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction states that an action or event occurs **at the same time or immediately after** another action or event (Synonyms: *when, immediately after, as soon as*).
 - *The suspect will be taken into custody the instant (that) he's released from prison.*
Podozrivého vezmú do väzby v okamihu, keď ho prepustia z väzenia.
 - *The instant (that) you break company rules and regulation, you'll be fired for sure.*
Akonáhle zamestnanec poruší pravidlá a smernice spoločnosti, iste ho prepustia.

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *The lawyer is going to file charges against our client the instant (that) he has enough evidence to have him convicted.*
Advokát sa chystá podať žalobu na nášho klienta v okamihu, keď bude mať dostatok dôkazov na to, aby ho uznali vinným.
- *The instant (that) the farmer buys more livestock, he will be able to increase his profits.*
Akonáhle farmár kúpi viac dobytku, podarí sa mu zvýšiť svoj zisk.

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *the instant (that)* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *The merger should be announced publicly the instant (that) the CEO has returned from his business trip to Moscow.*
Fúziu by mali verejne oznámiť hneď, ako sa generálny riaditeľ vráti zo služobnej cesty do Moskvy.

- **The instant (that)** you have signed the contract, you will lose your control over the company.
V momente, keď podpíšete túto zmluvu, stratíte kontrolu nad spoločnosťou.

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

The same meaning as the one expressed by the phrase *the instant (that)* is also conveyed by the marginal subordinators *the moment (that)* and *the second (that)*. There is, in fact, no difference in meaning between the three set phrases at all.

Exercise 324: Insert the conjunction *the instant that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The mountain rescue service staff made their way to the mountain top they learnt about the young boy's disappearance. 2 The chopper went down the shelling began. 3 The beauty contest ended one of the jury took out a gun and started shooting into the crowd. 4 The police had arrived at the crime scene, they started looking for the murder weapon. 5 Jo will take over for Mr Simmons she's come back from Greece. 6 The lift got stuck it reached the tenth floor. 7 One of the masked robbers was recognised by his family the CTV images were broadcast on the night news. 8 The video was uploaded to YouTube, it was viewed by about six hundred people. 9 The witness had spoken to the investigators, she was shot dead in front of the precinct. 10 The supermarket got held up it opened on Thursday morning. 11 The MPs want to reduce government spending by 2.1 per cent the economy starts to recuperate. 12 The school went to a lockdown the shooting began. 13 The show got on the road, people started to cheer for the artists. 14 Mother will talk to you she comes home from work. 15 The news about the CEO's terminal cancer became public knowledge, everybody started to pity the poor guy.

Exercise 325: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *the instant that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 A huge crowd of shoppers started flooding the store the second it opened for business.

A huge crowd of shoppers _____.

2 As soon as the the book came out, it got sold out in less than an hour.

The book _____.

3 I will tell you everything I learnt when we meet again, Sarah.

I will tell _____.

4 The second the burning bus crashed into a tree, it came to a sudden halt and the passengers started jumping out of the windows and ran away as fast as they could.

_____ as fast as they could.

5 After the harvesters were damaged in a fire, the farmer could not carry on with his work.

The farmer _____.

6 The car manufacturer went bust shortly after it started cooperating with Marx & Co Ltd.

- _____ it went bust.
- 7 The factory can be sold at a high price the moment it pays most of its debts.
The factory _____.
- 8 The second Ms Tyson got promoted, she started to look down on her former friends.
Ms Tyson started _____.
- 9 The straw will lose its market value when it gets wet in the approaching storm.
The straw _____.
- 10 When I told my co-worker she was retarded, I knew things would never be the same again between the two of us.
I knew _____.

Exercise 326: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

- 1 Just make sure to sell the estate the instant you've gained ownership of the lot. **as soon as**
Just make sure _____.
- 2 The instant the gas worker lit his cigarette, the whole place burst into flames. **the second**
_____ burst into flames.
- 3 The contract may be renewed the instant the supplier needs more spare parts. **when**
The contract _____.
- 4 The chandeliers will be cleaned the instant the landlord tells the chambermaids to do so. **the moment**
_____ will do so.
- 5 The instant you overdress, you're bound to get hot and sweaty. **when**
_____ hot and sweaty.
- 6 The instant I saw that young girl over there will become a famous fashion model one day. **the minute**
_____ one day.
- 7 The conference hall will be refurbished the instant the CFO has approved our budget. **as soon as**
_____ will be refurbished.
- 8 The instant the parrot flew out of its cage, it made its way straight to the window and out to freedom. **after**
_____ out to freedom.
- 9 The contraband was stolen from the police station the instant the officers left it unguarded. **immediately after**
The contraband _____.
- 10 The instant the judge pronounced the defendant guilty, she was taken to prison. **shortly after**
_____ taken to prison.

Exercise 327: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 V okamihu, keď zbúrajú bytovku, budú z nájomníkov bezdomovci. 2 Hneď, ako si dievčatko zavrelo oči, zaspalo. 3 Poľovník zastrelil jeleňa v momente, keď vystrelil prvú ranu. 4 Akonáhle sa cisternová loď potopila, sa v blízkosti pobrežia vytvorila obrovská ropná škvrna. 5 Skrýša zločincov sa hemžila agentami FBI hneď, ako donútili svedka povedať im, kde sa nachádzala. 6 Vyšetrovateľ sa s väzňom porozpráva hneď, ako skončí s týmto. 7 V okamihu, keď pristálo mimozemské lietadlo pred našou inštitúciou, ho ochranka obkľúčila. 8 Pamäť môžeš nadobro stratiť v okamihu, keď vypiješ veľmi silný alkoholický nápoj. 9 Myš prestala fungovať v okamihu, keď nám chcela asistentka ukázať najnovší koncept masovej výroby v našej novej továrni. 10 Akonáhle sa prezident rozhodol napadnúť susednú krajinu, si podpísal rozsudok smrti. 11 V okamihu, keď polievka vychladla, ju kuchár vložil do mikrovlnky a trochu ju zohrial. 12 Celú oblasť je potrebné odlesniť, akonáhle bude hotová cesta. 13 Hneď, ako sa prednášky skončia, požiadame študentov, aby zložili krátku skúšku. 14 Maliarove diela sa možno budú predávať za vysokú cenu, akonáhle zomrie. 15 Akonáhle sprievodní speváci opustili javisko, zostala tam speváčka úplne sama.

6.7 The second that

The subordinating conjunction **the second (that)** is used in the following way:

- 1 The conjunction states that an action or event occurs **at the same time or immediately after** another action or event (Synonyms: *when, immediately after, as soon as*).
 - *A new agreement was reached **the second (that)** one of our associates proposed to lower the price by 0.8 per cent.*
*Novú dohodu sme uzavreli **hneď, ako** jeden z našich spoločníkov navrhol znížiť cenu o 0,8 %.*
 - ***The second (that)** an applicant comes in through this door, I want you to start talking Spanish as fast as possible, Fred.*
***Akonáhle** prekróčí prah týchto dverí uchádzač, chcem, aby si začal hovoriť po španielsky čo najrýchlejšie, Fred.*

Language Note 1:

Present tenses are commonly substituted for *will* and *shall* in the vast majority of temporal subordinate clauses to refer to future time. This is due to the fact that the subordinator makes the order of events clear, and there is no need for a further indicator of sequence or order.

- *The software will freeze **the second (that)** you launch the update.*
*Softvér zamrzne **v okamihu, keď** spustíš aktualizáciu.*
- ***The second (that)** I see the manager, I will give you a call, Carol.*
*Karolína, **akonáhle** uvidím manažéra, hneď ťa zavolám.*

Language Note 2:

Perfect tenses are often used with the subordinator *the second (that)* to make clear that one action or event is done or completed before another starts.

- *The winners of the competition will be made public on our website **the second (that)** we have received the results.*
*Víťazi súťaže budú zverejnení na našej webovej stránke **v okamihu, keď** dostaneme výsledky.*
- ***The second (that)** the bomb has exploded, dozens of people started running around in panic.*
***Akonáhle** bomba vybuchla, desiatky ľudí začalo pobehovať sem a tam v panike.*

This use is more common in British than American English, especially when a speaker or writer wants to emphasise the idea of completion.

Language Note 3:

The same meaning as the one expressed by the phrase *the second (that)* is also conveyed by the marginal subordinators *the instant (that)* and *the moment (that)*. There is, in fact, no difference in meaning between the three set phrases at all.

Exercise 328: Insert the conjunction *the second that* in the correct places in the sentences.

1 The killer's objective changed he learnt he wouldn't be paid for his work. 2 Jack's poems became famous he published his first one online. 3 I've turned my back on the class, the children started talking to each other. 4 The theatre shall be moved to a different location suitable premises have been found. 5 The power cord needs to be swapped we receive new supplies. 6 The pen ran out of ink my supervisor wanted to jot something down. 7 You will receive the envelope it arrives at the reception. 8 the robbers broke into the facility, a loud alarm went off. 9 Kate would like to move to London) she's finished her university studies. 10 the attorney general is done with the defendant, he'll be no more than a discredited former big shot. 11 The dolphin swam away to freedom he broke loose. 12 The sun started to warm the earth it went up again. 13 I suppose my luggage got lost I handed it over to a guy at the airport. 14 the mayor picked up the phone, a bomb in his car went off. 15 the deal is off, our biggest competitor will be able to make the deal himself.

Exercise 329: Rewrite the sentences using the conjunction *the second that* and the words from the sentences given. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The moment the pilots landed the aircraft, a passenger suffered a massive heart attack.

A passenger _____ .

2 As soon as you see Mr Lawrence, tell him that I'll be waiting for him in the conference room.

_____ in the conference room.

3 When you shut down the mainframe computer, make sure to inform our technician.

Make sure _____ .

4 The churchgoers will start coming into the church the instant the priest unlocks the door.

The churchgoers _____ .

5 The minute the parade is over, the traffic situation will improve dramatically.

The traffic situation _____ .

6 The manager will have a word with us shortly after the negotiation is over.

The manager _____ .

7 The instant the staff ran out of paper, the team leader ordered some more.

The team leader _____ .

8 Immediately after the uprising was foiled, the main revolutionaries were hanged.

_____ were hanged.

9 The situation will be assessed one more time the minute the chair is back from the business trip.

The situation _____.

10 The Christmas party will start as soon as the CEO has given his end-of-the-year speech.

The Christmas party _____.

Exercise 330: Rewrite the sentences using the words given and the words from the original sentences. Keep the meaning of the original sentences.

1 The second the outpost was bombarded, the personnel fled to a nearby military facility. **when**

The personnel _____.

2 The soldiers hid in their shelters the second the enemy shelling began. **as soon as**

The soldiers _____.

3 The ceiling collapsed the second the earthquake started. **shortly after**

_____ collapsed.

4 The second the old geezer bent down to pick up the penny, his back gave a queer sound and he could not stand up straight again. **the moment**

_____ stand up straight again.

5 The club owner locked up the second the last guests left. **immediately after**

The club owner _____.

6 The second the horn sounded, a group of armed robbers burst into the medieval town. **the instant**

A group of armed robbers _____.

7 The long-lost pyramid will be explored the second the archaeologists put enough money together to fund their trip. **as soon as**

The long-lost pyramid _____.

8 The treasure was discovered the second the tomb was opened. **just as**

The treasure _____.

9 The second the governor increased the people's taxes, the villagers were in uproar. **the moment**

The villagers _____.

10 The second the inspector went over the evidence, he knew a woman must have committed the horrific murder. **the minute**

_____ the horrific murder.

Exercise 331: Translate the sentences from Slovak into English.

1 Akonáhle škôlku zatvorili pre zdravotné problémy, rodičia nemali kam dať svoje deti počas dňa. 2

Hneď, ako znovu urobíš takú vážnu chybu, ťa iste prepustia. 3 K znečisteniu studne muselo dôjsť

v okamihu, keď sa do nej náhodou vliala toxická voda. 4 Generátor sa pokazil v okamihu, keď boli

chirurgovia v strede náročnej operácie. 5 Akonáhle bola repa dost' veľká na to, aby dosiahla rekord, ju pestovateľ niekoľkokrát odfotil a fotky poslal špeciálnemu výboru. 6 Akonáhle bola káva hotová, si rodina sadla ku kuchynskému stolu a užívala si svojho voľna. 7 Ostrostrelec začal utekať z miesta činu hneď, ako vystrelil osudnú ranu. 8 Kostol sa bude renovovať v okamihu, keď kňaz nájde niekoho, kto bude dost' štedrý na to, aby zaplatil faktúru. 9 Generála oslobodia hneď, ako bude plukovník svedčiť v jeho prospech. 10 Voľného času budeme mať viac než dost', akonáhle nás prepustia. 11 Akonáhle rúrka praskla, začalo sa do kuchyne liať obrovské množstvo vody. 12 V momente, keď strom vyrúbali, sa mohlo začať so stavebnými prácami. 13 Veterinár bude majiteľov zvieratka informovať hneď, ako sa operácia skončí. 14 Lietadlo muselo núdzovo pristáť, akonáhle jeden z jeho motorov začal horieť. 15 V momente, keď Anička dovečeria, pôjde okamžite do postele.

KEY

Exercise 1:

1 Mr **and** Mrs Davidson got married in 2013. 2 The cleaning lady is doing the third **and** fourth floor this week. 3 All the guests spent the whole night dancing **and** drinking. 4 My girlfriend makes some sandwiches **and** I get the drinks. 5 The up-and-coming athlete finished his muscle training **and** went to have a shower. 6 Can you try **and** find out whether one Mr Balmer has already signed up, Calvin? 7 Jo will go **and** see if there are still some free seats at the front. 8 Come in **and** have a beer, Dave. 9 Most young children cry wolf all the time **and** then it's quite hard to believe them even when they're telling the truth. 10 The siege seems to be getting more **and** more tighter. 11 The submarine fleet has been in operation for decades **and** decades now. 12 How much is sixty-eight **and** forty-two? 13 The brand new tablet will cost you seven hundred **and** fifty-six bucks. 14 So far, the bikers are entering the third part of the contest **and** there's only five of them left. 15 I suppose Mike is trying **and** trying but he doesn't seem to be able to get the grasp of chemistry at all.

Exercise 2:

1 loves ice-cream and chocolate 2 some beautiful paintings on display here and we should have a look at the gallery too 3 talk and talk, but nobody's listening to them, are they 4 of twenty and thirty-six 5 is getting more and more tired by the minute 6 finished his speech. Then, the audience clapped their hands and he left 7 and see us on Saturday night, Clara 8 carry the heavy bags and the secretary takes the basket over there 9 is answering the phone and her colleague is taking notes for the COO 10 on the patient and Dr Simmons and Dr Rotlage will assist him

Exercise 3:

1 moreover, she can type really fast 2 my left canine tooth as well as one of the teeth at the back 3 and more stubborn 4 to see for yourself what's going on around here 5 and her boyfriend cleans up the kitchen 6 is watering the flowers whilst his apprentice mows the garden 7 consequently the judge does not believe a single word the governor says 8 to look up the strange word in a good dictionary 9 in the UK as well as the people in the US speak English 10 plus forty makes a hundred

Exercise 4:

1 The Pyramid of Giza and the Taj Mahal in India are the two wonders of the ancient world I definitely want to see. 2 Building houses near dams and rivers sounds like the most foolish thing I've ever heard. 3 Richard takes care of marketing and Martin is responsible for accounting. 4 The police officers are going to try hard and track down the stolen jewellery asap. 5 The newly appointed CEO went out for lunch and his colleagues stayed behind and went on working. 6 I'll clean up the living room and my sister the kitchen. 7 Come and see us in Madrid. 8 Ten and ten is twenty. 9 I paid a thousand five hundred and twenty-eight euros for the watch. 10 It took people years and years to repair their flats and houses after the devastating typhoon. 11 The project manager did not expect such high costs and now he's six thousand eight hundred and twenty euros short of completing the project. 12 We work and work and still have little money. 13 Buying a new hall will require money and more money. 14 A board member stood up and left the conference room. 15 The nanny cooked for the children, she read them fairy tales and she even watched them at night while their parents went out to parties.

Exercise 5:

1 You have improved your speaking skills significantly, Martin, **but** there's still loads of things you need to learn before you can sit for your oral CAE exam. 2 Honestly, I've got no idea what's going to happen, **but** we are to find out soon enough. 3 This is not Mr Charleston **but** Mr Davies. 4 Excuse me **but** where's the men's room? 5 It was a difficult procedure **but** I don't want to bother you with all the details. 6 The match was good, **but** not that good. 7 I can understand your disappointment. **But** armed assault? 8 Call me old-fashioned, **but** I still like to read books in the evenings. 9 The old geezer does nothing **but** grumble all day long. 10 I'm sorry, Dr Clark, **but** would you mind pointing me to the right direction? 11 There is **but** one man who can work under such difficult conditions. 12 The management are going to sell the western division. **But** why? 13 I haven't met anyone **but** Ms Thomson yet. 14 The money is going to be transferred to your account on Monday, **but** we can discuss the details later. 15

Jo is sitting somewhere around here, **but** I don't seem to remember where exactly.

Exercise 6:

1 almost time to get the show on the road but I can't see the special guest 2 were rehearsing for tonight's performance but the main actress seemed sick 3 but a few things I need to share with your brother in private 4 you can't do when you set your mind on it but becoming the US president 5 but how do I get to the train station 6 was small but powerful 7 but all the exits were locked, and thus the guests had no chance of escaping the fire 8 a simple but effective way of recycling plastic bottles 9 is going to be pulled down next month. But why (on earth) should they be doing it 10 but guess what the mysterious poet was trying to say here

Exercise 7:

1 I have spent a whole week in this tropical paradise; however, they still have four days left 2 ignorance that the biggest mistakes are made, not in haste 3 need just a little more time to complete their project 4 is real good, yet not that good 5 only a mere estimate, yet I believe the real figures will not be much different 6 alternative just hitting the books and cramming and cramming 7 a difficult negotiation. However, I don't want to discourage you, Dave 8 does nothing but play (and play) 9 is highly gifted, yet so lazy to practise 10 needs no more than a few cents to get himself something warm for dinner 11 seems happy, yet sad at the same time

Exercise 8:

1 The data seems to be correct but it should be checked nonetheless. 2 There are but a few players who possess such a high potential as Marc. 3 Our new marketing manager is hard-working, but not very imaginative. 4 The retreat of enemy troops was not the achievement of some individuals but the whole government. 5 The flat is beautiful and spacious, but the rent is too expensive for us. 6 Excuse me but where exactly are we? 7 I'm sorry but I'm going to be away in Russia next month. 8 The pilot decided to decrease the speed. But why? 9 The journalists entered the room, but there was nobody waiting for them. 10 There is nobody but the president and his advisor in the conference room. 11 It is a simple but risky procedure. 12 But you promised to come tomorrow. 13 The young woman talking to the ambassador right now is not an actress but a painter. 14 At first, the scientists claimed that it would take them two years at least to develop the new cure, but then they managed to do the trick within a single year. 15 There were but a few cases of hemorrhagic fever registered in Kenia in the past five months.

Exercise 9:

1 We need a few new workers **or** better equipment at least. 2 Do you take three **or** four scoops? 3 The manager is at the office **or** in the sauna. 4 Would he like to learn Japanese **or** Swedish? 5 The scientist had nothing but bad luck this year, **or** do you think otherwise? 6 The professor had nothing to eat **or** drink the whole morning. 7 Cars need to be serviced **or** checked at least every six **or** seven thousand kilometres. 8 The fighter ought to face the challenger at once, **or** else she might lose her reputation for good. 9 The chief financial officer, **or** CFO, is responsible for the whole financial structure of a firm. 10 The student obviously doesn't have a single clue what he's talking about, **or** he wouldn't have said such a silly thing. 11 The spies must have got cut off, **or** they would have contacted us already. 12 The butcher needs some help in the shop, **or** he will get sick from all the work. 13 This seems to be a very interesting hypothesis, **or** rather a very interesting point. 14 The travellers need to hit the road whether it rains **or** snows. 15 The inspector is coming tomorrow **or** the day after tomorrow.

Exercise 10:

1 walls need to be erected by the end of the week or we might all lose our jobs 2 , or ATM, is a machine which you can use to withdraw money from your bank account 3 a copy of the document. This may take a minute or two 4 or the washing-up 5 doesn't understand the guy's Chinese, or he would have said something already 6 is boring or even pitiful / is boring or rather pitiful 7 or Ben for friends 8 or I will pay you back 9 or we can't hear you 10 to address the social issue right away, or (else) it will be too late

Exercise 11:

1 to work faster, or he'll lose his job 2 you, otherwise I will tell mom / you. Otherwise, I will tell mom 3 in no time that the students come out 4 several protectors, aka guardians, who will keep an eye on the villages 5 pulling your weight now, or else 6 Otherwise, the wrestler will beat the crap out of you 7 or I can't tell you the secret 8 from my little sister or I will hurt you 9 we do something right now or the dam will break / we do something right now or the dam breaks 10 is at the restaurant or he might be with his group already

Exercise 12:

1 I'll take an apple or a peach. 2 Is this supposed to be an issue or a solution? 3 The system analyst is makes calls or delivers trainings. 4 Will you share with me or shall I go and tell Mom? 5 The company has had nothing but bad luck recently. 6 Our English teacher never gave us a helping hand or advice. 7 You should drink two or three litres of water every day. 8 The terrorists must surrender at once or they will be shot dead. 9 Something must have happened on the way, or they would have come already. 10 The staff will work hard or they won't get their Christmas bonus. 11 The click-through rate, or CTR, is an important index for us. 12 The children are on their way from school or they have just come home. 13 Will you give us a hand, or will you just continue chatting? 14 Was the night sky bright or cloudy last night? 15 We should invest the winnings or divide it between family and close friends.

Exercise 13:

1 My granddaughter seldom speaks about her father, **nor** does she often mention her brother. 2 Matt's babysitter doesn't like the job much, **nor** has she got a good relationship with the children. 3 The pup has little to eat in the mornings, **nor** does it seem to want much. 4 The creditor did not get her money, **nor** did he ask for it. 5 The debtor didn't pay Mr Kingsley back last week, **nor** yesterday. 6 Rarely do the pirates venture out into these seas, **nor** do they often look for ships around here. 7 The exchange student from Africa could not understand what we said, **nor** could she speak a word English. 8 Most fishermen did not sail out yesterday, **nor** will they do so today. 9 Those lazy students of mine hardly ever do their homework, **nor** do they prepare their presentations for culture classes. 10 The PM does not want to resign from office, **nor** is there a reason for him to do so. 11 I have no idea what she wants us to do. – **Nor** do I. 12 Greg doesn't pull his weight in the office at all. – **Nor** does the new CAO. 13 Mr Luke has no dogs **nor** cats. 14 The clergyman seldom preaches all alone, **nor** does he take care of the church by himself. 15 When we started the seminar, we didn't have a break for over two hours, **nor** did we get any time off to catch our breath.

Exercise 14:

1 nor any audio files on the website / on the website, nor any audio files 2 ask for any collateral, nor did she check the applicant's credentials 3 guarantee you a high salary, nor does having two or three jobs 4 anymore. – Nor do we 5 to keep the company in the black, nor does he offer high quality customer care 6 original nor does it seem to be innovative 7, nor should he act on his own 8 to his customers, nor does he switch on the radio 9 crooked, nor does he take his work lightly 10 previous experience running a country, nor does he know anything about politics or economics

Exercise 15:

1 barely see with her glasses and she can't hear very well anymore either 2 Well, nor can a penguin 3 Neither am I keen on getting to know him now 4 won't pay off, nor should you be stealing from your boss or colleagues 5, nor has he taken a look at the pipes 6 support your bill and I won't either 7 the executive's handwriting, neither can she type properly 8 stuff at high prices and the greengrocer doesn't either 9 to pass her final exams and neither is she into studying 10 to put the slides together. Nor do I

Exercise 16:

1 Nor can Sam. 2 Nor does the teacher. 3 Nor are their best friends. 4 Nor is the house. 5 Nor should her assistant. 6 Nor would I. 7 Nor do the brown shirts. 8 Nor could the printer. 9 Nor has the foreman. 10 Nor did his parents. 11 Nor will the cleaning lady. 12 Nor has the staircase. 13 Nor shall I. 14 Nor is the quality manager. 15 Nor are the plants. 16 Nor would

the terrorist. 17 Nor was I.

Exercise 17:

1 The firefighters were not in much of a hurry, nor did they have a reason to be. 2 My wife can't ski, nor does she want to learn to do so. 3 Our son never took a liking to computer games, nor does he want to start playing any now that he's grown up. 4 The insignia is not readable, nor is it important. 5 Marc can't swim. Nor can I. 6 The students rarely use scissors in our classes, nor do we want them to. 7 No way am I going to help you, nor will I give you any advice. 8 The baker doesn't earn a lot of money. Nor do we. 9 The new computer is not very fast, nor does it have a big RAM. 10 The witness barely saw the robber, nor can he describe him. 11 We didn't hear what the CEO told us, nor were we interested in it. 12 The guests did not have a good time, nor was the food very tasty. 13 I don't drink vodka. – Nor do I. 14 The interpreter doesn't speak Finnish nor Hungarian. 15 The assailant wasn't trying to steal the woman's purse, nor did he want to hurt her.

Exercise 18:

1 The skyscraper looks really futuristic, **yet** some people think it doesn't fit in with the rest of the city. 2 Jane's smartphone is a little old **yet** extremely fast. 3 The book you recommended seemed a bit dull at first, **yet** it's proven to be a real blast after the first chapter. 4 The equipment looks a bit outdated, **yet** it's still in working order. 5 The door was closed, **yet** we could hear everything the managers were arguing about. 6 The final exam was really tough, **yet** the teacher was surprisingly generous with the points. 7 Mr and Mrs Hudmat decided to spend their honeymoon in Wisconsin, **yet** they wanted to fly to Rome. 8 George did not prepare anything for his presentation, and **yet** he scored a B. 9 It's freezing outside, **yet** the children don't want to come inside yet. 10 All the teachers were well aware of the fact that Susan was playing truant, **yet** none of them actually did something about it. 11 The cleaning lady opened the door, **yet** there was nobody there. 12 I know you were really looking forward to the skiing trip, **yet** you'll have to wait for the next one, darling. 13 The technician was very upset, **yet** he did not say a single word. 14 The package is really bulky, **yet** Simon doesn't seem to need help with it at all. 15 The woman was much weaker than the assailant, and **yet** she managed to get away from him.

Exercise 19:

1 Earth, yet it doesn't send any data to the research centre anymore 2 as usual, yet they must have been upset by something as they were a bit distressed 3 has never lived in the countryside, yet his depiction of life in the countryside is remarkably accurate and objective 4 may seem nice and gentle, yet he's one heck of a lawyer 5 doesn't drive fast, yet the elderly lady seems to be afraid of driving as such 6 hard, yet he could not surpass his teacher 7 yet responsible is the COO's assistant 8 bleak, yet the world's not coming to its end just now 9, yet the teachers don't want to go back to work 10 cracked a great joke, yet nobody laughed

Exercise 20:

1 tastes sour although it's not stale at all 2 don't earn much, but they've got little work to do all day long 3 isn't large; still, it's seldom full 4 were electrocuted in the good old days; nonetheless, there were still people who did take their chance and killed, smuggled and broke the law 5 though the marketing blitz may have been well prepared, it did not boost the sales much 6 Ema at all; however, he's willing to marry her for the sake of their boy 7 are pretty mean, but their parents don't say a single word to them 8 was hired despite the fact that she can't even switch on a computer 9 insists on quitting his job in spite of the fact that he hasn't got any other offers yet 10 Nevertheless, it doesn't have a single scratch

Exercise 21:

1 The ball bounced back, yet the player did not catch it. 2 The slide was cold, yet the schoolchildren went it down anyway. 3 The maths contest is always challenging, yet our pupils always manage to rank among the top three. 4 My grandma's wooden wardrobe was old, yet sturdy. 5 The power of the crystal ball is great, yet reading the future from the palm is more accurate. 6 Daniela's new novel is excellent yet too romantic. 7 The heroine was brave yet not very ingenious. 8 The singer's voice is sweet yet not very strong. 9 The storm wasn't calming down, yet the sailors had to set sail. 10 The

narrative is written in a very detailed way, yet it reads easily and quickly. 11 The newsagent's stands right in the center, yet the profit from the sales is low. 12 The student was answering the questions promptly yet evasively. 13 The teacher did not have high demands, yet a lot of students did not pass their final exam. 14 The park alley is beautiful in summer, yet few people actually go there. 15 The bruise was big, yet not very painful.

Exercise 22:

1 You seem to be rather snowed under, **so** I won't disturb you anymore. 2 The venue of the meeting is still kept a secret no one can interfere with the preparations. 3 **So**, you are the damn rascal who broke into my hut! 4 The waitress was looking quite distressed, **so** naturally I asked her what was wrong. 5 **So**, there we were staring at each other in surprise. 6 Most people wouldn't pay that much money for a simple dual-core smartphone, **so** the producer had to lower the price a lot. 7 **So** the captain goes below deck and then there's this huge explosion. 8 The shopkeeper was speechless, **so** I asked his assistant what we should do. 9 The children were all very quiet **so** that they could not be found easily. 10 Your desk should be dark brown **so** that it fits in with the rest of the furniture. 11 **So**, how do you suggest we solve the case? 12 **So**, here we go again, facing the very same issues as last Christmas. 13 The clients' testimony hasn't convinced anybody, **so** the defendant may still have to go to jail. 14 The husband and wife bought the tickets in secret **so** that nobody knew they were planning a holiday. 15 **So**, where do you want us to put down the sofa?

Exercise 23:

1 **so** I answered it 2 their holidays, **so** they didn't want to go back to school 3 **so** while making the film, **so** he wants it to be real successful 4 in Madrid next year, **so** she's cramming Spanish these days a lot 5 under those trees over there **so** (that) the sun doesn't shine straight on it all day long 6 **So**, where did you buy the lamp once again, Helen 7 **So**, have you got the car keys or have you lost them again 8 **So**, I can't really explain what has just happened, but I'm dead certain it was no aliens 9 his lawyer, **so** I demand that I be allowed to speak with him right now 10 really hard for all my exams **so** (that) I could continue my studies at university afterwards

Exercise 24:

1 is broken, and thus you won't be able to play with it anymore 2 Therefore, we called the janitor 3 Consequently, he committed suicide a month after her death 4 Right, how should we break the news to the grandmother 5 Well, is this the best you can do in such a long time 6 locked the cell to prevent the criminal from escaping 7 really fast to avoid being noticed when stealing in a crowd 8 work early tonight because they want to watch the football match 9 since he didn't want the children to feel so depressed all the time 10 he loved as he wanted them to live on

Exercise 25:

1 The couple started arguing, **so** their friends left them alone. 2 The teacher's still got to correct loads of essays, **so** he'll be staying late at school today. 3 The freedom fighters hid their weapons in the high grass and the bushes **so** (that) they would surprise their enemies. 4 The scientist's eyes were sore, **so** he switched off the computer and put a lukewarm cloth on them. 5 The computer was obviously overheating, **so** the staff switched it off. 6 **So**, we were looking at each other waiting for the next train to arrive. 7 **So**, the palace was built in 1750? 8 **So** this is what you are doing when your parents are not at home. 9 I'll have one more bread and butter **so** (that) I'm not hungry on the way. 10 **So**, we'll launch the sales on 5 March and the PR campaign as early as in two weeks. 11 **So**, where do you keep the good stuff? 12 **So** the police officers were just trying to find out what you knew? 13 We won't be long, **so** you can leave the engine running. 14 The microscope is broken, **so** there's not much you'll see. 15 **So**, when does the second term start?

Exercise 26:

1 The waiter was waiting for the drinks at the bar, **for** he wanted to make a few quick rounds. 2 Laura had been waiting for the guy for over an hour, **for** she could not believe he'd have dumped her just like that. 3 The bees haven't left the hive yet, **for** it's still too cold for them to fly outside. 4 My aunt's holiday home is really awesome, **for** it's got all kinds of modern facilities inside. 5 The rookery looks

deserted, **for** the birds have not returned there for years now. 6 The sportsmen are a little cold, **for** they are not used to such severe weather conditions. 7 The electrician put on some rubber gloves before he started working on the wires, **for** he did not want to run the risk of getting electrocuted. 8 The manager was growing impatient, **for** she had been waiting for well over an hour. 9 The talented painter burned his works, **for** he thought they were not worth a single penny. 10 The king's guards were watching the ruler carefully, **for** he had received a few death threats recently. 11 Jack's grandparents don't want to move to the city, **for** they have spent their whole lives in the countryside. 12 Mr Newman won't buy a new computer, **for** he swears by the one he's got now. 13 The woodpecker will make that awful sound every morning, **for** it's got a nest somewhere around here. 14 The analyst won't sign the papers, **for** he didn't participate in the project. 15 The project shouldn't be cancelled, **for** it may yield a great profit.

Exercise 27:

1 rather impatient, **for** the entrepreneur promised to pay his debts by March 2 from these two farms ought to be destroyed at once, **for** they are all infected with a rare yet dangerous bacteria 3 imperfect, **for** the experiment didn't work as we had expected 4 was feeling uneasy, **for** the operation was proceeding very slowly 5 closed his shop a bit early yesterday, **for** he wanted to get his wife a little surprise 6 had to be treated with very strong antibiotics, **for** he was very sick 7 had to sell their land and farm too, **for** they had run / ran out of money 8 will turn out to be a major bestseller, **for** it's got a great plot 9 bribed her teachers, **for** otherwise she'd have failed her final exams 10 must have been very sharp, **for** it cut through the wooden chair as if it had been paper

Exercise 28:

1 congratulate you as you've done a great deal for our little village 2 crashed since both its engines stopped working at the same time 3 smells funny because it's gone sour 4 are losing the battle, so he's really mad 5 was feeling sick as a dog today; consequently, he left work early 6 our mountain cottage next week; as a result, this is the last time I have brought you here 7 is short of breath again because he's got a heart disease 8 is really overwhelming nowadays since nobody wants to end up without a job after finishing their studies 9 to end in a huge fiasco as neither of the companies has adequate liquidity to actually make it work 10 the country given (the fact) that he was being pursued by the police

Exercise 29:

1 The crimson rose withered, **for** nobody (had) watered / had been watering it. 2 Nobody was hurt or killed in the hurricane, **for** the people in this region have an excellent alarm system. 3 The analyst is going to be promoted next month, **for** he always achieves excellent results. 4 The computer expert founded his own company last year, **for** he didn't want to work for others anymore. 5 It's unbelievably cold in the living room, **for** Grandpa set the air conditioning to 30 degrees. 6 The athlete swam almost seven kilometres an hour, **for** the current was very strong then. 7 The children didn't like their presents much, **for** they got clothes to a great extent. 8 Castles were built on high rocks, **for** the enemy had a hard time conquering them then. 9 The students were slowly starting to yawn, **for** it was rather late already. 10 The trees will have to be cut down, **for** this is the spot for the highway. 11 The fighters were training hard all year long, **for** every single one of them wanted to become the champ. 12 The bus driver braked sharply, **for** the engine started smoking. 13 The post office is closed now, **for** it's X-mas time. 14 The questionnaire is really long, **for** it includes over fifty questions. 15 The new line of tablet computers is very pricey, **for** the devices include the latest processor.

Exercise 30:

1 D 2 B / G 3 F 4 C 5 A 6 B 7 D 8 A 9 B 10 A 11 E 12 C 13 A 14 G
15 F 16 B 17 B / G 18 F 19 E 20 D

Exercise 31:

1 but 2 yet / but 3 because 4 or 5 and 6 nor 7 for 8 so 9 so 10 nor 11 for 12 and 13 but 14 yet 15 or 16 nor 17 so 18 nor 19 for 20 yet

Exercise 32:

1 the rabbit disappear and he (also) caused the girl float in the air 2 are looking good, but I'm still quite doubtful about the outcome 3 their IDs by email or fax them to the HQ 4 was extremely careful on the slope, yet he broke his leg going down 5 our meeting, for he's got to take care of his daughter 6 nor texted us yet 7 was late, so we didn't catch the flight to Rome 8 a little late, for he's been snowed under for quite a while 9 under reconstruction, yet the classes are still on 10 forgot her lines and panicked and ran off the stage

Exercise 33:

1 the broken pipes. Consequently, he'll be working overtime tonight 2 cannot rule the world. Neither can he be stronger than machines 3 collapsed since the earthquake was extremely strong 4 is just about to go bust but nobody seems to care 5 will shoot if you don't give me the money 6 enterprise sounds like a good investment for some; however, I'm not sure about us 7 broke down and subsequently it said busy 8 was coerced during the investigation. Still, he did not admit to killing the boy 9 misplaced the gold watch, and thus we spent the whole afternoon looking for it 10 have always been extremely dangerous; nonetheless, they were used on too many an occasion in the past

Exercise 34:

1 and 2 but 3 and 4 so 5 but / yet 6 but / yet 7 nor 8 and 9 for 10 for 11 and / but 12 nor 13 yet / but 14 yet / but 15 so 16 and 17 yet / but 18 and 19 so 20 nor

Exercise 35:

1 **Either** you give us proper equipment **or** we won't be able to deliver the results you expect. 2 Sara's brother **either** sleeps **or** just lies in front of the telly. 3 **Either** you tell us the truth **or** we will leave at once. 4 The COO should visit the HQ **either** on Monday **or** on Tuesday. 5 Mr and Mrs Barkins are going to spend their holiday **either** in Venice **or** Liverpool. 6 The old computer **either** breaks down **or** it's so slow that you can't get anything done. 7 You can **either** purchase our products online **or** visit our local shop. 8 The young author's stories are always **either** witty **or** educational, but never both at the same time. 9 Dr Thelma's assistant is **either** blind **or** she can't read at all. 10 The hard-working carpenter is **either** working in his garage **or** going over the paperwork in the office. 11 The little girl's name's **either** Jane **or** Catherine. 12 **Either** you cooperate with the authorities **or** you go to prison for a very long time. 13 The solicitor was **either** working on a case **or** having a nap. 14 The giant stood **either** in front of **or** next to the church. 15 Travellers can **either** take a taxi **or** go on foot to the airport. It's just ten minutes on foot.

Exercise 36:

1 may be delivered either by ship or by plane 2 in our office are cleaned either on Fridays or Mondays 3 Either the lights are off before leaving the office, or we get into a lot of trouble 4 Either she didn't tell you the truth or you misunderstood something 5 Either you sell your shares now or you risk losing the lot 6 work either during the week or at the weekends 7 Either the students pass their exams now or they'll have to attend summer school 8 may be presented either in Spanish or in English 9 Either you give up your firearm or the police will shoot 10 Either you do your job properly or just go home

Exercise 37:

1 If the gardener doesn't cut the hedge tomorrow, he'll have to wait for two more weeks 2 into stocks and shares. Alternatively, you can put it into a savings account 3 must do his work really well unless he wants to get replaced soon 4 The jumper will put a stamp on your ticket or just check it 5 can blow up or, on the other hand, it can continue existing 6 face our chief interrogator provided you confess to killing the wealthy oil tycoon 7 have got lost. On the other hand, they might have decided to take the longer path 8 will be annihilated providing they don't show more respect to the ruler 9 sank to the bottom of the sea; alternatively, it's still on its way to the US 10 should be delivered today or tomorrow at the latest

Exercise 38:

1 The children will be playing either at the playground or in the sandbox. 2 The young schoolgirl is either on her way to school or she's already sitting in the classroom. 3 Either you reconsider your point of view or you'll have to start looking for a new job. 4 The guitarist plays either at the local club or at various cultural events in our region. 5 Martin goes either to the cinema or to the theatre on Fridays. 6 The valliant knight either faces his antagonist and wins or lays down his life in battle. 7 Our politicians either quarrel or steal from the people. 8 The doctoral student either studied or gave lectures at his university. 9 Either the firefighters put out the fire or the barn will burn to the ground. 10 Either the new software works flawlessly or you can't run it at all. 11 The reporters are either standing in front of the castle gates or in the parking lot. 12 The marketing manager's ideas are either cheesy or too pricey. 13 The workers were forced to use either old tools or tools unfit for their work. 14 Either our plane lands just all right or we will all die a terrible death. 15 It's either very cold or freezing outside.

Exercise 39:

1 The terrible monster killed **both** the villagers **and** the city dwellers. 2 **Both** the planet **and** its moons were destroyed in a cataclysmic explosion two years ago. 3 The strong fighter seems **both** determined to beat the ruling champion **and** to win the prize money. 4 The glasses are suitable for **both** men **and** women. 5 You can find the animals living in **both** Australia **and** the Far East. 6 The graduate's thesis was **both** scientific **and** highly exploratory. 7 **Both** he **and** his younger brother have lived in Morocco. 8 **Both** kangaroos **and** elephants are kept in the local zoo. 9 The chair seemed **both** exasperated **and** thrilled as his proposal was losing support by the minute. 10 **Both** the hardware **and** the software of your device need to be in a perfect condition if you want to use it on a daily basis. 11 Doris has **both** a boyfriend **and** a lover. 12 The economic situation is **both** unstable **and** grim. 13 The blast turned out **both** powerful **and** destructive. 14 Kate's new song sounds **both** depressing **and** childish. 15 Jeremy's brother owns **both** a shoe factory **and** a construction company.

Exercise 40:

1 has both awesome power and great intelligence 2 wants to speak both you, Dave, and Helen 3 Both the paramedics and the ambulance driver died in the same accident 4 Both my grandmother and my great-grandmother used to live in the countryside 5 The mad psycho has both broken out of the psychiatric hospital and injured a doc 6 can play both the violin and the drums perfectly 7 Both James and his little sister have always cherished the memories of their parents 8 consumed both drugs and some poison last night 9 are both immoral and against the law 10 owns both a huge house in Malibu and a holiday home in Nebraska

Exercise 41:

1 external auditors are not only self-centred, but also uncaring 2 we had yesterday tasted salty as well as cold 3 has performed many controversial and also unnecessary surgeries 4 himself a great deal; a mobile phone along with a tablet for the price of a single device 5 new PA is forgetful. On top of that, she's rather lazy, isn't she? 6 are rather keen on finishing their studies and getting a job at the same time 7 is well versed in modern psychology and animation too 8 speaks Greek fluently. In addition, he speaks Hebrew 9 visited Sweden and also Italy during his studies 10 has embezzled a lot of company funds. Moreover, he's framed his colleague for his own actions

Exercise 42:

1 The new smartphone is both sturdy and waterproof. 2 The mechanic works both fast and well. 3 The detective seems eager to both find and arrest the culprit. 4 The lumberjack's hands are both sore and wrinkled. 5 Obese soldiers should both do more exercise and go on more missions. 6 Both junior and senior managers were eagerly waiting for the latest news. 7 Martin's girlfriend is both ingenious and intelligent. 8 The mayor decided to fund both the construction of a new school and the repair works on the hospital. 9 The research team are both well funded and well equipped. 10 The nights are starting to get both dark and cold. 11 Do you think it's possible to both work and study? 12 Both the gardener and the landlady take care of the flowers. 13 The small router is both faster and more reliable than the new one. 14 The kiss felt both insincere and cold. 15 Both the scientists and the professors from our university shared the same opinion on the matter.

Exercise 43:

1 **Neither** the goalkeeper **nor** his team mates knew how to win the match. 2 The chimney sweeper has **neither** his ladder **nor** his other tools on him. 3 The magician is **neither** great **nor** powerful. 4 **Neither** the tiger **nor** the lion could run fast enough to catch the cheetah. 5 Jo is **neither** as skilful **nor** as hard-working as his master. 6 The spokesperson has **neither** confirmed **nor** denied the allegations. 7 Master Brown can **neither** swim **nor** play tennis. 8 The party members seem to be **neither** for **nor** against the bill. 9 **Neither** the bully **nor** his friends wanted to talk to the headmaster. 10 **Neither** the windows **nor** the doors seem to have been locked. 11 There are **neither** knives **nor** other weapons hidden in the hay. 12 **Neither** the taxi driver **nor** the bus driver admitted to causing the accident. 13 **Neither** the highway **nor** the bridge could withstand the power of the earthquake. 14 The first-aid kit contains **neither** any bandages **nor** any medicine. 15 The mistake was **neither** silly **nor** repetitive.

Exercise 44:

1 Neither the machine gun nor the pistols seem to be working 2 can neither play the piano nor sing 3 You should neither speak nor work while eating 4 is neither as old as Tim nor is he as good at multitasking as him 5 were neither for nor against the bill 6 feels neither really wet nor really dry 7 is neither too big nor too bulky 8 neither tastes nor smells chocolatey 9 has neither received an increase in salary nor has he been promoted in the past two years 10 Neither the bread nor the butter seemed fresh

Exercise 45:

1 didn't lose his main actors or his zeal to work hard 2 doesn't produce lollipops or chewing gum anymore either 3 not even the father or the mother, could help their son get on his own feet again 4 didn't find gold or silver in the wreckage of the old ship either 5 believe the news and I didn't want to believe it either 6 and also the landline phones don't seem to be working 7 Nobody wanted to take the responsibility for the agenda 8 wasn't wearing proper clothing and he wasn't speaking the right language either 9 entered the house unobserved 10 is lacking both the funds and the manpower to make the project a success

Exercise 46:

1 The youth of today is neither hard-working nor wise. 2 Neither the Austrian nor the German proposal was to the liking of the MEPs. 3 The brewery owner had neither enough money to pay for the running of the company, nor for his staff's salaries. 4 The printer could neither have been jammed nor broken. 5 The fighter should neither have given up nor retreated. 6 Neither the red nor the blue chair is comfortable to sit in. 7 The GP told the family neither any good nor any bad news. 8 The kitten was neither hungry nor thirsty. 9 There are neither mice nor rats running about our attic. 10 There's neither any jewellery nor any other treasures hidden in the hole. 11 Neither Mr Donaldson nor Ms Market could tell us when the CEO was coming back from the business trip. 12 The terrorists attacked neither the mosque nor the church. 13 The armed forces returned to neither the base nor the battlefield. 14 The soldier's wound has neither healed nor inflamed so far. 15 The ruler asked neither his secretary nor his wife for advice.

Exercise 47:

1 The family seems to be having **not only** financial **but also** interpersonal problems. 2 The musicians **not only** play various instruments, **but also** sing beautifully. 3 **Not only** has the contestant withdrawn from the competition; he's **also** decided never to join similar contests again. 4 The child appears to be **not only** a maths prodigy, **but also** a fantastic sportsman. 5 The dancers **not only** dance during their performances, **but also** sing beautifully. 6 **Not only** did the sore loser insult his opponent, **but she also** spread false rumours about him. 7 **Not only** has the milkman delivered the milk on time, **but he's also** brought us the good news about Mr Strepten. 8 The new secretary can **not only** type well and fast, **but also** write shorthand. 9 **Not only** did the student come late to class, **but he also** forgot to prepare for the exam. 10 Gregory eats **not only** beans, **but also** peas. 11 The candidate complained **not only** about the organisation of the exam, **but also** about the invigilators' attitude. 12 **Not only** did the bank robber disappear into thin air, **but he's also** stolen 5.3 million euros. 13 The entertainer is **not only** funny, **but also** very gifted. 14 **Not only** are my students going to Egypt next month, **but they're also** going to

visit Italy and Greece. 15 Our professor has **not only** a good sense of humour **but also** great brains.

Exercise 48:

1 Not only does the surgeon do excellent work at the local hospital, but he also writes a lot of research papers 2 not only lost his wedding ring last week, but he also forgot about the wedding anniversary 3 Not only couldn't the gardener mow the lawn, but he also couldn't cut the hedge 4 not only has a huge debt to carry on her young shoulders, but she's also got nobody in the whole wide world to look out for her 5 Not only should the boys stay home, but also study hard for their exams 6 not only divine but also magical 7 designs not only campaigns but also new company logos 8 was not only strong but also extremely cold last night 9 is not only sly but also mischievous 10 not only murdered the landlord, but he also stole all the jewellery

Exercise 49:

1 is both super fast and very comfortable 2 seems big as well as quite expensive 3 has lost the support of the managers. Moreover, the vice-president has too 4 works in his own company and moonlights in a bar too 5 teaches at our school and also at a private academy 6 a new sofa. On top of that, they got a big chandelier 7 is fast as well as brand new / is fast and brand new as well 8 he's snowed under and also under a lot of pressure 9 both take care of the poor and help the sick 10 was doing overtime. Furthermore, he was trying to help his colleagues

Exercise 50:

1 The monkeys not only ran around the cage, but they also jumped on the trees. 2 Not only did the landlord insult me, but he also told me off. 3 The students not only passed their exams, but they also passed them with flying colours. 4 The journalists were not only trying to uncover the truth, but also helping the police with the investigation. 5 The car manufacturer has not only lied to us, but he's also ripped us off. 6 Not only have I forgotten my mobile phone at work, but I've also lost my gate keys. 7 Not only was the sun not warming the earth, but it was also not shining. 8 Not only could the firefighters not get the fire under control, but one of their trucks also broke down. 9 The mobile phone operator has not only committed to keeping the service fees at the same level, but he's also introduced new and cheap mobile phones to the market. 10 Not only have you lied to me, but you have also made a false accusation against me. 11 Not only did the window remain open, but you also left the door unlocked. 12 The agents not only caught the perpetrators, but they also caught them red handed. 13 The ants were not only marching at the same pace, but also in a nice formation. 14 Not only did the spectators see nothing of the performance, but they also didn't get any refund on their ticket. 15 The powerful ruler not only does whatever he pleases, but he also doesn't care about his subjects.

Exercise 51:

1 B 2 A 3 D 4 B 5 C 6 B 7 C, D 8 B 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 A 13 B

Exercise 52:

1 D 2 C 3 A, C 4 B 5 A, C 6 D 7 C 8 D 9 A, C 10 B

Exercise 53:

1 has not only a unique system of cataloguing but also very special manners 2 is neither very old nor are there too many entries 3 Both the project and Dr Martin's campaign were huge failures 4 has not only worsened, but it's also left the patient unconscious 5 Either speak up or keep silent altogether 6 may either submit their proposals by email or send a letter to the PA 7 were neither moving nor standing still 8 could either have crushed you or turned you into a frog 9 not only forgot his lines, but he also slipped twice during a single act 10 Both the inspector and his associate are convinced that I killed the sailor

Exercise 54:

1 as well as the factory blew up last night 2 outsmarted the giant. Moreover, he made a monkey out of him 3 must be finished by the end of the month, or else we'll start losing money 4 Both the judge and the jury weren't in the room then 5 could have won the gold medal and a lot of money too

6 in the office unless Henry's in 7 was drunk. Worse even, he was heartbroken too 8 couldn't accept his inheritance and he couldn't decline it either 9 caught a big salmon. In addition, he got a long eel 10 brings joy and happiness to sick little children. Further, he tries to help the real doctors

Exercise 55:

1 have 2 is 3 knows 4 have 5 want 6 has 7 doesn't 8 get 9 are 10 see 11 needs
12 is 13 are 14 has 15 knows

Exercise 56:

1 D 2 I 3 J 4 B 5 F 6 H 7 A 8 G 9 E 10 C

Exercise 57:

1 **After** the successful manufacturer launched his latest tablet, all his competition became green with envy. 2 **After** spending half a day sunbathing, Sarah looks awesome. 3 The carpet was forgotten at the shop **after** Mr Brown put it on the shelf. 4 The door fell off its hinges **after** the angry guy kicked it. 5 The mice were running around the house **after** the tenants had left. 6 The director is going to announce some changes in the department **after** he's returned from the business trip. 7 **After** I read through the instructions on *after*, I didn't have any problems doing this exercise without making a single mistake. 8 **After** sending out the infomail, we received a few queries about the new layout of our website. 9 Do you usually sleep **after** having lunch? 10 **After** coming back to the office, the supervisor found out that half the staff had already gone home. 11 The calculator stopped working **after** the student changed the batteries. 12 **After** removing the cover at the back, the whole cell phone fell apart. 13 **After** licking the envelope, the secretary started feeling a bit dizzy. 14 The complaints resolution officer got fed up with his colleagues **after** handling a nasty complaint. 15 **After** the clown had thrown the cake at them, his assistants ran away quickly.

Exercise 58:

1 After returning to the hotel late last night, the tourists found out it had already been closed for the night. 2 The sailors will spend five days in the harbour after coming back from their voyage. 3 After climbing up to the very top of the mountain, the mountaineers were feeling rather exhausted. 4 Marc had the accident after he had left the dentist's. 5 After playing truant for a week, the lad returned to school today. 6 After breaking the beautiful china vase, the cleaning lady was feeling distressed. 7 Jo decided to do some overtime after her boss gave her a few black looks today. 8 After finishing lunch, the mayor went to a convention. 9 After going over the books, I can honestly say that you are about to face total bankruptcy in a matter of weeks. 10 The house collapsed after last night's heavy rainfall.

Exercise 59:

1 After the maid had cleaned the room, her master returned 2 The accountant switched off his computer after he (had) saved his work / After he (had) saved his work, the accountant switched off his computer / After saving his work, the accountant switched off his computer / After having saved his work, the accountant switched off his computer / The accountant switched off his computer after saving his work / The accountant switched off his computer after having saved his work 3 opened after the guard asked us who we were 4 surrounded the gunman after he fell to the ground 5 went out for a short walk after having prepared the presentation 6 went down to the basement to check the pipes after he had a look at the door 7 finished their business after the police had arrived 8 at the station after the train had left 9 moved in with her daughter after she sold her house 10 turned up the radio after I had answered the phone

Exercise 60:

1 After opening the bottle, use up the product within four days. 2 After the classes were over, the pupils set off for home. 3 Oil prices have risen after the outbreak of a civil war in the country. 4 The grass grew a little after it rained heavily. 5 After the match was over, prizes were awarded to the winners. 6 I expect the project to be ready for implementation after I come back from the conference. 7 After the schoolchildren had done their homework, they watched a film. 8 The doctor was helping a sick old woman after finishing his shift. 9 After many years of poverty, lady luck smiled upon the

villagers at last. 10 The honest finders of the purse got a reward from its owner after they had returned it to his very doorstep. 11 After graduating, my friends found interesting and well-paid jobs. 12 After the footballer headed for the showers, his mobile phone started ringing. 13 After the lumberjack comes home from the woods, he expects his dinner to be waiting for him on the table. 14 After the night had fallen, celebrating young people flooded the streets. 15 Luxury villas burned to the ground after the fire overpowered the firefighters.

Exercise 61:

1 The computer manufacturer has not sent us any specifications yet **although** he's promised to deliver all the information by Monday. 2 **Although** the electronics firm is doing very well at the moment, it may get into trouble really soon. 3 **Although** Marc has not recovered from his illness fully, he decided to go to work tomorrow. 4 Mr and Mrs Handerson are going to retire by the end of the year **although** they don't have any money to live on afterwards. 5 **Although** the exam didn't seem very difficult, no-one actually passed it. 6 **Although** the professor's explanation sounds reasonable, it is still wrong. 7 Jo didn't join us at the club last night **although** she promised to hop in. 8 **Although** the boxer was tired, he continued fighting to the bitter end. 9 **Although** the company is running short of natural resources, it still intends to keep its deadlines. 10 The hungry cheetahs were lying in wait for their prey **although** there was nothing in sight. 11 **Although** modern appliances have made our lives easier in many a way, they also filled our lives with more tasks. 12 The white collar seems a bit greyish **although** it's been washed in the best powder there is. 13 **Although** Henry's aim isn't as good as it used to be, he still did hit the target. 14 The monkeys at the zoo were lying around all day yesterday **although** it wasn't hot at all. 15 The camera broke down **although** it was brand new.

Exercise 62:

1 Although the phone kept ringing for quite a while, nobody answered it. 2 Miss Kinns was waiting outside although the bank had already closed for the day. 3 The priest had been preaching for over ten minutes although there was nobody in the church. 4 The parents punished their little boy although he didn't do anything wrong. 5 Although Tom has forgotten to do his homework, the teacher did not find out. 6 Although the pig ran fast, it could not escape its faith. 7 Although it was quite warm for winter, it was still rather chilly. 8 Aunt Dora will be staying at a hotel although she could have bunked in with us. 9 The siblings decided to take a shortcut through the woods although they knew it was dangerous. 10 Although the glasses fell down, they did not break.

Exercise 63:

1 won't get re-elected although he kept his promises 2 don't make much money although they are very hard-working 3 Although the sheep got eaten by a wolf, the shepherd did not get into any trouble at all / The shepherd did not get into any trouble at all although the sheep got eaten by a wolf 4 Although my brother took the cake, it was I who got into trouble / It was I who got into trouble although my brother took the cake 5 was still closing in on the thief although he was running fast 6 didn't sell well although the journalists did their work extremely well 7 Although a bomb exploded in the city centre last Friday, nobody got hurt / Nobody got hurt although a bomb exploded in the city centre last Friday 8 was acquitted although he must have committed the murder 9 didn't cut himself although he dropped about a dozen plates 10 had to go to school although it had been snowing heavily the whole weekend

Exercise 64:

1 Although the holidays finished last week, the majority of our students has still not come to school. 2 The iron bucket got perforated although we had been using it for two weeks only. 3 The computer will keep downloading the files for a few more minutes although it's brand new. 4 Although the parents were not arguing, you could feel tension during the lunch. 5 The PM is expected to address the nation tonight although he's got no new information. 6 Although the earthquake destroyed a lot of buildings in the city, nobody got hurt. 7 The shop assistant doesn't pay attention to the customers although she's paid to do so. 8 Although the shop burned down, its owner didn't lose anything. 9 Although the husband and wife have been saving up for their holiday all year long, they still haven't got enough to afford it. 10 Although we didn't buy anything, we got a free lunch. 11 Although the technician wasn't

versed in the topic, he managed to find his way quickly. 12 Although the tenants didn't pay the rent this month, their landlord didn't say a word. 13 Although it's sunny, it most certainly is not warm. 14 The passer-by didn't take a paper although it was free. 15 I always used to be called Marc at work although my name is Andrew, actually.

Exercise 65:

1 **As** it's really late, why don't we call it a night for today already? 2 The teenager boys were having a good time **as** they were dancing the night away. 3 **As** we entered the reception, a young lady called on us. 4 Healthy **as** you are, you are not invincible. 5 Knowing her **as** I do, she's definitely going to apply for the vacancy. 6 The fish are starting to fry in the rivers **as** temperatures continue to rise. 7 **As** I was saying, if the exports do not go up this year, we are likely to face financial problems next year. 8 Miss Helings went first **as** she came first. 9 The pretty girl gets more and more beautiful **as** she grows older. 10 Angry **as** the parents were, they wouldn't hit their only child. 11 **As** the shop assistant was walking around the shop helping the customers, somebody took her purse. 12 **As** James has already said: 'No good deed goes unpunished.' 13 The junior manager withdrew her new proposal **as** the COO wanted to steer a different direction. 14 **As** the ship was sinking, the captain was making an emergency call. 15 **As** with most young people, Alen is impatient and hot-headed.

Exercise 66:

1 **As** the executive lost her staff's confidence, she decided to quit. 2 The travellers were sleeping as it started to rain. 3 **As** the politician entered the room, everybody went silent. 4 **As** you wish, I will make everything ready for the meeting. 5 **As** the airport shut down, the others had to deal with their plans as well. 6 Our next-door neighbours got arrested last week as they were selling guns illegally. 7 The king called his servant as he wanted to go out for a walk. 8 **As** the sun went down, it got very dark. 9 The poor family had to sell their house, just as their parents thirty years ago. 10 They won't be attending the meeting as they are in Massachusetts.

Exercise 67:

1 kept addressing the issues as the stenographer was taking notes fast 2 **As** David has already said, we won't find any partners if we don't make some compromises 3 will fly down to the areas most affected by the superstorm as he wants to see the scale of destruction in Colorado for himself 4 has arrived at a dead end, just as his predecessor 5 Strong as he is, the giant can't beat the mighty demon king / **As** strong as he is, the giant can't beat the mighty demon king 6 noticed a robbery in progress as he was walking past the building 7 **As** the banker stood up fast, he lost his footing and fell down 8 **As** I was saying, no pain, no gain 9 Old as the city centre is, it's very beautiful 10 **As** the paramedics came closer, they found two badly hurt women sitting in the car

Exercise 68:

1 **As** the deadline was drawing nearer and nearer, the students were starting to feel a bit nervous. 2 **As** the gentleman said, you cannot win a war with no army. 3 The vice-president is to announce important news on TV tonight as the cabinet have made a decision. 4 **As** is always the case with wars, there's no real winner. 5 Happy as the wine producers were, they could not hide their disappointment in Mr Don. 6 Making the soup as I did, I can't believe it's too salty. 7 This year, as in previous years, the football championships will be held in the capital. 8 Dr Brown moved to the capital, as many of his friends did. 9 **As** it was too late to stop the attack, the general sat down and had a glass of wine. 10 **As** the plane was touching down, one of its engines caught fire and blew up. 11 The houses will have to be pulled down as they are safe no longer. 12 Dark as it was, we could still see the way home. 13 The accountant gave me a slip of paper as I was coming to the office. 14 **As** I've tried to explain, I'm no expert on biology. 15 Ill as the child was, it wanted to see the match.

Exercise 69:

1 **Because** it started raining we stayed at home. 2 I'm afraid I can't come to your ceremony **because** I will be away that week. 3 Some students didn't pass their exams **because** they didn't study hard. 4 The operator is likely to increase its monthly fees **because** the whole network needs to be modernised. 5 Jo is going to visit his uncle in the countryside **because** she needs some good advice. 6 The machins will

never stop working **because** our janitor takes good care of them. 7 The technician needs to take a day off **because** he's been feeling under the weather lately. 8 **Because** I haven't seen him all day. 9 Jeff is to hold the presentation on Friday afternoon **because** the CFO couldn't make it earlier. 10 **Because** he tried to lie to his supervisor, he's going to get sacked. 11 The children were happy once **because** they were so innocent. 12 The angry hockey player kicked the referee in the knee **because** he did not agree with his decision. 13 **Because** you told me to sod off. 14 The computer company went bust **because** nobody paid attention to the bills. 15 The kitchen is a total mess **because** the cooks have not cleaned it up yet.

Exercise 70:

1 can't be moved even a single inch because it's too heavy to lift 2 are wearing warm clothes these days because it's got rather cold lately 3 has given up all hope of ever finding true love because he's never had any luck with girls 4 makes us read all sorts of English novels because she wants us to be well educated 5 has won loads of prizes over the years because their music is really awesome 6 are going to get married soon because they want to spend their whole life together 7 bear killed the rabbit because it was so hungry 8 hid his money away from his family because he didn't want them to find it 9 will have to be postponed because an unfortunate accident happened in the hall 10 cannot be defeated because he's got overwhelming magical powers

Exercise 71:

1 because 2 although 3 because 4 because 5 although 6 because 7 because 8 although
9 because 10 although

Exercise 72:

1 The expedition was a complete success because the mountaineers prepared for everything that could have happened to them with great care. 2 I can't call the manager right now because I haven't got her number. 3 The poacher couldn't have gotten far because he's hurt his right leg. 4 We shouldn't discuss these matters now because none of us knows exactly what's going on. 5 Because I didn't feel like coming to work. 6 Approximately 223,000 people die every year because they get cancer breathing polluted air. 7 The car was stolen because you didn't lock it up. 8 The retailer has been experiencing some minor technical difficulties because they lost connection to their server. 9 We cannot refund you any money because there's no proof that you had actually paid for the goods. 10 Because I left my bag at home. 11 The pipes cannot be repaired anymore because they're simply too old to be fixed. 12 The computer stopped working because it caught a deadly virus. 13 Some guests toddled off a little because they wanted to get some more cake. 14 Henry's patients went away in a hurry because he told them to bugger off. 15 The famous novelist isn't going to attend the meeting because she's having some plastic surgery done today.

Exercise 73:

1 The plane will have taken off **before** we have reached the airport if you keep lingering. 2 **Before** the transfer was made, our partner made sure we were both trustworthy and could pay the debt back. 3 Jim hopped in **before** he actually knew where we were heading to. 4 **Before** the painter met his master, he used a very simple painting style. 5 Clean up the office **before** the supervisor sees what you've been doing around here. 6 You should seek legal advice **before** answering any more questions. 7 **Before** she took off with her sweetheart, she left a short note addressed to her husband. 8 The soldiers are going to charge **before** the enemy is ready to defend himself. 9 The applicant hasn't spoken to anybody **before** turning up at the interview. 10 **Before** watering the plants, the maid dusted the furniture. 11 It was two hours **before** Mr and Mrs Harkins made it to the city centre. 12 The doctoral student read a book on thesis writing and numerous essays **before** starting his own project. 13 **Before** the bomb exploded in the square, there was a shooting. 14 You'd better shut up now **before** the good doctor loses her temper. 15 Twenty years went by **before** the squire realised his step-son had lied to him.

Exercise 74:

1 Before arresting the criminals, the police officers read them their rights 2 not possible 3 The talented musician played a wonderful concert before returning home to Texas 4 Before showing us

her VIP pass, Laura made a quick phone call to her sister 5 not possible 6 The owner of the slaughterhouse made a great deal before passing down his business on his son 7 not possible 8 Before visiting their grandparents in the countryside, the Simpsons made a pit stop at a McDees 9 The judge made up his mind before hearing all the evidence 10 The exotic dancers had been rehearsing for a whole month before making their first performance

Exercise 75:

1 goes for a jog before driving to the office / goes for a jog before he goes to the office 2 looked around and made sure there was nobody there before opening the casket / ... before she (had) opened the casket 3 had barely opened the shop before the first customers started flooding in 4 had left before our train arrived at the station 5 Before he put his plans into motion, a sinister thought crossed the killer's mind / A sinister thought crossed the killer's mind before he put his plans into motion 6 had been followed the rich family for over three months before he made his move and took the young boy 7 start working on the project before you have sworn that you won't misuse the information / ... before you swear that you won't misuse the information 8 didn't arrive before the door blew shut / hadn't arrived before the door blew shut 9 stole my wallet last week before he took my watch yesterday / stole my wallet last week before taking my watch yesterday 10 has run out of money before evening paying its staff / has run out of money before it could even pay its staff

Exercise 76:

1 Before I got my new computer, I asked a friend for advice on the specs. 2 The old machine stopped working before the new one was delivered. 3 Before you go away on holiday, don't forget to set up your automatic email reply. 4 Before the robbers ran away from the bank, they tied the guard and disabled the security system. 5 The parents had to go to school before actually going to work. 6 Before I give you the change, you give me the whole amount. 7 The masked men crept in the shop before they took out the guns from under their jackets. 8 The computer froze before we managed to make a backup. 9 Before you buy a house, make sure to have it checked thoroughly. 10 Before they lost the suspect, the police officers found out where he was actually heading to. 11 The suit got soiled before I actually had a chance to wear it. 12 Before diving into such depths, you'd better check all machines. 13 Before you move to Canada, find a good job there. 14 The door blew shut before the visitors left. 15 The kittens had been born before the vet arrived.

Exercise 77:

1 **Directly** we have confirmed your payment, the products ordered will be sent away. 2 My trainer said he'd quit his job **directly** he got a better paid one. 3 The Prime Minister shall be contacted **directly** we receive any news. 4 **Directly** the bartender finishes his studies, he wants to apply for a job in Florence. 5 **Directly** the cat jumped on the table, the cook shouted at it. 6 Jane's colleagues are going to discuss the issue **directly** they've returned from lunch. 7 The plan shall be put into practice **directly** the CEO returns from his business trip. 8 The supervisor wants to have a word with you **directly** you've come back to work. 9 The smartphone stopped working **directly** the warranty had expired. 10 **Directly** she fell to the ground, two men started running towards her. 11 The FBI agents dropped dead **directly** they breathed in the poisonous gas. 12 **Directly** the phone line broke down, some men started knocking on the door. 13 **Directly** the bomb was planted in the stadium, the terrorists started shooting all the people around them. 14 The patient made a phone call to her dentist **directly** she started having toothache. 15 **Directly** the press conference had started, the front door was closed and no one else was allowed to enter.

Exercise 78:

1 extremely delighted directly the army left our village 2 inquisitor got charmed by the girl's seductive laughter directly he looked at her 3 shall attend to his studies directly he's feeling better again 4 should be repaired directly the driver has finished the last round 5 need to be solved directly the CEO has signed the necessary documents 6 left the meeting room directly the meeting hard finished 7 wants to sign the contract directly it's ready 8 broke into a house and stole all the jewellery directly he made his escape 9 is to be sold at once directly he's found a buyer 10 can come in and take a seat directly Mr Lloyd's has left

Exercise 79:

1 The manager will be with you directly she's finished the call. 2 Directly the clouds disappear, we can go out and have a picnic in the open. 3 Directly the sergeant major gives the command, the left wing will form a line. 4 Donald's ducks will be exported to China directly they're old enough for transport. 5 Directly the FBI director has reviewed the case, we will receive further information. 6 The hired gun retreated directly he had hit the target. 7 The PA cancelled the meeting directly she had received the bad news. 8 Directly Miss Bloomberg has spoken to the headteacher, she will return to her classroom. 9 Directly the whistle-blower made the espionage techniques public, he was hunted down by his very own colleagues. 10 The swordsman left the castle directly he was paid for his services.

Exercise 80:

1 Directly the negotiation was over, the business partners went out for lunch together. 2 The company owner took a flight to Rome directly the whole affair got out. 3 The severely wounded soldiers were operated directly the devastating attack on the base was over. 4 The MPs took a break directly they'd passed next year's budget. 5 Directly the trains had crashed, paramedics got to the accident site. 6 The EU President was flown in to Brussels directly the negotiations had started. 7 The COO turned in his resignation directly evidence was found that he had abused his authority. 8 The WMDs will be destroyed directly both countries have signed the mutual treaty. 9 Directly the chemical attack was carried out, the US sent their peacekeepers to the country. 10 Directly the mayor was elected to office, he began making personal changes. 11 The base commander remained in the camp directly he found out about an inspection. 12 The material will be delivered to us directly it has reached the warehouse. 13 Teachers' salaries will increase directly sufficient funds have been found. 14 Directly the capital had been destroyed, chaos spread in the whole country. 15 Directly a crowd of protesters had flooded the streets, the government started negotiating with the Unions.

Exercise 81:

1 The company's latest smartphone became a flop, **for** it was overpriced and definitely too slow. 2 Tim went a bit earlier home, **for** he was feeling under the weather today. 3 The power plant blew up last week, **for** there was nobody to take good care of its security. 4 The COO was fired, **for** she tried to rip the company off on several occasions. 5 You can't use the software on this computer, **for** it's outdated and not compatible anymore. 6 Some freedom fighters will remain close to the camp, **for** they need to guard the weaponry. 7 The computer had to be restarted, **for** it had to update the operating system. 8 The hardware manufacturer decided to leave the Asian market, **for** the revenues did not cover the costs at all. 9 The famous actress took up golf and ping-pong, **for** she needed to let off steam. 10 The racing driver was given a pay rise, **for** the manager did not want to lose him to the competition. 11 A surgeon needs to take frequent breaks between operations, **for** he needs to be perfectly fit when performing surgery. 12 The air conditioning stopped working, **for** there was a power outage in the whole building. 13 The baker round the corner had to close his shop for good, **for** he ran out of money last month. 14 I don't want to discuss the matter with anybody, **for** it's very private. 15 The dressmaker has taken out a loan from the bank recently, **for** he wanted to expand his business.

Exercise 82:

1 will make the phone call next week, for Ms Carlson will still be on holiday 2 will deliver an extra lecture today, for he won't be at university next week 3 should be fixed by Monday, for the request was made two weeks ago 4 told his secretary not to send anybody in, for he was expecting an important call 5 were marching to the anthill fast, for it was starting to rain 6 bought a brand new convertible, for his old car kept breaking down all the time 7 may lose his job, for he's sold dangerous medicine without prescription 8 in the Middle East have been derailed, for politicians could not agree on some matters 9 was derailed, for the railroad engineer received faulty information 10 went away to look for work in the US, for there were few working possibilities here

Exercise 83:

1 would like to study abroad since he's fed up with local teachers 2 looked really awesome because she had it brought from the florist's on her wedding day 3 stopped working after it had run out of oil 4 was hiding in the rose bushes as he didn't want to be seen 5 didn't want to make any more

movies given (the fact) that she'd already made a lot of money 6 had to stay at home because he was too young to go to the night club 7 was blown into smithereens as it was knocked down by a chubby kid 8 was forced to find a second job given (the fact) that designing clothes couldn't keep his head above water any longer 9 would like to travel around the world since they got bored with their lives 10 lost connection to the Internet as the local CMTS suffered a power shortage

Exercise 84:

1 The harlequin didn't want to disturb his colleague, for he still wasn't ready for the performance. 2 The rehearsal had to be put off, for some actors hadn't arrived at the theatre yet. 3 The model decided to lose four kilos, for she wanted to look breathtaking in her new swimsuit. 4 The last coating is still wet, for the wall was painted a mere half an hour ago. 5 The dwarf got broken on the way, for the driver broke abruptly and the dwarf flew out of the window. 6 The lovers were unhappy, for they knew just too well that it was their last day together. 7 The cows and goats were on the meadow till the very evening, for they were grazing there. 8 A life of mediocrity is nothing for a proud prince, for he's used to a different lifestyle. 9 The tram was driving fast, for it was running five minutes late. 10 He was sitting at the back of the car, for he often gets sick. 11 Daniel's allergy is getting worse and worse by the year, for he didn't take any medicine right from the outset. 12 My granny's cookies were soon gone, for they were very tasty. 13 Michael won't get promoted fast, for he's no butt kisser. 14 The underwater earthquake triggered a huge tsunami, for it was extremely strong. 15 The choir have been rehearsing for two hours for a month at least, for they want to win the contest that's going to take place in three months.

Exercise 85:

1 The bus driver would have stopped the bus **if** she had seen you running at the back. 2 **If** the cowboy made more money, he could afford to buy a better car. 3 **If** I sometimes behave a little weird, it's 'cos I am a little weird. 4 The landlord won't sell the house **if** you offer him a million dollars. 5 **If** that wasn't the silliest remark I've heard all day! 6 **If** the skyscraper won't collapse on its own, then we'll have to help it. 7 The taxi driver asked **if** we had enough money to pay for the ride. 8 **If** the old lady won't die some time soon, then you'll have to take care of her, Dave. 9 **If** the bacon is left unguarded, the dogs will have their way with it. 10 The tombstone will decay fast **if** no one takes care of it properly. 11 **If** the children don't tell us the truth right away, they'll get grounded for a fortnight at least. 12 The table as well as the antique chairs had to be sold **if** the tenants wanted to keep a roof above their heads. 13 **If** the investigator asks you anything, tell him nothing, nothing at all. 14 The story, **if** a bit unusual, is the truth and nothing but the truth. 15 **If** I'm not mistaken, the airport should be somewhere to the left.

Exercise 86:

1 If you work hard, you'll be rewarded accordingly. 2 The farmers won't take part in the contest this year if they've got nothing to win. 3 The young princess would become queen if her older sister died in a tragic accident. 4 If the merchant sold all the goods, he'd be the richest man far and wide. 5 If you had ordered the pizza when I told you to, it would have been delivered already. 6 If a wooden cottage catches fire, it burns to the ground within a few minutes. 7 The old cat is a cute, if lazy little thing. 8 Tell us if the ceremony went as you had expected it to. 9 If the prisoners are sometimes agitated and rude, it is only because they miss their friends and family. 10 The CFO cannot undo the mistakes they caused if he tried hard to settle the issues with our contractors. 11 I wonder if the tapestry has been put up again. 12 If mermaids really did live in the past, then there has to be some proof of their existence.

Exercise 87:

1 will all be shot dead if they don't give up and surrender 2 did not give in to the Republicans' demands if they remained strong-minded 3 to see if there will ever be a change in Jane's behaviour towards us 4 burn yourself if you touch a hot pipe 5 will have to explain the reasons for the decision if the marathon is postponed 6 if I should tell my supervisor about the invoices or not 7 will never get higher salaries if they don't start working harder 8 would you do if you were in my shoes 9 have won the battle if we had not interfered 10 would be willing to lend us the money if we sign an IOU

Exercise 88:

1 I be having these constant interruptions had you bought a high-end router 2 you a new house providing I won the lottery 3 won't get any prize money unless he wins the match 4 wouldn't quit his studies even if the world was teetering on the brink of extinction 5 asked me whether I was going to attend the conference on Friday 6, though somewhat complicated, was solved easily by the detectives 7 shall wreak havoc in the city unless you can retrieve the stolen goods by Friday 8 Every time you put wood on water, it floats / Wood floats every time you put it on water 9 inquired whether my little daughter was feeling better again 10 Should I see the man again, I will give you a call / I will give you a call should I see the man again

Exercise 89:

1 If the hostages get hurt, the escaped prisoners will have nowhere to turn to. 2 If the runner had sprained his ankle, he wouldn't have been able to continue the race. 3 The messenger wouldn't have given us the news so abruptly if he had known that it would sadden us so greatly. 4 If that wasn't a grotesque performance! 5 If your friend had kept her word, then you wouldn't be in this mess right now. 6 If the weather has seemed a bit gloomy these days, then it's because the days are getting shorter. 7 The sales are finally going up again, if a little slowly. 8 If the teacher comes across a bit too strict at times, it's because he is very hard-working and ambitious. 9 If you mix these chemicals, you will get an explosive liquid. 10 The hotel manager decided to cooperate with the police if he might sent his own son to prison. 11 If there is no oxygen, the fire goes out. 12 If water is heated up to 100 degrees Centigrade, it turns into steam. 13 I'm awfully sorry if I've disturbed you. 14 Marc is an excellent expert, if a bit hot-headed at times. 15 If I were you, I would take the job.

Exercise 90:

1 **Immediately** the hunter approached the deer, it ran away in fear. 2 We will notify you **immediately** we have received any news. 3 Mr and Mrs Donalds got married **immediately** the found out they were going to have a baby. 4 The castle will be closed due to repairs **immediately** the constructor says he's ready to start with the reconstruction. 5 **Immediately** the carpenter had heard the news, he got on the phone and called his brother. 6 The press shall be informed **immediately** the killer has been arrested. 7 I'll call you **immediately** I hear anything new. 8 **Immediately** the US marshal had caught the dealer, he started to boss his friends around. 9 **Immediately** the wedding had finished, the guests went out for lunch. 10 The PR rep will get in touch with you **immediately** we receive the data. 11 **Immediately** the hospital had burned down, the head surgeon disappeared into thin air. 12 The fraidy cat jumped out of the window **immediately** he heard some noise downstairs. 13 My hairdresser gave me a great discount **immediately** he had heard that I was having financial problems. 14 **Immediately** the shooting had started, people ran out of the store and took shelter in the streets. 15 The poucher hid in the bushes **immediately** he heard the rangers approaching.

Exercise 91:

1 back for Alberta immediately we heard the news 2 in the shining armour came to our rescue immediately he heard us cry for help 3 fell into the icy river along with their cars immediately the bridge had collapsed 4 you're looking for him immediately I see him 5 dispersed immediately the shooting began 6 was confiscated immediately it reached the border 7 lost her power immediately her spell was broken 8 called the police immediately the cab exploded 9 give you a call immediately I find your glasses 10 caught fire immediately you had warned the chef not to put it too close to the oven

Exercise 92:

1 called the tower as soon as the plane caught fire 2 rebelled the instant they noticed they were stronger than their master 3 blew shut the second you opened the window 4 fired the gun the moment he heard the cries 5 The moment the computer had shut down, I knew I was never going to retrieve the data / I knew I was never going to retrieve the data the moment the computer had shut down 6 told me about the new novel as soon as he got his hands on it 7 called the tech department to have the mouse replaced the instant it stopped working 8 crashed the second I'd installed the first app 9 started to cram for the contest as soon as their teacher had told them about it 10 When I

hear what's going on, I'll let you know for sure / I'll let you know for sure what's going on when I hear something

Exercise 93:

1 Immediately we get some news, we will let you know. 2 The swamp started to dry up immediately the planned housing construction in the area began. 3 Immediately the teacher had turned his back to his students, they started to chat away cheerfully. 4 Lin travelled to the US immediately she had learnt about her fiancé's sickness. 5 Immediately the minister had learnt about the overpriced deals, he fired the staff responsible. 6 The production came to a standstill immediately it was uncovered that the funds necessary to run the factory had been missing. 7 Immediately the negotiation had come to an end, the partners left the meeting room. 8 Immediately the president had died, the vicepresident took over. 9 Immediately the storm had passed, the sailors came on deck. 10 The credit must be paid back immediately we have received our pension. 11 The fire broke out immediately the expert had arrived. 12 Immediately the priest had heard about the family's problems, he decided to give them a hand. 13 The administrator banned the users' access to the platform immediately he found out that some accounts had been compromised. 14 The supervisor had a new printer bought immediately he heard that the old one no longer worked. 15 The accountant put his watch on the desk immediately he had entered the room.

Exercise 94:

1 The spies did not dare talk louder **lest** the enemy should be listening to their conversation. 2 The maid was dusting the vases carefully **lest** she should break them. 3 The dancer left his pocket knife at home **lest** he caused an injury to one of his partners. 4 I feel almost glad not to have joined you at the party, **lest** I should have spoilt your fun. 5 The knight took great care to watch his step on the path **lest** he fell under an evil spell. 6 **Lest** you forget! 7 The sick man was well aware of the fact that he ought to see a physician **lest** the illness wasn't a mere common cold. 8 **Lest** it be thought that nobody could help you out, Mr Burns will always give you a helping hand. 9 **Lest** anyone should think that the issue was solved easily, let me remind you of the occurrences of August 20. 10 People were quite afraid of having taken pictures of themselves **lest** an evil spirit should rob them of their souls. 11 The murderers carried the corpse to the car quickly **lest** they somebody should see them. 12 **Lest** the prime ministers be misinterpreted, the message was definitely a positive one. 13 The accused feared the court's ruling **lest** he be sent to prison. 14 I would not complain about the misunderstanding to the supervisor **lest** it be a personal matter. 15 The students are not to speak during the exam, **lest** they distract the others.

Exercise 95:

1 I did not dare step out of her chamber lest she might get eaten by a dragon 2 won't give us a discount, lest he lost his job 3 did not come forth lest she'd get into trouble herself 4 turned up the radio lest he should miss his favourite show / ... lest he missed his favourite show 5 Lest the water would get contaminated 6 couldn't even write to each other lest their letters were intercepted by their parents 7 returned home to check up on her daughter lest she had fallen asleep again 8 need to be built all over the world lest tourists should destroy the precious cultural heritage in a decade or so / ... lest tourists destroyed the precious cultural heritage in a decade or so 9 Lest the visitors might take away 10 spent the whole night looking for her missing boy lest something bad had happened to him

Exercise 96:

1 were all wearing pink in case the clergy should have changed his mind 2 went out late, so that no one would see him talk to the mayor 3 turned into a heartless monster in order not to repeat his past mistakes anymore 4 Lest we forget Lin's birthday 5 Lest the wrong impression be made 6 took out their guns hastily for fear that the bank employees should try and call for help 7 should be praised, so that they aren't averse to giving us a hand in the future 8 was quite worried about the article for fear that it might be misunderstood 9 wants to keep a low profile at the summit so that his colleagues don't realise what he is really after 10 remained closed in case it should still be infested with rats

Exercise 97:

1 The branch manager left the negotiation early lest he should be late for the dinner with his wife. 2 The business manager offered the staff a discount lest they were interested in buying the company's products. 3 The disappointed customer did not send the complaint lest he caused trouble to the seller who was not responsible for the errors. 4 The new analyst won't go for lunch lest he should disappoint his demanding boss. 5 The guest of honour won't drink to the prince's health lest he be given a good reason to do so. 6 The old bed cannot be sold at such a high price lest there is an additional incentive. 7 The topic should not be discussed with students prematurely lest there be a hidden reason behind it. 8 The young lovers did not want to go out lest they should be seen together. 9 The actress was hoping nobody would find out where she lived lest she were molested by the press again. 10 The butcher did not sell his mountain cottage lest he wanted to retire there. 11 The mechanic will have to take care of the motorcycles lest he be given other orders. 12 The expensive clothes must be kept in the wardrobe lest it be needed for a very special occasion. 13 The documents should not be discarded yet lest they be required for additional purposes. 14 Lest you should forget, the party starts at 1.00 pm. 15 Lest you be late, park your car directly in front of the house.

Exercise 98:

1 It looks **like** the anointed has just risen to power. 2 The young American says he feels **like** he's going to die of boredom. 3 I could swear that the boy is **like** a devil in disguise. 4 It seems **like** the president doesn't have the army under control. 5 You look **like** you've just seen a ghost. 6 It feels **like** it's going to rain soon. 7 I've got a feeling **like** we have met somewhere before. 8 It looks **like** you don't have a clue what you're talking about. 9 It appears **like** you have miscalculated, my friend. 10 You look **like** you've eaten something that didn't agree with your stomach, Tom. 11 It sounds **like** somebody's being tortured in the tower. 12 It tastes **like** the soup's too salty again. 13 The baby looked **like** it was going to start crying. 14 The beggar smells **like** he's spent the whole day in the sewers. 15 The teacher talks **like** she's the headmistress already.

Exercise 99:

1 announces the news as if he had actually been in the place live 2 was commenting the police investigation as though he had conducted it himself 3 were hiding in the basement as if they felt the storm approaching 4 sounded as though he had drunk something really cold last night 5 was hiding behind the curtain like he was expecting someone to come in 6 was flowing into the chambers as though there was a leak in the wall 7 died all alone in the street as a common beggar 8 lied to me as if I meant nothing to him at all 9 as a mother should 10 threw the book at the guest as though he were a common thief

Exercise 100:

1 are standing around doing nothing like they didn't get paid for their work 2 worked like they had to keep a deadline 3 are walking down the street fast like there was a fair there 4 looks like he's just seen a ghost 5 makes the impression like it had been standing there for centuries 6 feels like it had been produced in China 7 gives so much advice like she were a professional counsellor 8 disappeared like it had never existed in the first place 9 like the carpenters stopped working for no good reason at all 10 like there's something burning in the kitchen

Exercise 101:

1 I feel like I've just found myself in hell. 2 The children were running about cheerfully like they did not have to go to school the next day at all. 3 Jane feels so hot like she were seriously ill. 4 It appeared like the company was going to go bust within a year. 5 The typist was putting down everything we were saying slowly like she wasn't in a hurry at all. 6 It seems like a solution to the problems is not in sight. 7 It appears like the travellers were not looking forward to their holiday at all. 8 The plan sounds like a five-year-old child came up with it. 9 You sound like you are hoarse. 10 I feel like I've made a total fool of myself. 11 The chair of the committee looked like he was going to start yelling at his colleagues any moment. 12 The seat on the bus was so cold like nobody had sat in it all day long. 13 Daniela's eyes look so swollen like wasps had been stinging her the whole weekend. 14 The mayor is talking about the topic with so much gravity like the end of the world should come should he not

manage to see his solution through. 15 My leg hurts so badly like it was broken.

Exercise 102:

1 **Once** the awful smell of the carcass started to spread all across the meadow, the hunter realised what he had done. 2 **Once** I've graduated, I'd like to travel the world for a year or two. 3 The ceremony will commence **once** the guest of honour has arrived. 3 **Once** you get to the clearing, you will understand what your grandfather was trying to say. 4 The spaceship blew up **once** it had touched down. 5 Mr and Mrs Hudmat decided to get married **once** they've fallen in love. 6 Charlie's weapons were confiscated **once** police officers confirmed they had been used in an armed robbery. 7 The bonfire celebration got even better **once** the mayor had opened the contest. 8 **Once** the COO has made up his mind, there's no convincing him of the contrary. 9 **Once** the foundations have been laid, it will be a matter of months till the whole building is built. 10 The camera crew were sent home early on Tuesday **once** it became clear that the movie stars were not going to show up. 11 **Once** the door has been locked up, it can only be opened on the next day. 12 The little girl was frightened **once** she had realised she was all alone in the dark forest. 13 **Once** the sun went up, the birds started singing. 14 **Once** the dangerous murderer is brought to justice, honest citizens will feel much safer. 15 The gun fired **once** the trigger was pulled.

Exercise 103:

1 celebrate all you want **once** the battle has been won, men 2 will be promoted **once** he's returned from his voyage to the Philippines 3 **Once** the accused had pleaded guilty, it became clear that he was going to try to get a reduced sentence 4 entered the bank **once** the security system had been disabled 5 engage the enemy **once** they are in shooting range 6 Jason the news **once** you see him 7 rushed to the scene **once** the bomb had exploded 8 joined her supervisor at the meeting **once** she's made the call 9 was evacuated **once** the security agency had intercepted a possible bomb threat 10 started yet another killing spree **once** he was released out of prison

Exercise 104:

1 to the hanger as fast as you can the moment the tanker has exploded 2 will gather around this building as soon as it's time to start the contest 3 the negotiation after the terrorists have made their demands public 4 will fill the whole room the instant the door cracks open 5 will make the news public as soon as he's addressed his staff 6 pressed charges against Mr White the instant he'd gathered the evidence 7 is going to get herself a summer job in New York after the term has finished 8 started to make creaking sounds soon after termites had their way with it 9 could connect to the Internet when the signal had broken off 10 broke his leg shortly after he fell off the cliff

Exercise 105:

1 **Once** the ship had anchored, the sailors rushed to the city. 2 **Once** the experiment was over, the researchers returned to their workplaces. 3 The forest will have to be cut down **once** the construction plans for the new highway have been approved. 4 **Once** the pirates appeared close to the harbour, a police boat started to chase them. 5 **Once** the police caught the thief red-handed, they arrested him and took him to prison. 6 **Once** the children had sat down at their desks, the teacher entered the classroom. 7 The investigation came to a quick end **once** the prosecutor started inquiring about the evidence. 8 The car broke down **once** the owner had picked it up at the garage. 9 **Once** the physicians had left the room, the patient lit a cigarette. 10 **Once** you have tasted true power, you will never be satisfied with a life of mediocrity again. 11 **Once** the aliens had destroyed the planet, they started looking for a new target. 12 **Once** it gets dark, nobody in our village dares to go out on their own. 13 The pipes burst **once** the pressure got too strong. 14 **Once** lightning struck, all of us stopped as if paralysed. 15 **Once** the bus driver lost his eyesight, he lost interest in the world around him too.

Exercise 106:

1 Mr Petterson has been dealing with guns **since** his father introduced him to the family business. 2 He has been involved with some nasty guys **since** he left high school. 3 **Since** the unsuccessful university dropout started working for his brother, he's been nothing but trouble. 4 **Since** I've never met the man, I cannot possibly tell you his name, can I? 5 The bartender has been staying in a small flat **since** he got kicked out of his last flat. 6 **Since** the basketball player broke up with his girlfriend, he's been whining

about everything basically. 7 I've got to do whatever Mr Jakins tells me to do **since** he's my boss now. 8 The production of this particular phone was discontinued five years ago **since** the phone didn't have the specs customers were looking for in a top-notch phone. 9 **Since** the sun got covered by those thick clouds, it's turned quite cold. 10 The students' notes are quite sketchy **since** the teacher talks real fast. 11 **Since** the sales rep hasn't sold anything for over three months now, he ought to be given the sack. 12 The printer is to be replaced on Monday **since** it stopped working properly a long time ago. 13 The chemical plant ought to be shut down asap **since** it's been nothing but trouble since the very first day. 14 Mr Dan's contract was terminated last week **since** he had stolen office supplies on many occasions.

Exercise 107:

1 Since the trainer lost track of time, the wrestlers were late for their maths class. 2 The desk jockey has had a rough time ever since his wife left him. 3 The pictures won't sell well since the painter made quite a few smudges on each. 4 Since the plane touched down safely, the pilot must have mastered the crisis. 5 Since I haven't heard from Dave for well over two months now, I suppose he must have gone away to Scotland. 6 Since I've got no clue what you're talking about, I'd like to take my leave now. 7 The puppet master has managed to imitate both character's voices well since he's a true professional. 8 The cottage has burned to the ground since somebody left a burning cigarette on the table. 9 The priest is about to lose all his sheep since he's unable to adapt to the new world and its needs. 10 Since the time is up, you'll have to hand in your exam sheets now. 11 Since the mic doesn't work, you'll have to make use of something else. 12 The walls were painted yellow since the manager asked for yellow. 13 Since Mr Banks doesn't want to show his face here anymore, we will have to pay him a visit at home. 14 The whole research is totally useless since you neglected to use to correct criteria when creating the questions. 15 Since you don't have the balls to speak up for yourself, I'll have to do it for you.

Exercise 108:

1 I say if the quality of the ticket will be sufficient since the query hasn't been processed yet 2 to become a rocket scientist since I was born 3 was smashed into smithereens since Jack threw it against the wall 4 Since the witness hadn't been wearing glasses at the time, he couldn't identify the man / The witness couldn't identify the man since he hadn't been wearing glasses 5 been in love with his student (ever) since he lay his eyes on her 6 has been watching a soap opera since he came home tonight 7 was put to sleep since the director did not want to torment it anymore 8 Since Mr Halkins moved in, we haven't had a single night's sleep / We haven't had a single night's sleep since Mr Halkins moved in 9 is about to go bust since he did not calculate his costs correctly 10 got damaged during the flight since they hadn't been secured properly 11 is about to start a new career in LA since he's always wanted to work in Hollywood

Exercise 109:

1 Since experienced businesspeople left the company, we haven't got good results. 2 Since the watch stopped working during the night, the mom overslept. 3 The Chancellor of the Exchequer has had a yen for great power since he was a little boy. 4 Since the skyscraper collapsed, construction workers have been under close observation by the authorities. 5 The sun has been shining since I got up this morning. 6 Mice have been running about the kitchen ever since the housekeeper went to the shops. 7 The surgeon will study your medical history in great detail since he's to operate on you in three weeks' time. 8 Since the private investigator didn't learn anything new, he didn't inform his employer either. 9 Since their son got lost, the parents' life has changed fundamentally. 10 The robber pointed the gun directly at the guard since he wanted to intimidate him. 11 The casino will have to be shut down for a few days since the floorboard is going to be changed. 12 Since you didn't tell us the truth, we are going to accuse you of perjury. 13 The modern roof could not withstand the strong wind since it hadn't been attached properly. 14 Since the school year is about to finish next week, pupils will be receiving their reports. 15 Workers are in a rush to get to work since it's the rush hour out there.

Exercise 110:

1 Mr Lawrence wrote such a wonderful novel **that** his book became a bestseller forty-four days after being published. 2 Jack said **that** I shouldn't bother knocking next time I came to see him. 3 The water was so warm **that** the children didn't even try to get in slowly. 4 The cake is so sweet **that** you should

have no more sweets today. 5 The taxi driver had such a hard day today **that** he is going to take a day off next week. 6 Jane's brother implied **that** she should have lent George the money anyway. 7 The tin was so badly damaged **that** it couldn't be fixed again. 8 The air conditioning is so loud **that** the staff can't focus on their work. 9 The latest iPhone is said to be so powerful **that** it's the best mobile phone ever. 10 Carmen told her boss **that** she needed to go to the post office right away. 11 The teacher told her pupils **that** she wasn't going to teach them the following year. 12 The atmosphere was so intense **that** some of my colleagues decided to quite as a result. 13 **That** I shouldn't be allowed to participate in the games is out of question. 14 The box was so heavy **that** the tall guy dropped it accidentally. 15 The driver remarked **that** he wouldn't want to work for our company at all.

Exercise 111:

1 The horse was galloping so slowly he got overtaken by virtually all the other horses. 2 The task manager indicated the notes could not be saved. 3 My aunt Laura used to be such a strict teacher all her students studied really hard. 4 The huge desk is so heavy six men had to carry it up the stairs. 5 The ATM said there was a card problem and didn't give me any money. 6 The baker announced the wholesome bread was sold out. 7 The software is so difficult to install only our IT guys are allowed to do so. 8 Master Handerson has had so many girlfriends his parents didn't bother to get to know them all. 9 The webzine has become so popular millions of people worldwide read it every day. 10 Honestly, I've never thought the nice gentleman would ever turn into such a horrible monster. 11 The cabbage looks so fresh I'd take a bite right away. 12 The pool has been so soiled nobody wanted to take a swim in it. 13 None of the security officers are so rude they would ever take your lunch without asking. 14 The sales rep said he was not interested in other people's work. 15 We were all surprised to find out we all made it to university.

Exercise 112:

1 The security analyst warned his superiors that the program was not stable. 2 The mobile operator from the US stated that he wouldn't take part in the competition. 3 The young teacher is so conceited that she doesn't even realise how little she knows herself. 4 I know that I wasn't a good foreman. 5 The horses in the stable are so well trained that they will win any race. 6 The raisins are so sour that you can't even eat them. 7 The sea was so calm that the ship wasn't even moving. 8 The anchor implied that he was going to retire at the end of the year. 9 The doctors were amazed that the patient got well so fast. 10 The maths contest tends to be so difficult that nobody wants to take part in it. 11 The accused shouted out that he hadn't committed the offense. 12 The bouquet was so big that two people had to carry it. 13 The voice replied that the supplies were in warehouse B. 14 The pianist was muttering something so quietly that you couldn't make out anything he was saying. 15 The underground in our part of town is so dirty that people try and avoid it.

Exercise 113:

1 The new shopping centre is really cool, **though** it's not very handy. 2 **Though** I haven't heard from Jim for quite a while now, I'm positive he's doing fine. 3 The children seem to be enjoying the story, **though** they don't like all the characters. 4 Sarah seems to be a fascinating, **though** crazy person. 5 He didn't come to the meeting on Friday, **though** he promised to. 6 **Though** a little surprising, Mr Baker's promotion was justified. 7 The new microwave oven launches next month, **though** I don't know when exactly. 8 The guests departed late at night, **though** they would have stayed a bit longer if they could. 9 The engineer couldn't manage the other application, **though**. 10 The students are not allowed to play with the new microscope, **though**, as it was a trifle too expensive. 11 Mrs Brown, **though** hungry, still refuses to have lunch. 12 The hunters are practising their shooting skills outside the barn, **though** there is nothing to shoot at. 13 The puppet master sounded embarrassed, **though** he had no reason to feel ashamed at all. 14 **Though** the fixed costs are still quite high, the managers have already managed to push them down by 2.1 per cent. 15 The teacher, **though** somewhat strict, is quite popular with his students and colleagues alike.

Exercise 114:

1 Though the caretaker hasn't spoken to his supplier yet, he's sure to have the job done by Monday
2 stopped at the traffic lights though it showed green 3 wants to move to Florida though he's never

been there 4 wants to perform the surgery right away though he's drunk as a sailor 5 ran away from home though he was well taken care of 6, though very tasty, was a little too sweet / , though a little too sweet, was very tasty 7 was expelled from school though she didn't do anything wrong 8 sacked the young accountant though he didn't falsify the data 9 is paid extremely well, though his job discipline leaves much to be desired 10 claims not to have received the payment though it was made three weeks ago

Exercise 115:

1 died during the violent attack although the terrorist attack was foiled 2 has been given green light by the chair's associates. Still, he doesn't want to approve it 3 crashed at great speed, yet nobody was hurt 4 crash landed. Fortunately, nobody was injured 5 pay the company anything even though the glass pane blew into smithereens 6 was feeling sick this morning. Still, he wanted to go to school 7 wasn't reprimanded despite the fact that he caused a lot of trouble at the negotiation 8 didn't know what to do; nonetheless, she didn't ask for help 9 Although the baker is polite and friendly, he sometimes sounds very strict and bossy / The baker sometimes sounds very strict and bossy although he's polite and friendly 10 sell at a high price. Surprisingly, they are not worth much

Exercise 116:

1 Though the plan is very risky indeed, I guess it's worth it. 2 The businesspeople were not going to pack up their stalls, though the storm was approaching. 3 The headmistress is hard-working, though not very consistent. 4 Though the movie was not very interesting at the start, it managed to capture our attention at the end. 5 Though the flight was long, it wasn't very tiring. 6 The king was enjoying his wealth though his subjects were starving. 7 The trainer was satisfied with our knowledge though he did not approve of our attitude to work much. 8 Though Slovakia is just a small country, in the EU it has the same say as, say, Germany. 9 Though the modem is still working fine, I can't connect to the Internet. 10 The nurse works long hours every day though she doesn't get paid for the overtime. 11 Even the ungrateful students passed their GCSE exams though they hadn't studied anything thoroughly. 12 My cousin did not give me a call though she promised to call me the moment she came home. 13 Though the steak was well done, it wasn't very tasty. 14 Though the hot dog was cold, it calmed my hunger. 15 Though the work in a mine is difficult, nobody complains.

Exercise 117:

1 How long is it **till** the meeting starts? 2 Mr Winston worked for BMW **till** he got fired in 2007. 4 It's about twenty minutes **till** the exam is over. 3 The kind-hearted nurse took care of the sick man **till** he could walk again. 4 I'm not going to leave the shop **till** I've spoken to the manager. 5 We won't leave your office **till** you have given us a satisfactory explanation. 6 **Till** the designer hasn't finished the job, he's not going to start another. 7 Susan won't leave you alone **till** you've told her your secret. 8 Some of the workers remain at the mine **till** late at night. 9 The boxers used to train **till** the sun went down. 10 The students are going to study the topic **till** they know every single word by heart. 11 The accused remained silent **till** his lawyer arrived. 12 The couple won't be back **till** the show starts. 13 Jack's sons will stay away **till** it's all over. 14 The bank manager did not realise what was going on **till** it was too late. 15 Officially, the detective hadn't stopped working **till** his supervisor told him to take a day off.

Exercise 118:

1 remains in charge of the department till Ms Grewsome hasn't arrived 2 will have to finish the letters till her boss comes back from lunch 3 shall not have dinner until they tell us who broke the expensive china vase 4 kept working on their project till they ran out of money 5 is not going to let you off the hook till you tell him the whole story 6 is not going to leave the house till he's fixed the broken washing machine 7 won't be able to stop the criminals till they get some help from the government 8 giving you a hand till my brother comes to pick me up, Dave 9 will remain closed till the windows have been painted 10 won't be sold till they're at least six months old

Exercise 119:

1 The sailors had to wait till the storm abated. 2 John's friends were waiting in the sun till he returned from his training. 3 The patient will have to wait till the tranquilisers take effect. 4 A period of anarchy

is the period of time till a strong man, usually a dictator, seizes power. 5 The disguised police officers were lying in wait in a dark alley till their colleague called them. 6 The hairdresser stayed at work last night till the last customer left. 7 The trade unions will try to amalgamate till the end of the year. 8 The maid was working in the yard till it got dark. 9 The judge was trying to resolve the dispute till both parties were satisfied. 10 The actor stood on the stage till the director was satisfied with the last scene. 11 The general wasn't informed till it was too late. 12 The businesspeople decided to remain at the fair till it came to its very end. 13 The refreshments were free till the discussion started. 14 Till you haven't got the green light, you can't start working on the project. 15 The baker was baking the bread till his shift was over.

Exercise 120:

1 **Unless** the accountant has made a mistake, I received two hundred pounds less than I should have. 2 You'd better tell the investigator the truth **unless** you want to go to jail. 3 **Unless** the moving van is yours, you've got a lot of explaining to do. 4 The company is doomed **unless** the management can find an investor by the end of the year. 5 **Unless** the show is free, we won't be able to join you. 6 I'd like to take a day off tomorrow **unless** you've already planned some meetings, Dan. 7 The background singer will be disappointed **unless** he gets what he wants. 8 **Unless** the storm passes soon, you should stay in the inn for the night. 9 The oil tycoon is not willing to risk his own money **unless** he's sure to benefit from the venture. 10 Kate, **unless** you shut your big mouth now, you will disclose all the details of the contract. 11 The police haven't found any hidden passports in the house **unless** they were moved to a different place. 12 The agents will be acquitted of all charges **unless** they have really taken the orders from a foreign power. 13 **Unless** you quit smoking cold turkey, you'll never stop. 14 The racehorse is sure to lose **unless** you put some miracle drugs into its food. 15 **Unless** your boyfriend ponies up 1.4 million dollars in less than 24 hours, the bet is lost.

Exercise 121:

1 lose your driving licence unless the police catch you drinking and driving 2 is sure to go to prison unless he cooperates with the authorities 3 should stay in unless they want to freeze to death out there 4 cannot see the movie unless you're over eighteen 5 Unless you're feeling fine again tomorrow, go and see your GP / Go and see your GP tomorrow unless you're feeling fit again 6 find yourself on your own unless you stop paying your employees peanuts 7 won't stop unless the enemy stops attacking our MASH units 8 won't be very popular unless she stops bossing everybody around all the time 9 why we should move unless the premises are a lot cheaper than the ones we're in now 10 get fired sooner than you think unless you keep your mouth shut, Carl

Exercise 122:

1 If 2 If 3 if 4 unless 5 If 6 unless 7 unless 8 if 9 unless 10 if 11 if 12 unless 13 if 14 unless 15 unless

Exercise 123:

1 The chair won't postpone the meeting unless the majority of the MPs present asks him to do so. 2 The motorcyclist won't take part in the contest unless he receives an official invitation. 3 Scientists won't accept the awards this year unless their Chinese colleagues are set free. 4 The paramedics can't save the bleeding police officer's life unless he is taken over to the hospital right away. 5 The rich nobleman won't subsidize our organisation anymore unless we give him insight into our books. 6 The company teetering on the edge of bankruptcy can't be saved anymore unless the government back it up. 7 The Hungarian minister won't pay a visit to the new spa unless he has enough time to spare. 8 The mayor's spokesperson wouldn't take a stance to the topic unless he were forced to do so. 9 The book won't sell well unless the author publishes it under his own name. 10 My grandmother couldn't fall asleep at night unless she had some warm milk. 11 The emperor will cancel the hunting unless he's feeling well. 12 Unless the students study more, they won't pass their exams. 13 Unless the doctor was injured by accident, he must have been whacked with an iron stick. 14 Ordinary people will never see the performance unless they know somebody influential. 15 The mechanism won't work unless we redesign a part of the software.

Exercise 124:

1 The enraged customer is not going to leave the shop **until** he's spoken to the manager. 2 The analyst can stay at work **until** he's totally exhausted. 3 The war is unlikely to end **until** the two countries can agree on some definite terms. 4 It seems the dictionary won't be revised **until** a new editor takes over. 5 **Until** you haven't told me what's going on around here, I'm not going to give you any advice at all. 6 The ship cannot leave the harbour **until** it has unloaded the freight. 7 **Until** the CFO returns from his business trip, you are going to be in charge. 8 The enmity between the neighbouring countries will last **until** one of them finally gives in to the other. 9 Sarah is not willing to talk to me **until** I've apologised for the mishap that happened to us the other day. 10 **Until** the divers have recovered the box, we need to remain calm. 11 I can't imagine that the PA would stay at work **until** her boss tells her to call it a night. 12 This is a kindergarten in which children can play **until** they actually start their formal studies. 13 **Until** we have sorted out the issues, let's not discuss anything with the press, shall we? 14 The king shall not die **until** he's found an heir to his throne. 15 The wealthy philanthropist won't give away any money to the charity **until** he's sure about its targets.

Exercise 125:

1 won't get approved until it's financially sound 2 didn't stop playing until the DJ's equipment had broken down 3 have to stay put until the driver has sobered up 4 must not be tempered with until we're absolutely certain that it doesn't detonate at once 5 will have to remain in this room until you are released 6 in the area will have to be diverted until the road repairs are finished 7 you'll have to stay with me until the whole thing has passed 8 will not stop leaking until it's been fixed properly 9 will stay under water until you've dried the whole place 10 anything to do with her until she pays me back

Exercise 126:

1 The contract won't be signed until the marketing manager has had a look at the proposal. 2 Your dog has to remain outside the shop until you have finished your shopping. 3 The plane circled around until there was enough time to land it. 4 The camera crew worked on the scene until it was perfect. 5 The coach will not quit his job with the local high school until he has found a new one. 6 Please, remain seated until the flight attendants tell you to unbuckle. 7 Do not exit the plane until it has come to a complete standstill. 8 The police cannot arrest the criminal until they have sufficient evidence of his guilt. 9 The computer will keep breaking down until you have installed the new OS. 10 Don't talk to Mr Green until he's asked you a question first. 11 Nobody is allowed to enter the classroom until the maths exam is over. 12 A suspect is considered innocent until he's been proven guilty. 13 Don't bother the manager until you've collected all the necessary data. 14 The hard-working shop assistant will stay at work until you tell her to go home. 15 I cannot tell you anything until I have spoken to David.

Exercise 127:

1 **When** do you usually start work in the company? 2 The witness will be interrogated **when** the chief inspector returns from court. 3 **When** are the newlyweds going on their honeymoon? 4 A lot of people start fidgeting **when** they are caught lying. 5 **When** do we use the definite article in English? 6 **When** our shift ends, we always go to the pub. 7 **When** the sun goes down, we shall go on a hunt. 8 The bank was robbed **when** the police officers were taking part in an educational seminar. 9 The strange woman was being questioned by the attorney **when** her husband admitted to killing the old lady. 10 Why do I keep reminding you of good manners **when** you obviously never listen? 11 **When** should a document be red flagged? 12 Just go ahead and continue working for Mr Dansley **when** his company is clearly on the edge of bankruptcy. 13 **When** should a decent person become ruthless and violent? 14 **When** I say A, he says B. 15 You can bend metal **when** you heat it.

Exercise 128:

1 The committee will know the results when they get faxed to us on Monday. 2 The cow is going to be taken to the slaughterhouse when she's already too old to give milk. 3 When I see you again, I will call the police at once. 4 You don't have to repeat everything to the students when it's obviously pointless. 5 When the match has finished, the teams are going out to the pub for a beer. 6 Ask the girl when she's going to clear her debts. 7 The mayor visited Africa when he was a little boy. 8 The convict was only

nineteen when he committed his first murder. 9 Tell me when to stop typing. 10 When the bus stopped, it was almost midnight. 11 Some people are happiest when they are sitting in front of the telly doing nothing at all. 12 When the stakes are really high, you should put a lot of effort into your work. 13 You can hop in when you are in town next time. 14 When it's too hard to find a problem in the software, simply run a diagnostics program. 15 Just use the indefinite article when you mention something for the very first time, George.

Exercise 129:

1 I broke up with his girlfriend when he found a better one 2 was making a call to his girlfriend when he was driving his convertible 3 spends the first day at home sleeping when he returns from a long journey 4 riding his bike to work when he could simply take the bus 5 whacked the gunman when he shot his first victim 6 hit the panic button when the masked men came in the liquor store 7 a miracle that the villagers can pay their bills when most of them are illiterate 8 did not listen to the defense attorney when he didn't know all the facts 9 When does the meeting start 10 should not be blamed for the misfortune when the sheep ran away during a storm

Exercise 130:

1 When 2 when 3 if 4 if 5 When 6 if 7 if 8 when 9 if 10 when 11 If / When 12 if 13 when 14 if 15 if

Exercise 131:

1 When is the new restaurant going to open? 2 When are the students to do their homework? 3 Jack's brother didn't say when he was leaving. 4 I'm positive this is when I saw the suspect last. 5 When you stop talking that nonsense, you can join me for dinner. 6 When is it ok to kiss a woman on her cheek? 7 The workers always wear protective suits when working in the radioactive chamber. 8 The gas stove exploded when we were making supper. 9 When you check the bill, you'll find out that the guest has been overcharged. 10 Why do you take such big risks when you could get by without any stress at all? 11 When served with lemon, the drink tastes much better. 12 The tenants are going to protest against the new factory being built in their neighbourhood when they know it's perfectly futile. 13 When are you going to arrest the troublemaker? 14 The driver claimed he hadn't had anything to drink when he was obviously drunk as a sailor. 15 When a man commits murder, he ought to be hanged right away.

Exercise 132:

1 The young princess blushes **whenever** she's complimented on her looks and charms. 2 Let's discuss the funding arrangements in the next semester, **whenever** that starts. 3 Pete's best students always try to use English and German **whenever** they've got the opportunity to do so. 4 **Whenever** will you start using your brain instead of your fists? 5 The former soldier felt pain in his leg **whenever** the weather turned bad. 6 **Whenever** is the new smartphone going to be released? 7 I'm afraid you'll have to wait for the next event, **whenever** that is. 8 **Whenever** the major raised his voice, the soldiers always stood still and listened. 9 Your friends can of course come and stay with us **whenever** they're in town. 10 He gets a little upset **whenever** you mention the name of his ex-wife. 11 **Whenever** do you want to get the roof fixed, Henry? 12 Lovers usually kiss **whenever** they stand under the mistletoe. 13 **Whenever** our captain says yes, his deputy says no. 14 **Whenever** will you realise that this is not New York? 15 The goods were shipped in December or **whenever** it was that your aunt lost her job.

Exercise 133:

1 Whenever it rains, mushrooms pop up all around the house. 2 Whenever the professor thinks about the beginnings of his teaching career, he starts feeling nauseous. 3 The village gets flooded whenever the river rises more than six metres above average. 4 Whenever the bus driver stops the bus, he checks his timetable. 5 The horny skiing instructor is asking his colleague out whenever she's around. 6 Jane's always into naughty whenever I meet her. 7 Whenever the priest prepares a sermon, he tries to link it with the churchgoers' everyday lives. 8 You can't take off whenever you like, George. 9 Whenever the poet reads a romantic novel, she feels deeply moved. 10 The waiting room smells funny whenever you let a smelly dog in there. 11 Suicide bombers fight for their values whenever the right chance presents itself. 12 Whenever there's a circus in town, people always line up to get a ticket. 13 Whenever the girl

ponies up for concert tickets, her boyfriend makes an excuse so that he doesn't have to go out with her. 14 Whenever do you stop bothering my teenage daughter? 15 Whenever the phone rings, the secretary picks it up and greets the caller in a friendly and polite manner.

Exercise 134:

1 of air blows in the office whenever you open the front door 2 tells me some wild stories about him getting drunk whenever I see him 3 Whenever is the janitor going to fix the plumbing 4 wait till the CEO comes to visit our plant again, whenever that is 5 Whenever I lose my car keys, I have to call my wife and she gets terribly annoyed with me / I have to call my wife whenever I lose my car keys and she gets terribly annoyed with me 6 that orange prices in our shopping centre go up whenever I want to buy some 7 Whenever do you intend to start cramming for your finals, Ben 8 get into serious arguments whenever they meet some pretty women 9 asks me for advice whenever he doesn't understand something 10 wait for the next concert, whenever that is

Exercise 135:

1 Whenever the accountant tells her corny jokes, everybody tries to find a safe spot away from her. 2 Whenever the children dialled the strange number, they phoned somebody in Japan. 3 Whenever will your sister realise that I'm not interested in her romantically? 4 The dog seems restless whenever it gets out of the house. 5 The supervisor has postponed the meeting to Monday or whenever Mr Lloyd can spare some time to listen to our proposals. 6 Whenever you think of blue and modern, think of the daycare centre next door. 7 The headmistress seems to be studying Spanish whenever I knock on her door. 8 Whenever will the man stop bothering me? 9 The security guard is watching videos or playing computer games whenever I check on him. 10 Whenever the new receptionist gets a tough question, she asks her colleague for advice. 11 You'll have to remain patient and wait till the banker is in town again, whenever that is. 12 Whenever will the girl take responsibility for her own actions? 13 I wonder whenever the merchant will turn up asking for more money. 14 The servant quickly rushes in the room whenever the master calls him. 15 The researchers need to confirm the data asap or whenever you can lend them the supercomputer.

Exercise 136:

1 Did you put the tablet computer **where** I was sitting last night? 2 The spy has refused to say **where** he's from. 3 The FBI agent won't reveal **where** he spent the past five months. 4 Some friends of mine often go to places **where** it's really cold in summer. 5 I haven't got a clue **where** the envelope came from. 6 This is the most critical stage of the operation **where** precise planning is the key to success. 7 I don't know **where** you intend to hide a twenty-foot elephant in less than five minutes. 8 **Where** a nice little chat can clear the air, never try to use force or violence, my friend. 9 The renegade travels from place to place searching for places **where** good is losing its battle to evil. 10 **Where** a few bucks can do the trick, do not transfer the all our funds. 11 However, **where** a less aggressive approach may have helped achieve the goals, John's strategy brought the whole business to a sudden stop. 12 You could find yourself in a situation **where** you'll need our help. 13 The governing party is likely to raise taxes again next year and this is **where** we must say no now. 14 The frail girl managed to straighten up the place **where** dozens others before her had failed miserably. 15 The thieves are not going to tell the investigator **where** they hid the stolen money.

Exercise 137:

1 I honestly cannot remember where I left the umbrella. 2 The shop assistant didn't really say where she was going. 3 How about putting the noticeboard where everybody can see it? 4 Where the mosque once stood, there is now a tall skyscraper. 5 The CFO and COO insist on expanding to other markets where there is strong competition. 6 Just put the guns where I can see them. 7 The intruders haven't found where the secret chamber is hidden yet. 8 This is the stage where most players lose their battle. 9 Prague, where my step-brother was born, is the capital of the Czech Republic. 10 But where most soldiers would have given up long ago, the brave sergeant fought on until he reached the enemy HQ. 11 Could you tell me where I can find Mr Donovan? 12 Unfortunately, the hit man has found himself in a situation where he had to choose between the life of his girlfriend and his own. 13 Where the big castle used to stand, there is now only a ruin which reminds us of our ancestors' glorious past. 14 My

daughter's fiancé ran away to a place where the authorities won't be able to find him. 15 The men's duty is to go where they are needed.

Exercise 138:

1 the place where the hideous monster crawled out from 2 march where they are needed 3 has never stayed where he was told to remain 4 the exam with flying colours where a faint-hearted recruit could never pass 5 survived the battle with no more than a few scratches where an ordinary man would have perished instantly 6 used to teach at Harvard University where, coincidentally, my sister studied biology 7 where my wife wanted to go as a child 8 where I should hide the treasure 9 tell me where the ravine is 10 did not give up where his friends who are around 70 did not reach the peak

Exercise 139:

1 The police can't find out where the robber is hiding. 2 Could you tell me where I can find the beans? 3 Where any other metal would have been smashed into smithereens, the new alloy did not even heat up. 4 Where there's a will, there's a way. 5 Eventually the pioneers reached a point where there was no turning back. 6 I haven't got the faintest idea where the boy might have found the gun. 7 This shall be the place where our new factory will rise. 8 Once, the ruthless general used to teach at the same school where my brother studied physics. 9 Are you sure this is the spot where you saw the homeless guy lying around? 10 The accountant doesn't seem to be sure where he put his notebook. 11 Kate's niece lived in London, where she worked as an English teacher. 12 Would you mind telling me where the GPO is? 13 The research has reached a stage where it would not be prudent to continue anymore. 14 So where does that leave us? 15 The gangster is not sure where he disposed of the corpse.

Exercise 140:

1 Teachers at state schools have not seen a pay rise in over three years now **whereas** their colleagues from private schools receive a rise every year. 2 **Whereas** my old Beetle is as reliable today as it was when I bought it, my brother's new BMW keeps breaking down all the time. 3 The cook refused to do overtime **whereas** his assistant said he had no problems staying a bit longer. 4 **Whereas** no more than 1.2 per cent of houses in our area were burgled last year, the estimates state that almost 4.2 per cent were broken into in the first quarter of this year only. 5 **Whereas** the CFO is likely to take huge risks, the CEO usually plays it safe. 6 **Whereas** people used to keep healthy in the past, they consume quite a lot of unhealthy food these days. 7 Jack's brother has been cramming like crazy these past few months **whereas** a year ago, you wouldn't have even seen him touch a book. 8 **Whereas** certain figures have risen significantly, profits have fallen slightly. 9 My colleagues say that everything's alright **whereas** I believe that there's a lot of rotten stuff in here. 10 It seems you have forgotten your keys at the office **whereas** your brother still has his on him now. 11 **Whereas** the murderer managed to get away with no more than a few bruises, the innocent blind got all killed. 12 The lazy and arrogant butt-kisser got promoted immediately **whereas** the smart and hard-working analyst has been stuck in the same job for well over two years now. 13 **Whereas** our Spanish classes have been going down the drain, the French lessons are awesome pure and simple. 14 The accountant is always busy checking some accounts or other **whereas** his assistants usually spend most of their time in the café. 15 **Whereas** the business proposal sounds fine, your financial plan is a major disaster.

Exercise 141:

1 is rich in vitamins whereas it contains no chemicals 2 is wealthy whereas his brother is as poor as a church mouse 3 doesn't speak Japanese whereas Pete does 4 has a really long tail whereas common mice tend to have a short one 5 works at the weekends only whereas his associate works from Mondays to Fridays 6 did not want to join the club whereas her brother would have done anything to become a member 7 works just fine whereas the desktop computer seems to be having some issues 8 is transmitted—as the name suggests—via cable whereas satellite TV receives the signal from a satellite orbiting the Earth 9 didn't stay at work much longer than necessary whereas the captain stayed till midnight 10 see anything whereas my brother had a good view of everything

Exercise 142:

1 takes no interest in art at all while her brother appreciates it 2 throws cakes for fun whilst his friends like to eat them 3 gets rather warm when you use it a lot. Interestingly, the oven stays cool all the time 4 is strict and professional; by contrast, his son is kind-hearted and friendly 5 is priceless but the new grinders are cheap and worthless 6 must be about sixty. In contrast, his wife seems as young as forty 7 son helps around the house whenever he can; however, his older brothers don't lift a finger to help us / son helps around the house whenever he can. His older brothers, however, don't lift a finger to help us 8 is the oldest building in town and the shopping centre is the newest 9 takes care of marketing while I'm responsible for management 10 speaks excellent Russian as compared to her assistant who is a mere beginner

Exercise 143:

1 Whereas the latest OS comes with a brand new design, its predecessor offered no more than a few modifications. 2 Whereas the interpreter can speak six languages, his employer speaks one only. 3 The tutor was working hard whereas his student was yawning and looking out of the window in boredom. 4 Whereas a five-inch smartphone is great for holding in one hand, bigger phones struggle to offer the same kind of comfort. 5 The two-room flat is great value for money whereas the three-room apartment is definitely overpriced. 6 Whereas the singer should be rehearsing for his performance tomorrow, he's decided to go out for a beer with his friends. 7 The director wanted to spend more time on the scene whereas the studio owner was rushing him to complete the lot by the end of the month. 8 Jack's work load went up by five percent this year whereas his boss sits in the office the whole time staring out of the window doing nothing at all. 9 Whereas profound communication skills need to be developed over a longer period of time, the basics can be learnt in a month or two. 10 The professor usually has a big lunch whereas his assistant only takes a small bite. 11 Whereas the head flight attendant has to do a lot of things during the flight, the others don't usually deal with so many things. 12 The church burnt down whereas the liquor store survived without any damages. 13 The bus driver pulled through just fine whereas the passengers were all killed on the spot. 14 Whereas the kidney transplant got lost on the way to London, the heart arrived in perfect condition. 15 The keen swimmer keeps in good health all the time whereas his coach often takes it easy.

Exercise 144:

1 The tournament had already started, **whereupon** the latecomer was automatically disqualified. 2 You can wait for the guests at the restaurant, **whereupon** you may take them out for dinner at once. 3 Some of the children were hiding at the back of the class, **whereupon** their teacher couldn't see them well. 4 Mr Thorston sold his share of the company, **whereupon** he lost almost 2.1 bn dollars. 5 The avalanche buried the whole valley in a few minutes, **whereupon** the rescue service had to act fast. 6 The students were staring at the stranger, **whereupon** she asked them something in Korean. 7 There was a blackout in our office block yesterday, **whereupon** all the screens went blank. 8 The customer service assistant cursed angrily, **whereupon** her supervisor rebuked her saying that she should have pushed the mute button first. 9 The fire went out at night, **whereupon** the campers were sitting in complete darkness. 10 Jason didn't pass his GCSE exams last year, **whereupon** he decided to take a year off and do some serious cramming. 11 The surgeon came to work drunk as a skunk, **whereupon** he was fired right away. 12 The speaker started fidgeting all of a sudden, **whereupon** she could not focus on her speech anymore. 13 After three years of intensive language studies, Dan is still unable to speak a word Dutch, **whereupon** he decided to quit the language. 14 The door blew shut with a loud bang, **whereupon** the executive came out and told us to be more quiet. 15 The smartphone stopped working, **whereupon** the angry owner decided to take it back to the shop.

Exercise 145:

1 was found guilty of embezzlement, whereupon he was sentenced to eight years in prison 2 cracked the expensive China vase, whereupon he had to pay for the repairs 3 tried to flee the country, whereupon he was caught at the airport 4 of the open window, whereupon it got killed in an instant 5 dropped his bag on the bus and had to get off quickly, whereupon he lost his friend's notes 6 told Susan to do more exercise, whereupon she got very upset and left the surgery at once 7 that the bunch of crooks was trying to rip me off, whereupon I called the police immediately 8 the

carpenter's name, whereupon I had a quickly look at his business card to jog my memory 9 don't speak French, whereupon they decided to hire an interpreter for the conference 10 has been rather slow lately, whereupon the company may have to lay off staff

Exercise 146:

I had to cancel the meeting at short notice, so the supplier had to reschedule the appointment for the fifth time 2 won't be able to get their kid the toy he wants for Christmas. As a result, the little one will feel quite disappointed 3 didn't work out well last year, so the company won't get the job this year 4 gave in his notice this week, and thus the managers need to find a replacement 5 the fuse blew. Consequently, the engineer had to stop working for a while 6 broke down on the highway. Therefore, he had it towed to the nearest garage 7 suffered a heart attack, and then he was rushed to the hospital at once 8 came back to the classroom with unzipped trousers. As a result, everybody burst into a loud fit of laughter 9 decided to make a move on Jill after the couple split up 10 was organised because some Polish tourists got lost in the mountains 11 lost her purse which is why she called her nephew to help her look for it

Exercise 147:

1 There was a loud bang, whereupon the horses ran away. 2 Ms Jenkins broke her arm, whereupon she had to stay three weeks at home. 3 Laura's little daughter got sick, whereupon she decided to see the doctor right away. 4 The library is getting a bit too small for all the books, whereupon we'll have to start looking for a new place. 5 The police station was set on fire, whereupon the captain was forced to find alternative premises for his officers. 6 The house is going to be pulled down soon, whereupon two families will lose the roof above their heads. 7 The power switch seems to have malfunctioned, whereupon the whole system went crazy. 8 Six rebels got killed yesterday, whereupon the local terrorist cell promised retaliation. 9 The first daughter got herself a horrible boyfriend, whereupon her father made up his mind that she wouldn't see him ever again. 10 The chef asked for a pay rise, whereupon he got fired by the restaurant owner. 11 The computer has been running rather slow for the past few weeks, whereupon I asked an IT specialist to have a look at it. 12 The kitchen was a mess after John's party, whereupon his mother made him do all the cleaning. 13 The analyst forgot to prepare the presentation, whereupon the CFO asked him to have it ready by Thursday. 14 The home team lost the finals, whereupon they all started crying. 15 A dangerous murderer has just escaped from the local penitentiary, whereupon the police started a nationwide search for him.

Exercise 148:

1 The delivery guy can put the boxes **wherever** he likes. 2 **Wherever** you hide the money, do not keep them at home. 3 Please, add commas **wherever** they are needed in the text. 4 The sailor saw water and nothing but water **wherever** he looked. 5 **Wherever** you go, do not go to Mexico for holiday. 6 I smell a rat **wherever** I go in the company. 7 The IT engineer must be contacted asap **wherever** he is. 8 Greg says he'll be at the Waterhouse, **wherever** that is. 9 **Wherever** you stash the guns, make sure nobody finds them. 10 **Wherever** the officers were standing, they had the building surrounded within minutes. 11 We can go party **wherever** you like, Jill. 12 **Wherever** the young man turns to, he always sees his girlfriend's dumb face. 13 Mr Monron has just moved to Glingston, **wherever** that is. 14 **Wherever** possible, our clients use safe payment methods only. 15 **Wherever** you choose to get the new phone, do not buy it in the local shops.

Exercise 149:

1 Wherever the waitress goes, she always comes home with a stain 2 can find drugs at Jackson's wherever you look 3 to read the thieves their rights wherever you catch them 4 but sand wherever you look 5 can't have been to South Africa wherever she's been so far 6 talks to loads of people wherever he goes 7 saw weed wherever he checked 8 were running around the bar wherever you looked 9 doesn't have any wi-fi signal wherever you put it 10 is always in the wrong lot, wherever he parks the car

Exercise 150:

1 Wherever possible people always look for a way to make their lives easier. 2 The maths teacher was

staying in Goodlemburg, wherever that is. 3 The printer can be installed wherever you choose, Dave. 4 Wherever you move the big chair, do not put it into a corner. 5 Wherever my sis goes, she always ends up back at home. 6 Wherever the maid left the broom, it can't have been in the kitchen. 7 Fixed costs need to be reduced wherever necessary. 8 Hide the refugees wherever you can. 9 You can get in touch with me wherever you want, Martin. 10 Cross out these words wherever unnecessary. 11 Wherever she keeps the documents, they won't be in the desk. 12 Guests may be seated wherever they like for the time being. 13 The teachers take us to exhibitions and shows wherever there's something interesting in town. 14 Wherever the drunken sailor spent the night, it must have been somewhere dirty. 15 Please, ask about the missing girls wherever you go, Andrew.

Exercise 151:

1 There were two gentlemen looking for you **while** you were out shopping for Christmas presents. 2 **While** the janitor was fixing the plumbing, the front door got stuck. 3 Janice had hurt her ankle **while** playing badminton. 4 **While** I was looking for an exit, my wife was looking for a restroom. 5 **While** the tiger was still a cub, its parents took good care of it. 6 **While** in jail, try to think about your life in the future, Mr Anderson. 7 The children don't seem very happy with their presents **while** your niece is absolutely delighted. 8 The north got richer and richer **while** the south got into more and more debts. 9 **While** I have never understood why she got married to that awful man, I must admit that she's happier than ever before. 10 The brothers were having fun **while** their friends were working hard in the mines. 11 **While** we agree with your opinion, we cannot accept the means you intend to use to make the plan come true. 12 **While** in Rome, do as the Romans do. 13 **While** most of our workers are very capable in their field, there are always a few exceptions, such as Ruth and Phil. 14 I don't want to talk to you **while** having lunch. 15 So the PA was waiting at the desk **while** her boss was getting ready.

Exercise 152:

I had to stop working to take care of his son while his brother carried on working 2 slammed the door while leaving the office 3 were washing the deck while the captain was updating the software of his computer 4 was driving really fast while talking to his girlfriend on the phone 5 died last week while he was on holiday 6 While the oven is as old as the house, it is fast and reliable 7 were arrested while they were waiting for their business partner 8 be able to flee the country while he remains in custody 9 While he's been very helpful as far as advice goes, the manager can't help us solve the issue 10 was preparing the main meal while his assistant was taking care of the dessert

Exercise 153:

1 Whilst the passengers were getting on and off the bus, a man in a black coat suddenly jumped an old lady and ran away with her purse 2 sounded a bit hoarse whereas his sister was perfectly fine 3 speaks no French at all although his younger brother is half French 4 wanted to make the scene look more romantic, the director, on the other hand, was determined to make it as tragic as possible 5 is a tall dark man. His colleague, by contrast, is rather short and bald / ... By contrast, his colleague is rather short and bald 6 seized the building whilst the Prime Minister was giving a speech 7 Although I haven't forgotten about you, I still haven't received the book you ordered 8 can scrub the floorboard as long as they have nothing else to do 9 ask the private investigator for help provided (that) he's still available 10 Whilst the lawyer was studying the contract, his associate was checking the accounts / The associate was checking the accounts whilst the lawyer was studying the contract

Exercise 154:

1 While the handsome young man was lying in a deep coma, his fiancée fell in love with his brother. 2 The bank robbers lost a part of their dough while they were running from the police. 3 What were you doing while I was taking a shower last night? 4 While in the Netherlands, Mr and Mrs Dawson visited loads of sights. 5 While in custody, try to think about the rest of your life. 6 While some of your mates will become crooks, most of them will keep to the straight and narrow. 7 While I agree with you, I can honestly say that your methods leave a lot to be desired. 8 The wealthy investment banker is getting richer by the day while most of his clients is not making much money at all. 9 While the printer was being fixed, a masked man took my colleague's purse and left the building quickly. 10 While we were surprised by your quick escape, we thought it had something to do with Mr Barkely's arrival. 11 Marc

was left waiting in the corridor while his friend went into the room to speak to Ms Cunnings. 12 While the knife was found on the bed, the corpse was discovered in the bathroom. 13 The poor wife does all the housework while her lazy husband just does the dishes. 14 While your sis must have a good sense of humour, she can't be very popular with her friends. 15 While the managing director is inclined to accept your terms, he's not willing to sell his company.

Exercise 155:

1 The mayor became obsessed with politics **whilst** working on his master thesis in 2007. 2 **Whilst** on my way to work, I saw a man hitting his head against a wall in the park. 3 The company's losing funds **whilst** the management isn't doing anything to tackle the problems. 4 **Whilst** in bed, the husband and wife were talking about their honeymoon in Malaga. 5 **Whilst** I don't intend to mock your brother, he always drives me crazy and I always lose control over myself. 6 **Whilst** the maid was working on the third floor, her friend was having a smoke outside. 7 The bread got a bit stale **whilst** we were away on holiday. 8 Sarah's was grabbed by a hungry dog **whilst** she was taking a shower. 9 **Whilst** looking into the matter closely, the lawyer found some discrepancies in the men's testimonies. 10 The butcher went away to see his friend **whilst** he was still on the clock. 11 **Whilst** searching for a new place to rent, Mr Daniels found a lovely little apartment in Kingston Road. 12 **Whilst** I've never believed the story, I was still surprised to find out that so many people did. 13 The food will have to be prepared **whilst** the cook is away. 14 **Whilst** typing the essay, the student accidentally cut the power cable with his knife. 15 The traffic wardens might be waiting round the corner **whilst** you are parking your car, Norbert.

Exercise 156:

1 was reading his journal whilst a patient was waiting outside the surgery 2 was talking to some hot babes whilst a surfer drowned in the sea 3 kept staring at a talk, dark and handsome guy in a black suit whilst a pickpocket snatched her purse 4 Whilst nobody complained about the smell, we were all feeling rather uneasy 5 was experiencing some technical difficulties whilst the captain was attending to a passenger instead of actually dealing with the crisis 6 Whilst I've no idea what's going on around here, it doesn't really matter to me 7 Whilst you keep torturing the prisoners, ask them where they have hidden the treasure 8 were making a very sad impression whilst the gorilla was happy 9 wants to see Australia next year whilst his wife would like to go to Japan 10 was resting after a difficult scene whilst rehearsing his lines for the next (one)

Exercise 157:

1 was fixing the broken pyramid while the actor was looking for his wig 2 Although I'm not against your proposal, I don't believe it will yield 3 never talk to somebody on the phone and drive at the same time 4 As long as I've got the chance, I'd like to ask you a few 5 During the time that our technicians were out for lunch, 6 was studying French at university while she was staying in France 7 never understood my success, but he always published my books 8 is well versed in Slovak poetry although he's never attended any poetry classes 9 can't speak Chinese, and yet she spent three years living and working in China 10 was taking care of the lights when the plumber was checking the pipes

Exercise 158:

1 Whilst studying a foreign language, you should also try to learn something about the culture. 2 The monetary policy could have been updated whilst working on a different piece of legislation. 3 Whilst I agree with what you've just said, I cannot understand that you are the only one to do something about it. 4 Whilst in her teens, Laura picked up a lot useful skills. 5 Whilst the magician was performing a trick, the children were looking at him with baited breath. 6 The coach was drawing plans for the next match whilst the players were practising their kicks in the backyard. 7 Whilst Kate's grandfather was mowing the grass, his niece was cooking something sweet for dinner. 8 Whilst the investors have no objections to your plans, they are a bit worried about how much money you are going to need for the whole project. 9 Whilst the dentist is not concerned about your daughter, he does have some doubts about your son's dental hygiene. 10 A delivery boy left this envelope for you whilst you were in the meeting with Mr Graham. 11 The electrician fixed the lights in the corridor whilst he was looking into the switches. 12 Whilst singing merrily at the pub, the sailors were also feasting their eyes on the pretty

waitress. 13 Whilst providing customer care, the young technician also managed to write a great book on optics in 21st century. 14 The antivirus software was scanning the computer whilst the owner was installing some new software. 15 Whilst I've never heard about the brand, I'm sure it must be good.

Exercise 159:

1 It looks **as if** the financial analyst has forgotten something. 2 It feels **as if** the temperature was rising. 3 The applicant is fidgeting **as if** she couldn't answer the questions. 4 Your brother looks **as if** he's just seen a ghost. 5 It seems **as if** there's no other solution. 6 The defendant sat there smiling **as if** he were wrongly accused. 7 The soup tasted **as if** the cook had added some special favour to it. 8 The king was worried **as if** there was something serious on his mind. 9 The hermit stuffed his mouth **as if** he hadn't eaten for a whole month. 10 **As if** I were the one to blame! 11 The two of you look at each other **as if** you have met before. 12 It sounds **as if** the teamleader is going to apply for a new job. 13 Greg looks tired **as if** he spent the whole night at the office. 14 Tania has so little free time **as if** she were moonlighting every single night of the week. 15 **As if** Kate could have robbed a bank!

Exercise 160:

1 behaved as if he's the lord of the city (unreal) 2 as if it was going to rain soon (unreal) 3 gave me such a black look as if I'm responsible for the issues (real) 4 are putting up the fence as if they have nothing else to do (real) 5 talks as if she was a millionaire already (unreal) 6 you speak German (real) 7 you had a conscience (unreal) 8 often held his stomach before exams as if he were actually sick (unreal) 9 at me as if I were a criminal or something (unreal) 10 appears to be so determined as if he was longing for a prize desperately (unreal)

Exercise 161:

1 has worked as if it were a highly potent substance 2 As if you owned the world 3 are rocking the club as if they were the best dancers in the whole wide world 4 speaks as if he's the most important person on the committee 5 works really hard as if he's up for a big promotion 6 was inaccurate as if he wanted to cause us trouble 7 as if it's going to be a lovely day today 8 talks nice and sweet as if she's after something 9 As if I cared 10 As if you're going to tell us the truth

Exercise 162:

1 The priest preaches as if he was the wisest man alive. 2 As if your husband didn't know about me! 3 You look as if you haven't slept for days. 4 It seems as if it's going to rain soon. 5 The teacher speaks as if she actually were to London last year. 6 The murderer smiles as if he did not commit the crime. 7 Greg's mom works really hard as if she had to take care of the whole world. 8 The car looks awesome as if it were the best in the world. 9 The queen seems thoughtful as if there's something on her mind troubling her. 10 As if the surgeon didn't know his job! 11 The taxi driver made a strange face as if he's never seen an Asian girl. 12 The sick patient sneezed as if he had some serious health problems. 13 Your aunt sounds as if she were running for a political office. 14 As if I actually wanted to move to France! 15 The young girl is starting to look as if she ate nothing but chocolate the whole time.

Exercise 163:

1 **Assuming (that)** there's still enough petrol in the tank, turn around and do another round. 2 The pipe might get broken **assuming (that)** there's too much pressure in it. 3 **Assuming (that)** you have found a suitable place to rent, make sure to ask about the neighbours before you sign any contract. 4 Mr Grey will be waiting for you at the main gate **assuming (that)** you arrive before 5.00 pm. 5 The alarm clock will wake you up at 6.15 am **assuming (that)** you don't change the alarm settings. 6 **Assuming (that)** the managing director doesn't turn up within ten minutes, the supplier is going to leave at once. 7 Miss Simmons could give you a hand **assuming (that)** you haven't solved the technical issue yet. 8 Gerry's uncle is going to visit Australia in the summer **assuming (that)** he's got enough money for the ticket. 9 **Assuming (that)** the oil tycoon has plenty of money to spare, he could finance your expedition to the Himalayas. 10 **Assuming (that)** there's enough space in the truck left, we could take some of your old stuff as well. 11 Basically, you can buy anything you want **assuming (that)** you've got enough money to pay for it. 12 The captain wouldn't have made any other decision **assuming (that)** he would have been able to foresee the storm. 13 Actually, the dude could do anything he likes **assuming (that)**

his friends will protect him. 14 **Assuming (that)** the show hasn't started yet, I'd like to get two tickets. 15 **Assuming (that)** the bartender still works at the club, we'd like to have a word with him, Sir.

Exercise 164:

1 Assuming that there's enough funds to cover the costs of the project, will you give it a green light? 2 The company execs need to apologise assuming that they've really misjudged your proposal. 3 Mr Jon ought to get a pay rise assuming that he has delivered the results he says he has. 4 Assuming that there are no further questions, we can have a short break now. 5 Assuming that the principal method is right, the whole process will work just fine. 6 The dentist may make an awful lot of money assuming that his services are at a high level. 7 Assuming that the girl next door won't sell her bike, you can always get a brand new one at the local shop. 8 Assuming that you never break any company rules, do you get a bonus? 9 The boots are not made for walking in water assuming that they are not waterproof. 10 Miss Charleston can't compete in the contest assuming that she's never heard a single thing about maths. 11 Assuming that the characters in the novel are fictitious, I can't see anything wrong with giving them some of the novelist's friends. 12 You may park your vehicle at the back assuming that there's still free lots. 13 Assuming that there's no problem now anymore, I'd like to take my leave. 14 I've got some more questions assuming that you've still got some time. 15 The conference will be held at university assuming that the premises are large enough to accommodate sixty people.

Exercise 165:

1 Assuming (that) you give the new supervisor a chance, he might well surprise you 2 might rise a bit more assuming (that) your sermons get more down-to-earth 3 your acquittal be accepted by the wider public assuming (that) the attorney general dropped the charges now 4 would you have done with the prize money assuming (that) you had won the lottery 5 might give you a second chance assuming (that) you have really changed for the better 6 Assuming (that) the terrorist cell was not acting on its own, who could have 7 may join the negotiation if she likes assuming (that) she's read all the documents required to contribute towards a satisfactory outcome 8 will have his hands full assuming (that) you don't help him out, Dave 9 Assuming (that) the florist had arranged the flowers in a more attractive way, would you really have paid as much as thirty dollars 10 you be able to forgive him assuming (that) he promised not to do such silly things again

Exercise 166:

1 Assuming (that) the shoemaker manages to fix your old boots, will you buy a pair of new ones too? 2 Will you tip the taxi driver assuming (that) I don't have enough money on me? 3 The project might come to a halt assuming (that) the project leader doesn't receive any new funds soon. 4 The princess wouldn't have left the castle on her own assuming (that) she hadn't received a letter from her grandma. 5 The bear cub won't survive the harsh winter assuming (that) the hunter doesn't take good care of it. 6 Assuming (that) you lock the doors and shut the windows, you should be safe from burglars. 7 The developer's plan will be realised by April assuming (that) there are no further complications. 8 Master Lloyds stands a good chance of winning the science competition assuming (that) nobody has come up with a better design. 9 Mr Thomson won't be able to give you any further information assuming (that) you don't have your customer ID. 10 Assuming (that) the roof is brand new, you should not have any leaks for twenty years at least. 11 The old tower might be pulled down soon assuming (that) the mayor does not find anybody to get it fixed by the end of the year. 12 Assuming (that) the route is correct, we should reach the village in a hour or so. 13 Time cannot stand still assuming (that) there's no device which could bring it to a standstill. 14 Assuming that the minister had known about the construction work, do you honestly believe he would have stopped it? 15 The king would have had the thief hanged assuming (that) he had found out about his crimes.

Exercise 167:

1 The guards talk to me **as though** I broke a law or something. 2 You look **as though** you've just seen something terrible. 3 **As though** there were differences between the two of you! 4 It seems **as though** there's not enough time to finish the project. 5 The newsagent laughed **as though** he had some other information. 6 It seems as though it might get quite windy today. 7 You were sleeping **as though** you hadn't slept for days. 8 The biology teacher smiles **as though** he were the king of kings. 9 The ledger

looks really upset **as though** somebody has crossed the line with her. 10 The entertainer sings the song so slowly **as though** she's never sung it before. 11 The plumber murmured something to himself **as though** he was thinking about a fast solution to the issue. 12 **As though** we didn't know the reason! 13 The maintenance crew were moving so slowly **as though** they didn't get paid for the job. 14 The soup tastes **as though** there was some foreign spice in it. 15 The clown speaks so loudly **as though** he could not hear himself say a word.

Exercise 168:

1 has been behaving as though she owned the whole city, not just the block of flats 2 keeps talking as though he has studied physics in every detail imaginable 3 act as though they are the richest family in town 4 looks as though he were about to drop dead any moment now 5 makes the impression as though it could collapse soon 6 is so slow as though it is broken 7 as though she were having a good time 8 you talk as though you have a hot potato in your mouth 9 is so cold as though it were freezing 10 seems so tired as though he hadn't slept for days

Exercise 169:

1 is smiling as though he knew something about our secrets 2 As though Simon really cares about you and 3 as though I was being interrogated 4 looked as though he hadn't washed it for months 5 was speaking as though she was in pain 6 speaks as though it were a real human being 7 As though you didn't know better 8 As though the accountant hadn't embezzled funds before 9 walks as though he had some knee injury 10 hits as though he were a pussy

Exercise 170:

1 The researcher is lying as though the funding of the whole project depended on his speech. 2 The results were falsified as though incorrect and misleading information could have saved the manager's job. 3 As though you have never been to New York. 4 Mr Brown was sitting at his desk doing nothing and saying nothing as though he were in a stupor. 5 Kate's parents looked shocked as though they hadn't known what their daughter was doing in the evenings. 6 The timber is wet as though it weren't kept in a dry warehouse. 7 The lawyer was very quiet as though he had nothing to say at all. 8 The electrician was wiring the equipment carefully as though he was performing an operation. 9 The gold disappeared last night as though it had never been in the safe. 10 As though politicians cared about common people. 11 The professor was speaking so quietly as though there was something wrong with her throat. 12 Our next-door neighbour always turns up the music so loud as though he were an old deaf rock musician. 13 The stunt man jumped off the cliff as though it were for real. 14 George's sensitive girlfriend kept crying throughout the whole film as though it had been her father who died right at the start. 15 Martin and his friends were so mean as though they wanted to hurt Laura on purpose.

Exercise 171:

1 **As far as** I recall, you have not been invited to the meeting. 2 **As far as** I'm told, the power plant is to produce twice as much energy as its predecessor. 3 Our former physics teacher has recently moved to a different field **as far as** I know. 4 The production of the blockbuster movie is progressing rather slowly **as far as** the cast are concerned. 5 The flats in this neighbourhood are particularly expensive **as far as** it reads in the paper. 6 The short story I've been reading for the past few months is very thrilling indeed **as far as** it goes. 7 **As far as** I can remember, there's always been a Duke overseeing the stock exchange. 8 **As far as** I'm concerned, you can keep my share of the company. 9 The off-shore retailer needs to generate more profit **as far as** the investors are concerned. 10 **As far as** the technical staff are concerned, you may rest assured, everything is in good hands. 11 There will be no delays in deliveries, **as far as** I know. 12 **As far as** I've been informed, the research project is going according to plan. 13 I haven't seen your brother all day long **as far as** official business is concerned. 14 The new printer is a fine piece of technology **as far as** it goes. 15 **As far as** I hear, the conference should start on Monday.

Exercise 172:

1 As far as Jack's concerned, the company is not going to survive 2 As far as I'm concerned the car manufacturer needs to find more 3 As far as Lucy's concerned, Michael is going to be the next 4

As far as the paper is concerned / As far as the paper goes, the housing construction ought to be concluded by November 5 As far as the goods are concerned, they are expected to be on the premises 6 As far as Maya is concerned, she can speak Spanish 7 As far as Paul is concerned the new cardigans don't look as lovely as 8 As far as invoice No 34 is concerned, we still haven't been able to find it in either the front 9 As far as I'm concerned I'm perfectly satisfied with 10 doesn't know what to do as far as a difficult customer is concerned

Exercise 173:

1 is 2 concerned 3 are 4 goes 5 I 6 he / she 7 far 8 as 9 I 10 As

Exercise 174:

1 As far as I recall, the marketing manager should have been back from the business trip on Monday. 2 David tells me that there were no problems implementing the new software solution as far as the chip was concerned. 3 As far as I can remember, none of my friends has made the call. 4 As far as the notes are concerned, I have never seen such a huge chaos. 5 The telescope seems to be rather good as far as it goes. 6 As far as I can see, the financial analyst did not make any mistakes in the calculations. 7 As far as I know, the Pope has never visited China. 8 This is the best car I've ever driven as far as it goes. 9 We need to be worried and we need to be worried good as far as competition is concerned. 10 The nun hasn't spoken to the priest today as far as Brother Vincent is concerned. 11 As far as high-end products are concerned, you'd better make your deal at Lambert & Co. 12 As far as Pete's students are concerned, they're simply a waste of his time. 13 The company communication is horrible as far as administration is concerned. 14 As far as I hear, the company is not going to produce any more bottles. 15 As far as I know, two hundred workers should be laid off by the end of the year.

Exercise 175:

1 The young party member won't become PM **as long as** the party leader lives. 2 The dentist checked my upper teeth too **as long as** I was in his surgery. 3 **As long as** the real estate agent hasn't confirmed the applicant's creditworthiness, she won't approve the gentleman's request. 4 Our customer is willing to pay a higher price **as long as** you can offer him better services. 5 Our neighbour doesn't want to see any children in his house **as long as** he's still the owner. 6 **As long as** the inexperienced CEO remains nice and polite, she won't make much money. 7 The manufacturer might well go bankrupt in the end **as long as** he keeps to his outdated policies. 8 **As long as** you don't come bothering me, I don't really care what you do. 9 Laura's parents do not interfere with their daughter's private life **as long as** she's happy. 10 **As long as** the thieves keep their mouths shut, they can't be caught in a lie. 11 The gate will remain shut **as long as** the visitors are here. 12 **As long as** the plumber does not have much work to do now, he could take a look at the leak in the washbasin. 13 The guitarist plays really well **as long as** she doesn't party all night long. 14 I can't give you any details **as long as** you don't tell me what exactly is wrong with the scanner. 15 The investigator will leave you alone **as long as** you send him some information from time to time.

Exercise 176:

1 As long as there's enough food in the fridge, the kids won't bother you 2 As long as I haven't had a chance to go through the documentation 3 As long as the plan doesn't fall through, we still stand 4 As long as the sheriff is in town, he might help us with 5 can't be closed as long as the detectives don't find the murder weapon 6 to consume these drinks as long as you're not over 18 7 can join your study group tonight as long as we finish by 5.00 pm 8 can bring a friend or two along as long as you make sure not to bring more than two each 9 As long as the hold-up was a prank and nobody has pressed charges against you by Tuesday 10 As long as you're home tonight, you could make the dinner

Exercise 177:

1 I have lived in this house since I can remember 2 Provided the costs don't rise over 2.5 per cent, we should be 3 Unless the kidnappers give up their firearms now, they might end up gunned down 4 will try to break in while there is an armed guard standing in front of the house 5 Whilst you keep memorising that story of yours, make sure to get 6 So long as there are free lots, the boat should be

anchored directly 7 Providing you're not busy tonight, you might give me a hand 8 wide and air the room so long as there's nobody in the office 9 will support my activities unless she finds out about my affairs 10 Provided applicants keep talking, they can't be asked

Exercise 178:

1 The vendor will sell anything as long as the price is right. 2 The actor will take any part at all as long as he gets paid well. 3 As long as I don't know what's going around, I'm not going to comment on her remarks. 4 The athlete can shoot the commercial as long as he promotes the product for free. 5 As long as the bet is on, you still have a good chance of beating Dan. 6 The captain did not care about the well-being of his hands as long as he reached the next port. 7 As long as you don't show me your ID, you won't enter the stadium. 8 As long as you're careful, nothing can happen. 9 I can accept your terms as long as you do not make any last-minute changes. 10 As long as you're patient, you will achieve your goals. 11 As long as inflation exists, prices go up. 12 Nothing is going to change as long as none of us speaks up. 13 As long as you stick to the plan, nothing can go wrong. 14 Your sick brother is sure to recover really fast as long as he keeps taking the medicine. 15 Customers will continue buying the same products as long as a new producer enters the market.

Exercise 179:

1 **As soon as** the break is over, come and see me in the office. 2 The Prime Minister is going to visit his Italian counterpart **as soon as** he's returned from South Africa. 3 The match is to continue **as soon as** it stops raining. 4 The water will freeze **as soon as** the temperature has dropped below zero degrees. 5 **As soon as** the bonfire celebrations begin, the mayor will address the public. 6 The customer ran out of the shopping centre **as soon as** the shooting began. 7 You ought to have your ears checked **as soon as** you're in hospital. 8 **As soon as** the comedian finishes his performance, he wants to go and see his sick daughter. 9 The bucket fell through the ceiling **as soon as** the maid put it down. 10 **As soon as** I became aware of the murderer's presence in the alley, I rushed back to the mall. 11 The lover left the house quickly **as soon as** he saw my husband in the driveway. 12 The social networking operator is to issue the first shares **as soon as** he's got the new website up and running. 13 The company wants to go mainstream **as soon as** it gets its mass production underway. 14 **As soon as** the old lady has locked her door, a masked man jumped out of the bush and snatched her purse. 15 I'll get back to you **as soon as** I'm in town again.

Exercise 180:

1 became uneasy as soon as it felt its master's touch 2 As soon as the door opened, three armed guys ran in and 3 might chip in and help us buy the stereo as soon as she gets paid on Thursday 4 smoking cold turkey as soon as he realised the fags had been making him sick 5 As soon as the weather changed for the better, the children ran into the garden and started playing 6 can start as soon as Mr Thomson has arrived 7 credit your gaming account with the 15,000 points as soon as we have received your payment 8 at the corrupt data files as soon as you come to the office, Sarah 9 As soon as you finish peeling the onions, why don't you wash 10 As soon as the bartender decided to move to Argentina, we knew he would never

Exercise 181:

1 will go home when he's finished marking the students' homework 2 technology is likely to change the way we connect to the Internet the instant it becomes available to the wider public 3 will be over after the director of studies has finished his speech 4 shall be destroyed the instant you have read them through, Jackson 5 is likely to take it easy for a few days when he comes back from hospital 6 The second the information has been confirmed, the troops will 7 always starts ringing immediately after I turn on the telly 8 When the students have figured out the result, send Thomas 9 should land the instant the runway has been cleared 10 Once you have the presentation ready, give me a buzz

Exercise 182:

1 As soon as the bell started ringing, the dogs ran to the door. 2 The police officers stormed the school as soon as the sharpshooter hit the terrorist. 3 The enemy withdrew from town as soon as he heard that

government reinforcements were already on their way. 4 The satellite malfunctioned as soon as it was caught in a meteor shower. 5 As soon as I've left the apartment, I want you to lock up the door and not to open to anyone. 6 As soon as the new printer was delivered, the old one was stored in the basement. 7 The scientists at our university will start the research project as soon as the funding has been granted. 8 As soon as the manager has discussed the matter with the CFO, we will have a word with him. 9 The night train left the station as soon as the conductor signalled the train driver. 10 As soon as my son has graduated, he'd like to move to Canada. 11 As soon as the DA had discovered sufficient evidence to arrest the murderer, he filed charges against him. 12 The slave driver at our office upsets everybody around her as soon as she comes to the office. 13 The software engineer will market the new game as soon as he's found the best way to make the biggest profit possible. 14 As soon as Jack turns eighteen, he wants to leave home and travel the world. 15 The cyclist collapsed in the street as soon as he's drunk some of that strange water in the bottle.

Exercise 183:

1 There's no way **but that** the ship needs new coating. 2 There seems to be no question about John's integrity **but that** he's got none whatsoever. 3 There's no doubt **but that** the party finished a bit earlier than expected. 4 There's little doubt **but that** the Simpsons won't move to Florida. 5 I've got no doubt **but that** the junior marketing manager is the next in line for a big promotion. 6 There doesn't seem to be a plausible explanation for Simon's behaviour **but that** he's lost it. 7 There's no question about his lack of interest **but that** he's a self-absorbed stingy dude. 8 We've got no doubt **but that** the company won't make as much profit as first expected. 9 There's no telling what the mad gangster will do now **but that** it won't be a pretty sight. 10 There's no other way **but that** the shipment was lost at sea.

Exercise 184:

1 little doubt but that the crimes had been committed by an organised group 2 no reason for such drastic action but that you were offended 3 but that the butcher committed the murder 4 but that the security guard had fallen asleep during the night 5 but that the competition must get stronger 6 but that there's something wrong with the application 7 little hope but that the headmaster will change his mind 8 any explanation for the bombing but that the men were dissatisfied with their lives 9 but that you break in at night 10 telling why the desert has gone so dried except but that people must have made a significant negative impact on the environment in the area

Exercise 185:

1 There's no doubt but that the castle cannot be taken. 2 There's no question but that the young master will conquer the island. 3 There's no way but that the enemy shall be defeated within a day or two. 4 I have no doubts but that our comrades will meet us at the sanctuary. 5 There doesn't seem to be much doubt but that the flying robots have failed. 6 The king has little hope but that he'll have to surrender. 7 There's no other explanation but that the chemist has betrayed us. 8 There's no other way but that the ship will sink if we don't fix the leak. 9 There's no question but that he won the competition fair and square. 10 We've got no doubt but that the research project will be successful.

Exercise 186:

1 **Considering (that)** the father has not come to his son's tournament, you can tell what kind of father he is. 2 Jack doesn't want to talk to me anymore **considering (that)** I told him off on Monday. 3 Jane's parents would like to move to Florida **considering (that)** their best friends live there. 4 **Considering** Dan's advancement in the company, it's no surprise he doesn't want to be seen with the likes of yours. 5 The windows should remain closed **considering (that)** it's minus forty degrees outside. 6 The candle should not get wet **considering (that)** it won't be easy to dry. 7 I thought you'd be enjoying the game **considering (that)** it's your favourite team who are playing. 8 The negotiations didn't go very well **considering (that)** the chair burst out into a fit of anger. 9 **Considering (that)** your nasty behaviour lately, I've decided not to help you anymore. 10 The children will be disappointed **considering (that)** they were looking forward to meeting their favourite clown in person. 11 **Considering (that)** your dad and his driving skills, I think you should be the designated driver tonight, James. 12 The milk must be off **considering (that)** it's been sitting on the table in the scorching sun for two hours. 13 **Considering (that)** there's no other way out, we'll have to fight. 14 The microchip is worth more than my yearly

salary **considering (that)** it's brand new and extremely powerful. 15 You might want to think about joining the academy again, Sally, **considering (that)** you're not so good at figures.

Exercise 187:

1 Considering the applicant's lack of experience, we can't offer her a salary of more than 60,000 dollars a year 2 won't give you any further advice considering your rude manners and impatient character 3 will be pulled down soon considering no investor is willing to pay for the repair work 4 Considering you're not interested in my offer, I may as well 5 should be rather low considering the downpayment is quite high, shouldn't they 6 will be handed over to a different judge considering the Honorable Jeffrey H. Wilkins has had some personal dealings with the defendant 7 Considering the singer has lost her voice, the concert should be cancelled right away 8 should be thankful to the doctors for all their care considering he may have lost more than just a little time if they hadn't cured him then and there 9 couldn't continue looking for the lost trackers considering the severe weather conditions / ... considering that the weather was extremely bad 10 Considering Laura's excellent acting skills, she won't have any problems getting a new job

Exercise 188:

1 does not stand a fighting chance at the next election given (the fact that) he's lost the vast majority of his supporters 2 can make a huge amount of money since its popularity has been on the rise ever since they brought out their latest album 3 Because you haven't paid Louis back what you borrowed from him half a year ago, he won't spot you any more money 4 decided that his son should be the one found holding the smoking gun as he had blown the whole operation 5 see the killer behind bars real soon looking at the bounty hunter's resilience 6 vouch for the master in view of the fact that he's been a tremendous help to me so far 7 On account of Jason's latest achievements, he might climb the 8 will have killed over a million deer by the time he retires knowing his outdoor activities 9 get us in trouble sooner or later owing to your big mouth 10 will have to have a word with the CEO due to his outbursts of anger

Exercise 189:

1 Considering the lights have just gone out in the whole village, it can't be a problem of our house only. 2 I'm afraid your brother can't know much about agriculture considering he's never studied the field nor worked on a farm at all. 3 Considering the weather has taken a turn for the worse, we will have to weather the storm in this hut. 4 The new mechanic doesn't seem to be able to find the problem considering he's asked for help twice already. 5 The TV set must be really awesome considering the money they're asking for it. 6 I can't forgive you considering you've lied to me so many times now. 7 Considering you spent two years in jail, you won't find a decent job easily. 8 Considering the CEO's not in town, he can't take care of the issue right away. 9 The lawyer would like to talk to the witness first considering the weight of the charges. 10 Considering the painter's so emotional, you might find it difficult to enter into an agreement with him. 11 Considering the academy has already run out of money, it won't be easy to keep teachers motivated now. 12 Most of the students won't make it to university considering they don't spend much time studying. 13 Considering the mayor hasn't done anything for the people, he should not get re-elected. 14 The sharks are not dangerous considering they haven't done anything to their trainer for over three years now. 15 The mushrooms might be poisonous considering my friend's got a rash only a day after eating them.

Exercise 190:

1 I'd love to give you a hand, Michael, **except (that)** I don't understand a thing about microbiology. 2 Dr Stevens must be around here somewhere, **except (that)** I'm not sure where. 3 The witnesses should have told the court the truth, **except (that)** they were too afraid for their own lives to do so. 4 Andy's car is awesome, **except (that)** it's not very reliable. 5 I was invited to the party, **except (that)** I didn't want to go, really. 6 The bungalow needs to be pulled down, **except (that)** the tenants are refusing to vacate it saying they've got nowhere else to stay. 7 The caring mother doesn't want the children to go out on their own at night, **except (that)** nobody listens to her. 8 The manager would like to give our project the green light, **except (that)** there's still the small problem of insufficient funding troubling her. 9 The new farming method is no different from its predecessor, **except (that)** you do not use as

many fertilisers. 10 The detective's deductive powers might be overwhelming, **except (that)** he didn't have all the evidence in this case. 11 The general wanted to encourage his soldiers before going to battle, **except (that)** there were no encouraging words on his mind then. 12 The research assistant would be glad to help us with the experiment, **except (that)** he's going to be out of town tomorrow. 13 The zealous professor would let us know if he needed something, **except (that)** he might have lost track of time again. 14 The police might capture the arsonist, **except (that)** they've got a really poor description of the man. 15 I don't want to rain on your parade, **except (that)** the conclusions you have drawn don't seem realistic.

Exercise 191:

1 the financial analyst doesn't want to talk to Charles, except that she's got to 2 on the project for weeks now, except that we're not going to keep the deadline no matter how many people give us a hand now 3 has inquired about some reinforcements, except that his boss doesn't want to hire any extra help 4 would like to solve the problem on his own, except that he doesn't know how 5 is supposed to know about such important details, except that nobody ever tells him all the facts necessary to do his job properly 6 may have committed the crime, except that he doesn't strike me as the killer type who would murder two people and then have a cold drink in the pub 7 would like to pay back their loans, except that they are lacking the financial means to do so 8 Except that the vendors didn't know all the risks 9 seems to be extremely important to the CEO, except that I can't figure out why 10 had obviously planned to kill the landlord, except that there doesn't seem to be any way he might have got inside her apartment

Exercise 192:

1 a dangerous situation. Unfortunately, nobody's ever listened to the likes of us 2 doesn't want to sell his late father's shop, yet he doesn't make enough money to keep it running any longer 3 would like to buy his mother a Christmas gift, but he doesn't have any money at all 4 tell you much right now apart from the fact that I'm doing fine 5 is extremely dangerous. Fortunately, they don't come close to the village 6 needs to pay his taxes, but he's quite broke at the moment 7 out of time; still, there's still a lot I need to tell you 8 is flying towards the runway; however, it should be circling the airport 9 is fully charged and the signal quality is high as well. Nonetheless, the phone doesn't seem to be working properly 10 called you, Sarah, if my phone hadn't broken down

Exercise 193:

1 The student should have a word with the school counsellor, except he refuses to open to anybody. 2 I don't know much about politics, except that it's a dirty business. 3 Jack didn't tell me much about his trip to Japan, except that it was an unbelievable fortnight. 4 I'd send you right to the manager, except that he's out of town this week. 5 Except the room looks like a pig sty. 6 The pedestrians should have told everything to the police, except that they would never have believed such a wild story. 7 The boys could have made a difference in the old man's life, except they chose to be self-centred instead. 8 Jack tells me he's going to move to Ireland some time soon, except he'll never do so. 9 The secret agent knows a lot about the minister's private life, except that he'd never tell anyone. 10 The parish priest studied archaeology at university, except that he decided to break off the studies. 11 We couldn't find anything strange in the attic, except the unusual wig that was hanging on the chandelier. 12 The pub owner would give you the key, except she doesn't remember where she's put it. 13 The coach would have locked the club, except he forgot his key at home. 14 The janitor might have let you in, except he didn't recognise you, Henry. 15 The smart young man broke up with this horrible girlfriend of his, except he forgot to change the locks on his door.

Exercise 194:

1 The might have left the state already, **for all** we know. 2 The shepherd is a sweet young man **for all** that. 3 **For all** I know, you could be the murderer's accomplice. 4 **For all** that I've heard, it still seems an unbelievable story to me. 5 **For all** I care, my former girlfriend may drop dead any time she likes. 6 A murder scene is a very depressing place to be **for all** that. 7 The bloody carpenter can go to hell, **for all** I care. 8 You may spend your free time with anybody you like, **for all** I care. 9 Ms Smith is usually quite lazy **for all** that. 10 **For all** anyone knows, she might have been a princess. 11 **For all** the mom's

pushing, the daughter couldn't get a decent job. 12 **For all** the witness has seen, the person running away from the crime scene might have been a man just as well as a woman. 13 We would all like to thank you **for all** you've done for us, James. 14 **For all** Laura's hard work, she got nothing but ridicule. 15 **For all** we have heard so far, the story may be a total fabrication.

Exercise 195:

1 I can do whatever we want, for all the COO cares 2 should be locked behind bars, for all we know 3 For all the detective's best efforts, he still couldn't 4 For all that the maths teacher had done for her students, they never even 5 My sister still doesn't get the concept of solar energy for all our parents have been trying to explain it to her 6 is a skilled worker for all that 7 For all you've done, it won't be enough to get the project rolling 8 wouldn't get any more money from me, for all I care 9 For all the suffering the doctor has caused, she's never been 10 For all we know, the knife might have been taken by anybody present

Exercise 196:

1 You can deal with the prisoners as harshly as you like, for all I care. 2 For all that you've done for your son, he won't even come and see you at Christmas? 3 The retired manager did not get any real retirement gift for all the hard work she put into all those projects she had successfully completed. 4 For all I know, the rocket has not been launched yet. 5 For all I know, the former English teacher is still crazy about Lilly. 6 The prisoner shall be electrocuted for all the humanitarian protests. 7 For all we have been told, the stranger might have been the infamous revolutionary. 8 For all the magistrate knows, the couple have not been living in the same household for over a year now. 9 For all the dough your brother has, he could help you out, Simon. 10 For all the lumberjack's hard work, he couldn't cut down the tall birch.

Exercise 197:

1 **Given (that)** the user's got a bad temper, I wouldn't make him any more angry than he already is. 2 Please, let me know what you are going to do about the technical issues **given (that)** the client is the CEO's friend. 3 We are going to get in touch with the accountant as soon as possible **given (that)** there are still some inconsistencies in the account details. 4 **Given (that)** the prices have been going down steadily for quite a few months now, we are not likely to see much of a decrease anymore. 5 The data can't be retrieved now **given (that)** the computer's hard disk is damaged beyond repair. 6 The locust plague won't be eradicated easily **given (that)** there are no natural enemies of the species. 7 The pens are quite expensive **given (that)** they were imported from the US and shipped first class. 8 You're not to reply to any further emails from now on **given (that)** you're obviously not able to get the grasp of our procedures. 9 **Given (that)** there was a lack of qualified workforce in our field two years ago, the company had to take on even fresh graduates to do the job of experienced professionals. 10 The COO will take care of the order **given (that)** I'm not in the office next week. 11 The Christmas party will take place in a club **given (that)** so many people would like to bring a friend or two as well. 12 **Given (that)** there's no other way out, we'll have to pay the fine after all. 13 You don't have much time left to prepare to presentation **given (that)** the negotiation starts on Monday, Joe. 14 It's no wonder there are so few accidents on our roads these days **given (that)** most people use the public transport. 15 The judge decided to go over the evidence one more time **given (that)** she was feeling rather uneasy about the case and the defendant alike.

Exercise 198:

1 I won't vote in favour of the bill given (that) it might put a lot of people out of work 2 Given (that) I'm not really interested in acquiring the software manufacturer, I won't even 3 were quite difficult to move around the room given (that) they are made of stone 4 won't come to the Halloween party given (that) she's got no fancy dress 5 Given (that) I know the manager well, I can tell you he won't be 6 Given (that) I've seen the performance twice already, the performance twice already, I don't really feeling like 7 shall be considered null and void given (that) the signature was forged 8 could not be completed given (that) the Internet connection broke down while I was entering my PIN code 9 Given (that) you're not really interested in finding a solution to the query, I may just as well 10 Given (that) the survey does not give much reason for optimism, the company won't even try and

penetrate

Exercise 199:

1 Since commodity prices have been falling steadily for the past few months, we are likely to see a saturation of the market. 2 is not going to come to work this week as he's broken his leg skiing down a slope. 3 Marie will be admitted to the conservatoire due to the fact that she's tone deaf. 4 don't greet the receptionist anymore owing to the fact that she's never said hi back to them. 5 doesn't speak Spanish because he's never taken Spanish classes. 6 Considering (the fact that) the school owner is thinking about selling the school, you might be thinking about. 7 can't have been as grand as the one held last year in view of the fact that the mayor did not have as much money at his disposal as last year. 8 has actually passed the exam, (and) thus we must be looking for the root of the problem elsewhere than just the students. 9 Seeing that you're not interested in the lecture, you can give in to your demands knowing that there's nothing wrong with our proposal, sir.

Exercise 200:

1 Given that there was no non-lethal alternative, the general chose the lesser of two evils. 2 The group is not going to support the funding of your study project given you have not presented any results so far. 3 Given our forces are getting weaker by the day, we should strike right away. 4 The traitor fled his country given he was under surveillance all the time. 5 Given you sent me no invitation, I didn't know you were throwing a party for your brother. 6 The new mobile phone does not have a long battery life given it uses up a lot of juice just running the OS. 7 The pizza tasted awful given it was quite cold and a bit smelly. 8 Given that you have not made much of an argument, Dr Phillips, the grant will go to Dr Anderson and his team. 9 The documents have all been discarded given they should never have existed in the first place. 10 Given nobody told us about the meeting, none of our team could have taken part in it. 11 Given you've had seven months to finish the project, you haven't made much progress. 12 Joe would like to relocate to South Africa given his wife was offered an excellent job there. 13 Given we have never been close, I never detested the young man. 14 Given you don't know much about physics, you might want to keep your opinions to yourself for a change. 15 We haven't seen a rise in the shares this quarter given that analysts worldwide would have sworn the shares would soar.

Exercise 201:

1 The bus driver ought to have turned left **grandted (that)** there was no more space on the right. 2 The suspect should be arrested **grandted (that)** the police believe he has committed the crime. 3 **Granted (that)** your account of the story is really true, you will have no problems in court. 4 **Granted (that)** I wouldn't lie about such an important thing, you should start looking for a new job. 5 The plane could have burst into flames **grandted (that)** the pilot hadn't attempted a water landing. 6 **Granted (that)** the police officer comes to work today, you might be able to get the information you're looking for. 7 The pub owner cannot afford to have the roof fixed **grandted (that)** his net profit has been dropping steadily for the past six months. 8 **Granted (that)** the weather doesn't improve today anymore, will you stay another day? 9 The crow is a symbol of death **grandted (that)** all those old stories are true. 10 **Granted (that)** the exam results are correct, nearly half the students failed the exam. 11 **Granted (that)** the news report is true, millions of people have been left without running water in Pakistan. 11 The brand new floating data centre could be a great showroom **grandted (that)** there's enough space for shoppers. 12 **Granted (that)** the minister hasn't lied, we should be seeing some major changes in agriculture by the end of the year. 13 The computer might catch a virus **grandted (that)** you don't install an antivirus program. 14 **Granted (that)** Shally's right, the new project could start as early as April. 15 Mr and Mrs Dawson are happily married **grandted (that)** their constant arguments are no more than signs of affection.

Exercise 202:

1 Granted that the young anchor won't do as good a job as his predecessor, you. 2 looking for a new convertible granted that Mike will pay you back next month. 3 Granted that Jack will be here for the presentation, the manager. 4 can sell the house any time he wants granted that he's willing to accept a huge loss. 5 Granted that the taxi driver thinks he'll be able to afford a new car, he could take on

6 Granted that the CIA report is true, you might want to file charges against 7 the shares right away granted that the value will rise in the future 8 going to hide the papers granted that the mafia are looking for them 9 Granted that Sarah has just told you the truth, are you going to draw any consequences 10 Granted that the young man hasn't stolen anything, will you have him fired

Exercise 203:

1 Granted that the headmaster is right, we'll need to hire more staff next year. 2 Who could have taken the office supplies granted that the staff did not? 3 Granted the victim's gun was not loaded, who fired the other shot? 4 Granted that the president lied to his people, should he step down at once? 5 Granted that there's no more room for improvement, do we need to discontinue the product? 6 The fire drill will have to be practised more often granted that most staff did not even bother leaving the building. 7 Given that the tale was not a fabrication of the author's mind, it was a pretty adventurous holiday. 8 I would have seen my GP granted that there was something wrong with my arm. 9 The new online gaming platform should be launch on Thursday granted that the rumours are right. 10 Granted the testimony was pure fiction, will the judge be able to find out the truth?

Exercise 204:

1 The last report need not be re-written **inasmuch as** it gives a satisfactory insight into the problem at hand. 2 The step-brothers are somewhat similar **inasmuch as** they have the same father. 3 **Inasmuch as** I have already submitted my documentation, I don't have to turn up for the meeting. 4 The manager can have the order ready in no time, **inasmuch as** she's already got the whole list of things we need. 5 Dave's new computer made my research project much easier to finish, **inasmuch as** it can also run advanced programs. 6 My son's eyesight has improved significantly, **inasmuch as** he's got a new pair of glasses. 7 You won't win the lottery **inasmuch as** you don't play systematically. 8 It seemed like an important day in Tania's life **inasmuch as** she was going to her first job interview. 9 Even though the performance ended quite well, the actors were all quite astounded **inasmuch as** it should have been a tragedy which turned out to be a comedy in the end. 10 The right of self-determination is so deeply rooted in our community **inasmuch as** I suggest that suicide be legalised asap. 11 The following terms and conditions apply only **inasmuch as** international trade is concerned. 12 English tenses are a bit of an abstraction **inasmuch as** there is no inflected future tense in existence. 13 Mr Martinson will be in charge of the department for the time being, **inasmuch as** technical and administrative issues are concerned. 14 **Inasmuch as** Mr Mayer has already made some progress with the new project, we will not have to start from the scratch. 15 **Inasmuch as** the English teacher will grant us any wish we like as long as Lilly makes the proposal, we should ask for something really big and important.

Exercise 205:

1 is rich in different characters and depictions inasmuch as it's been inspired by the author's personal experience 2 don't seem to have much in common inasmuch as they grew up in two different countries and had little contact with each other when they were young 3 are going to make our daily life a bit more difficult inasmuch as we'll have to focus our energy on more than just ordinary tasks 4 Inasmuch as you are responsible for the whole project and its implementation, you should be the one 5 will only know inasmuch as is written in the book 6 has been working really hard lately inasmuch as he wants to get promoted next summer 7 Inasmuch as the additional funds will be used to cover the marketing costs, there's no need to worry about 8 were rather shocked at the sight of the patients' condition inasmuch as they had never been confronted with such a dramatic scene before 9 the payment inasmuch as Mr Charlston has not sent us any information at all 10 was really heavy inasmuch as I was the only one carrying it the whole time

Exercise 206:

1 Inasmuch as teachers in my country are more concerned with delivering classes than actually producing teaching material, you can end up studying from textbooks which are over fifty years old. 2 The following data applies only to local contractors inasmuch as sales are concerned. 3 The company's expansion plans have collided with my production plans inasmuch as the target market has changed dramatically. 4 The negotiations are proceeding rather well inasmuch as there's already an agreement on quality and quantity. 5 The report might make our work a bit more difficult inasmuch as it reveals

our weak position on the market today. 6 Inasmuch as the banker has already studied our business plan we can skip the general introductory part. 7 The new actor is not well acquainted with the script inasmuch as he's just joined the team. 8 I suppose there must be a mistake in your calculations inasmuch as the overall production costs are much higher than 120 dollars apiece. 9 You can improve only inasmuch as you practise. 10 Inasmuch as the marketing campaign has shown that there's little interest in the new headset, it's your call to stop the project now or to decide to go ahead with it anyway.

Exercise 207:

1 The marketing analyst does his job only **insofar as** not to get fired. 2 Master Sorenson studies maths only **insofar as** to pass his exams. 3 My supervisor talks just about those cases which I didn't handle well **insofar as** he wants to show me that I can't do the job. 4 The students can observe the detectives' work only **insofar as** they don't disturb them. 5 The desks will have to be moved a bit to the left **insofar as** there needs to be more space at the window. 6 Our students need to get a good grasp of physics **insofar as** they will have to understand the connections between physics and chemistry. 7 Most people only speak the truth **insofar as** it suits them. 8 My friends and I were chatting about our trip to Rome quite loudly yesterday, **insofar as** our classmates could not hear the teacher as a result. 9 The plumber is quite a skilful guy **insofar as** he can get a lot of things fixed, not just the plumbing. 10 When I was a little child, I learnt to speak Chinese **insofar as** I'm able to make myself understood and understand others too. 11 Insofar as the technical provider of our services has made the communication possible, we ought to make use of it and do our best now. 12 **Insofar as** our interest lies in the Asian market, we should try and use a more direct approach now. 13 The tourists who want to visit the Alps don't need to bring many things with them **insofar as** everything will be provided by the guides, including warm clothes. 14 Your questions were perfectly legitimate **insofar as** we had to find out if the witness was actually telling the truth. 15 The contribution of every single member of our club is highly essential **insofar as** we need to collect as much money as possible to get the project rolling.

Exercise 208:

1 agree only insofar as costs are concerned 2 works with others only insofar as there's a lot of money at stake 3 are not very different, insofar as they look alike and also talk the same way 4 made the detectives' job rather easy, insofar as he left a trail which was easy enough to follow 5 studies financial analyses only insofar as is required for her job 6 is positive insofar as nobody got hurt during the rescue mission 7 Insofar as I know, there should be no armed guards standing sentry 8 Insofar as I can figure out from this message, your financial situation's getting 9 will only help you insofar as you study hard every day 10 can help you with your thesis only insofar as it provides the theoretical background for your field research

Exercise 209:

1 Insofar as I can tell, the technical engineer has not finished doing the analysis yet. 2 A sensitive writer tends to describe his characters in quite a detail insofar as to give the reader a good insight into their state of mind. 3 Students ought to try and learn as much as possible insofar as their university entrance exams are concerned. 4 Martha's mistakes in the essay are quite astounding insofar as she's already been advised not to write about any technical details, yet she always does it. 5 The president-elect made a great impression during his campaign insofar as unemployment and health care go. 6 The mayor would like to see the streets and roads repaired by the end of the spring insofar as it's almost impossible these days to get from A to B without having to drive on broken roads. 7 The mechanics check the oil only insofar as they are asked to do so by the driver. 8 Insofar as the CFO has not seen the latest sales figures yet, he cannot estimate whether the company's in the red or black. 9 Insofar as the opposition parties have fought each other the whole time, they undermined their credibility with the electorate. 10 The protest march proved to have been rather useless insofar as only six hundred people turned up and said a clear no to the new legislation.

Exercise 210:

1 **Inasmuch as** you can tell from the inscription, this used to be a Mayan temple. 2 I don't have a good feeling about this new microchip, **inasmuch as** its produced by quite an unreliable contractor, Jordan. 3 This must be a trap, **inasmuch as** there is nobody in the streets far and wide. 4 Mr and Mrs Hudmat

seem to be happily married **insomuch as** you can tell from their looks and smiles. 5 **Insomuch as** you can tell from their mean looks, the guys mean business. 6 The landlord is not very strict when it comes to payment deadlines, **insomuch as** he knows that we are honest people who always pay their debts. 7 Both the director's advisors work much harder than their boss **insomuch as** they really take the time to get everything done properly. 8 The supervisor hasn't been satisfied with my work lately, **insomuch as** I've made a number of silly mistakes. 9 The hotel might have to close for good eventually **insomuch as** it's been having some financial difficulties recently. 10 Unfortunately, we could not make ourselves understood in Japan **insomuch as** the locals spoke a weird dialect. 11 **Insomuch as** the informant has always delivered reliable information, there's no reason to doubt him now. 12 **Insomuch as** colleagues should be able to work together well, I suggest you pull yourself together and behave yourself, Carla. 13 The tracks will have disappeared soon **insomuch as** there's a strong wind blowing in the area right now. 14 It was a spectacular performance you delivered last night, **insomuch as** it looked difficult and easy at the same time. 15 The headmaster decided not to take any action at the present time **insomuch as** the boy's father has made quite a few donations to the school fund in the past five years.

Exercise 211:

1 insomuch as you have presented no evidence to support your claims and indications, the court has no other choice but to sentence you to five years 2 seems to be an elaborate hoax insomuch as all those awesome features are concerned 3 Insomuch as the Dawsons have never been on holiday outside the US, the showmaster has bought them 4 shouldn't be grounded insomuch as he's done nothing wrong really 5 Insomuch as you can tell from just looking at the couple, they seem to be having 6 has stirred up loads of negative emotions insomuch as it pointed directly at those people who were responsible for the company's unfavourable condition 7 is not fit for the job anymore insomuch as he's been preoccupied with other things lately 8 is likely to go into administration insomuch as it's suffered a huge loss last year 9 Insomuch as the teacher has always done her job very well, she'd like to get 10 will be held at the five-star hotel in the city centre insomuch as the organisers want to make a great impression on the delegates

Exercise 212:

1 The factory will be closed by the end of spring, insomuch as it's been in the red for over six months now. 2 Insomuch as the president has broken his word twice already, he's unlikely to get re-elected to office for a second time. 3 Insomuch as the sales have dropped by 2.1 per cent this quarter, we'll have to start thinking about a new marketing campaign. 4 The journalists will not be allowed in this time, insomuch as the delegates need to discuss some pressing issues behind closed doors. 5 Insomuch as you're dealing with a risky enterprise, we cannot but recommend selling the shares right away. 6 Insomuch as one can ever know about these things, their farm seems to be doing really fine. 7 The dishwasher has become rather popular with our customers in both Slovakia and Czechia insomuch as it's good value for money. 8 The cameras have reduced petty theft by almost 74 per cent insomuch as thieves think twice before taking something without paying now. 9 Insomuch as road construction is concerned, the government is looking for new contractors. 10 The customer service department has managed to increase its productivity by 8.4 per cent insomuch as they introduced more detailed trouble tickets.

Exercise 213:

1 **In case** I'm running late tomorrow, do not bother waiting for me, Dave. 2 The secretary fetched the contract **in case** we needed to check some details. 3 The construction company had the site insured **in case** something went terribly wrong. 4 Always have your driver's license on you when driving **in case** you get stopped by the police. 5 The COO is coming to visit our plant next Wednesday **in case** you're wondering why we are in such a hurry to get the place cleaned properly. 6 Write down my number **in case** you can't find your way around the capital and call me if need be. 7 Don't forget to take a spare wheel **in case** you get a puncture. 8 Sarah always backs up her data at the end of the day **in case** her computer crashed and she couldn't start it again. 9 Take an umbrella **in case** it rains! 10 Do you have a second key **in case** you lose the first? 11 How about getting one more bottle **in case** our guests decide to bring a friend or two along? 12 Set up a reminder on your mobile **in case** the appointment slips your mind, Greg. 13 I'd rather have the books double-checked **in case** the external auditor should find some

mistake or other. 14 Take some traveller's cheques as well **in case** your money gets stolen or you lose your credit card on the way. 15 The CFO asked for my email address **in case** she wanted to send me further information about the project.

Exercise 214:

1 I fuel up now in case we run out of petrol 2 I usually have a book or two close by in case they get bored on the way 3 I always used to wear a warm hat in winter in case it should be / were too cold for him to run about outside with his head not wrapped up 4 I have their mobile phones turned off during meetings in case they suddenly started ringing 5 In case you haven't noticed, I've been waiting here 6 I'm taking a paper in case you have to wait for a while before it's your turn, Harry 7 I took his truncheon in case the prisoners tried to escape 8 I'm early today in case the boss needs some help, so I'll stick around for an hour or so 9 I have everything ready half an hour before the guests should be arriving in case one or two of them comes a little earlier 10 I brought a map in case you get lost in the woods

Exercise 215:

1 If 2 In case 3 in case 4 if 5 in case 6 in case 7 in case 8 if 9 if 10 in case

Exercise 216:

1 In case I don't have enough time to explain everything, please consult my notes which I will send you tonight. 2 The scared patent clerk did not want to join our softball league in case he didn't play well. 3 My friend refused to give me any kind of advice in case his answer was wrong. 4 In case you run into problems, do get in touch with Howard. 5 The jug ought to be locked away in the cupboard in case somebody mistakes the liquid for wine. 6 Always sign a contract before actually delivering or shipping any goods in case your partner is not as honest as he claimed to be. 7 I'd better not mention my client's name in case he doesn't want the others to know. 8 In case something goes wrong, give me a call and I'll do my best to help you, Laura. 9 The teacher didn't mean to imply anything naughty in case his student got the wrong idea. 10 The doctor prescribed me the strong medicine in case I started running a high fever. 11 Would you like us to stay close in case the negotiations get out of hand? 12 I might get ripped off in case you don't give me a few pointers. 13 One should always nominate an heir to receive their possessions in case one dies unexpectedly. 14 The lawyer did not mention the will then in case the widow considered it impolite in such a delicate situation. 15 The tourist guide was almost too afraid to say no to the pretty girl in case she stopped talking to him.

Exercise 217:

1 The situation is getting more complicated by the hour **in that** the special armed forces are preparing for attack. 2 The FBI chemicals weapons specialist is highly trained **in that** he's spent the past twenty years studying and diffusing bombs all over the country. 3 The formula plays an important role in our calculations **in that** it forms a sort of a backbone for our future enterprise. 4 We need to talk business **in that** we may clear the air at last. 5 You made a very hasty decision **in that** you did not take all the consequences into consideration. 6 It was a bad idea **in that** nobody gained anything by simply firing the rockets. 7 Sarah's master thesis was a true achievement **in that** it provided the theoretical concepts which she then used to display real-life effects on society. 8 The terrorists have gone underground **in that** the government agents could not find them. 9 After the training operation is over, the building is to be pulled down **in that** nobody is able to reconstruct the exercise. 10 During wars bridges get blown up **in that** the enemy cannot advance any further. 11 The money was transferred to an off-shore bank **in that** it could not be traced back to us. 12 The new textbook on microeconomics is very well written **in that** it looks into all major aspects in more detail than its counterparts. 13 Sandra's account of the whole story is a bit different than yours **in that** it was the major who made the arsonist surrender. 14 I will make a break in a few minutes **in that** I can have a word with the captain. 15 My new memory stick is better than Mr Salinger's **in that** it provides more storage space.

Exercise 218:

1 I broke the rules of the exercise in that he left the training area 2 I did not sustain the objections in that they were groundless 3 I complete their missions faster in that they have had more training 4 I talked extremely slowly in that he was aware of his students' poor listening skills 5 I look nicer than

the green one in that it's light rather than dark 6 need to undergo a long training in that they learn all that they need to do their job really well 7 did not go well in that some staff did not meet their deadlines 8 is a complete failure in that customer won't buy it pure and simple 9 are extremely important to our scientists in that they could prove their theories are right 10 will go through the roof in that we'll have to pay both domestic and foreign carriers for their services

Exercise 219:

1 was a total waste of time given (that) it did not produce any theoretical or practical results which could be used either for domestic or international purposes 2 quite difficult to persuade the bank to lend you any more money since you already owe them 7,000 dollars 3 may have a hard time looking for somebody to fund their research because it seems very theoretical and not very practical at all 4 had a really futuristic feel as it should have been made from the best and most advanced technology at the time 5 something wrong with the monitor of yours considering the pictures and text are blurred all the time regardless of the files you open 6 mentions all the essentials we need to be aware of since it provides a summary of the company's strategies and principles alike 7 proved vital to our PR campaign in view of the fact that it made us aware of some needs we did not expect to find in our target group 8 wouldn't work due to the fact that there was something wrong with the wiring / wouldn't work due to wrong wiring 9 stopped working owing to some water that got into the clockwork / stopped working owing to the fact that some water got into the clockwork 10 can't give you any information willy-nilly given (that) we need a written request which needs to be approved by our superior first

Exercise 220:

1 You cannot just barge in on the accountant and ask her for money in that there are certain procedures that everybody has to follow, even you George. 2 The sheriff made a mistake in that he returned to the pub. 3 The translation seminars are quite boring these days in that we keep studying the same texts over and over again. 4 We cannot grant you asylum in that we are not an official institution or church. 5 The sinister look in his eyes made the blood in my veins freeze in that there was a perfect nothingness seen deep down in him. 6 The lecture might be quite appealing to you in that you're interested in astronomy. 7 The witness has to be relocated after the trial in that we can guarantee his safety. 8 The mobile phone can't be fixed in that the spare parts are not produced anymore. 9 The motorbike is really pricey in that it costs more than most people earn in a whole year. 10 A monolingual dictionary is a much better aid when studying a language at an advanced level in that it provides a lot more information than just translations. 11 Most fighters will train every day in that they want to realise their dream and get to the top. 12 I can't vouch for your brother in that I spent the whole day with my girlfriend shopping. 13 The garden looks really neat in that the grass is mowed and the hedge nicely cut. 14 Brown's latest collection of poems is rather depressing in that speaks about death, pain and suffering. 15 This seems like a big challenge in that it will require all our resources to make the project successful.

Exercise 221:

1 My lawyer always does his best **in order that** her clients are as satisfied with his work as possible. 2 One dental check-up a year is compulsory for all the people in our country **in order that** they get their teeth checked at last every twelve months. 3 The marketing analyst would like to have a word with her **in order that** he may sort out the issues regarding the database. 4 The tourists wanted to set out early in the morning **in order that** they wouldn't get caught in the traffic. 5 Most students learn as much as possible **in order that** they make the best of their study time. 6 You ought to leave a little earlier on Thursday **in order that** you get to the office before the manager does. 7 Our system is updated every two weeks **in order that** we can launch all our databases and applications. 8 The owner is thinking about selling the pub **in order that** he can travel the world at last. 9 My supervisor says I should finish my thesis by April **in order that** I can defend it in June. 10 Astronauts receive a lot of training before they are allowed to fly into space **in order that** they are prepared for every single scenario imaginable. 11 The contract needs to be rewritten **in order that** it does not contradict the new law. 12 The HR staff decided to hire the applicant **in order that** the research may start as soon as possible. 13 The company will have to be sold **in order that** the bills can be paid at last. 14 The casino is going to move to the

big hall at the end of the street **in order that** the gamblers have more space. 15 The carpenter is going to get some new tools **in order that** he can do his work faster and better as well.

Exercise 222:

1 are moving into towns and cities these days in order that they don't have to commute for work 2 needs to be practised at least twice a year in order that everybody knows what to do in case of a real emergency 3 study English in order that you are able to understand and can make yourself understood when talking to people who don't speak your native language 4 ought to put up their tents in order that they don't get caught in the storm unprepared 5 has to practise playing the violin every day in order that he gets to the top one day 6 are always looking for challenges in order that they improve their skills 7 have already started rehearsing for the new play in order that they deliver a great performance 8 draw a detailed agreement in order that both parties know exactly what their right and duties are in the joint venture 9 In order that your smartwatch doesn't get broken easily, you should charge it every day 10 that the two companies want to cooperate in order that they can at least share the costs and divide the work to the best of their staff's abilities

Exercise 223:

1 install moral values in their children so that they grow up to be decent, law-abiding citizens 2 ought to pay more attention to their teacher's lectures so that they understand the whole concept of seismic activity 3 are learning to swim this month as they want to go on a holiday to a seaside resort / ... so as to go ... 4 is taking some flying lessons to forget about his problems 5 are required to master both Greek and Latin in order to be able to read, write and speak the languages at an advanced level 6 had to take the course before starting their jobs because they had to learn how some internal processes work best in an international company setting 7 for a few days so that you get better, Terry 8 took some younger students as well to the end that the fare got a bit cheaper 9 took on some extra hands in order to finish the harvest a little earlier 10 is looking for a new analyst so that Mr Handerson gets promoted at last

Exercise 224:

1 In order that the client may redeem her voucher, she needs to insert the code into the blue box. 2 The cowboy ought to take a few days off in order that his wound heals properly. 3 The town hall is trying to collect 5,000 dollars in order that they can pay for the school repairs. 4 These days students tend to study maths pretty hard in order that they pass their GCSE exams. 5 If you cannot accept the terms and conditions, you should say so at once in order that the company can continue looking for another company which can. 6 The old factory is going to be pulled down in order that the developer can build a new shopping center there. 7 We'd better have a closer look at the two graphs in order that we find any inconsistencies between the two situations. 8 The workers have the right to know whether they are putting their health at risk when working in the mine in order that they are aware of any potential problems they may face in the future. 9 The new branch needs to work with the HQ more closely in order that the staff learn the ropes as fast as possible. 10 The plans should have been studied in more detail in order that alternatives may have been presented to maximise our profits. 11 Teachers usually help children to acquire useful skills in order that they might have a better chance of getting a good job in the future. 12 The woman killed her husband in order that he wouldn't hurt her young children. 13 In order that the relationship between the marketing firm and the bank does not come to a fast end, the marketing company has decided to offer the bank free consulting services for a whole year. 14 Martin needs to work a bit harder in order that he gets the promotion he's so excited about. 15 The mobile phone producer is likely to spend more funds on innovation in order that the company doesn't suffer the same fate as its former competition.

Exercise 225:

1 The pilot will attempt an emergency landing **in the event that** he's got no more fuel to fly on. 2 Jim and his cousins will bunk in with us at the weekend **in the event that** they come to town. 3 Will I get my money back **in the event that** the match is canceled? 4 **In the event that** the headmaster drops in, please stand up and greet him the moment he comes into the classroom. 5 Dan's nephew will have lost loads of money **in the event that** the horse does not come first. 6 The meeting can start a little earlier

in the event that the bankers arrive sooner than expected. 7 **In the event that** the mayor does not win the election, he'll probably retire to his ranch in South Carolina. 8 Please give this envelope to the DA **in the event that** something bad should happen to me. 9 **In the event that** father has to do overtime, we can start dinner without him. 10 **In the event that** the door should be locked, please use the bell to call the receptionist. 11 I'll give you a call **in the event that** I should be running late. 12 The football match might be cancelled **in the event that** it starts raining suddenly. 13 The storm might hit towns and villages in our area **in the event that** the wind turns south. 14 Make sure to have your gun loaded **in the event that** we meet again, Tom. 15 **In the event that** the joker can't give me a definite answer, I'll quite the game.

Exercise 226:

1 In the event that the suspect tries to molest you, just shout out loud 2 will not be able to carry the buckets in the event that they are filled 3 In the event that I can't make it on Saturday, I'll send 4 won't be held in our town in the event that we can't agree on the location 5 forfeit some of your prerogatives in the event that you keep making mistakes like these 6 In the event that there's nobody to pick up the phone, the answering machine will finally 7 able to get in anymore in the event that the performance has already started 8 might have to resign from office in the event that he's found guilty of fraud 9 could call for an extra meeting in the event that something very important came up 10 would have to do much more work than at present in the event that he'd like to get promoted any time soon

Exercise 227:

1 I wrote the letter in case something should happen to him 2 Should your brother does indeed pass the entrance exams, I'll be happy 3 always carries a pair of surgical gloves just in case he has to perform surgery outside the usual settings 4 though there's a mistake in the calculation, you need to finish the project by Friday 5 come up with a different story in case the guys don't believe what you've just told me 6 a back-up plan should you fail to reach the sales target 7 the first-aid kit ready in case you need to use it fast, really fast 8 If the judge ruled in favour of the defendant by mistake, the supreme court 9 Unless you enter the correct code within fifteen seconds on opening the window, the system will lock you out 10 and leave the building at once if you detect smoke coming out of the offices

Exercise 228:

1 In the event that the lorry's already full, put those paintings into my pickup. 2 Ms Green will give me a call in the event that she should run into any problems. 3 I believe commodity prices will rise again in the event that customers start shopping for expensive flats and houses. 4 In the event that your wife doesn't win the competition, will you think any less of her? 5 What kind of sanctions will you impose on the staff responsible in the event that the company has to pay the fine? 6 In the event that Lilly does not marry Pete, he'll be devastated for sure. 7 In the event that the computer manufacturer doesn't sell at least six million pieces of the new computer model in the first year alone, it might well go bankrupt. 8 Be ready to brake fast in the event that the car accelerates too quickly. 9 Will the businessmen have to come again next week in the event that we don't reach an agreement today? 10 In the event that we don't make it, I'd like you to know that I've never betrayed your trust. 11 The producer recommends choosing a fifth contestant in the event that one of us gets sick. 12 The speaker might skip the first part of his presentation in the event that we should be running a bit late. 13 In the event that crude oil gets scarce again, the prices will undoubtedly go through the roof again as well. 14 The letters won't be sent until Monday in the event that you don't get them to the post office before five. 15 I know we'll have to pound the pavement soon in the event that our next campaign does not attract the target group Mr Swansie wants the product to appeal to.

Exercise 229:

1 **Now that** I have your undivided attention, we can finally start the seminar. 2 The washing machine won't keep breaking down anymore **now that** it's been fixed. 3 The CFO will do his best to get us the funding **now that** he's finally understood the importance of innovation. 4 The widow won't spend as much time alone as she used to **now that** she's found some friends to keep her company. 5 **Now that** I

have her number, I'll call her every week. 6 **Now that** the students have passed their last exams, their holidays can start. 7 The children will behave themselves **now that** you've given them something to look forward to. 8 The security guards will check big bags **now that** we know how the thieves have managed to steal all the office supplies. 9 **Now that** justice has been served, we can all breathe again. 10 You'll be able to use the laptop on the go again **now that** it's got a new battery. 11 The patient will have to remain at home for a few weeks **now that** he's been released from hospital. 12 The company revenues should go up steadily this quarter **now that** nearly 250 staff were made redundant. 13 You should not use that syringe anymore **now that** it's been used to vaccinate the young man against the flu. 14 **Now that** the war is over, the survivors can return to their families and start rebuilding their homes. 15 I suppose the nightmare for the people of Egypt will start all over again **now that** one dictator has replaced another dictator.

Exercise 230:

1 I will be able to save the file now that the virus has been removed 2 I have flown away now that the old man sounded the horn 3 Now that the wall is freshly painted, you shouldn't lean on it 4 I will be delivered by Saturday afternoon now that you have confirmed the delivery 5 He doesn't want to talk to me anymore now that I said some nasty things about him on Monday 6 Now that the priest has already locked up the church for the night, you will not be able to get in 7 Now that the judge has already closed the hearing, the surprise witness won't be able to testify 8 The house can be rebuilt at last now that the flood water has finally drained 9 I would like to leave now that there's no more food left 10 I don't want to have anything to do with him anymore now that he's lost his job and run out of money already 11 Now that the company is likely to go bankrupt, 1,200 people will lose their jobs

Exercise 231:

1 Given (that) the marketing manager has retired, maybe one of us has a chance to become the new master of the company 2 I will start shortly since all business associates have gathered 3 As you bought all the ingredients necessary to prepare the lasagne, you shouldn't be late anymore considering (that) he's got himself a new car 4 I will go away at the weekends since you sold your cottage 5 The sky is quite clear because there's no more interference from the clouds 6 I will have more free time on your hands 7 I will go to Florida seeing that you don't have any other commitments in Vienna 8 I will take a break for a few minutes in view of the fact that we've reached the target for today 9 The house should be empty due to the fact that everybody's been evicted

Exercise 232:

1 Now that the storm has passed, the villagers can return to their everyday lives. 2 Rest assured that the carriage will be waiting for you outside the train station now that you told us when you're coming. 3 The patient should start doing his exercise now that he's allowed to leave the bed again. 4 Now that the plague is over, it's time to start counting its victims. 5 The dressmaker will stay up all night long and work on your fancy dress now that he knows that he's got no more than two days to finish it. 6 Jim will be waiting for you on the bridge now that he's finished his tour of the ship. 7 Now that the engine is working again, we can leave the port at last. 8 The students can take up Chinese right away now that there are two Chinese courses opening. 9 I guess it'll be quite difficult to fix the computer now that he spilt cocoa all over it. 10 Now that the applicant knows what the job is really about, he doesn't seem to be too keen on taking it anymore. 11 The gangster won't have you killed now that you got engaged to his daughter. 12 Now that the former English teacher has stopped caring, he feels much happier and freer. 13 Your grandparents had better sell their farm asap now that estate prices have gone up in the area. 14 Now that the volcano is about to erupt, there's nowhere to hide anymore. 15 Now that all hope is lost, we can but wait for the end.

Exercise 233:

1 The magician can take a break **provided (that)** he's already finished at least half the performance. 2 **Provided (that)** you can repay your debts, the bank won't take ownership of your house and car. 3 Jo will be running a little late tonight **provided (that)** she stops at Jane's again. 4 I won't hold a grudge against you **provided (that)** you pay me back by Saturday. 5 Right, you can take your baby brother as well **provided (that)** he behaves this time. 6 **Provided (that)** the warden is strict enough, he can join the prisoners

our staff any time he likes. 7 You can get rid of the mice **provided (that)** you take better care of your household. 8 Our home planet will explode **provided (that)** we cannot find a way to stabilise its core. 9 The king will surrender **provided (that)** the leader of the rebels guarantees his safety. 10 The hitman might kill you **provided (that)** you do not strike a better deal with him. 11 **Provided (that)** the knight returns by midnight, I will personally set you free. 12 Our neighbours will take good care of the kitten **provided (that)** we invite them to our Christmas party next month. 13 **Provided (that)** the cat doesn't make a mess in my house, you can take it with you. 14 The CEO might give you a pay rise **provided (that)** you produce an awesome advertising campaign. 15 The scientists will be able to get in the lab **provided (that)** you remember the correct entry code.

Exercise 234:

1 Provided I get into a lot of money soon, I won't lose my house, my car and even my job 2 stop hurting the young boy provided he gives them his pocket money 3 will keep it a secret provided you let them leave early on Friday 4 would have protected the singer provided the manager had paid him in advance 5 Provided the dancer had more brains, would I have agreed to 6 Provided you show me around, I'll give you 7 strike a deal provided we offer the producer some additional incentive to do business with us 8 are willing to work at night provided we pay them double the salary we agreed on 9 would get married provided he found a really terrific woman to be with 10 Provided the judge lets my daughter walk free, I'll get him

Exercise 235:

1 Only if the witness testifies against the murderer, will he be brought 2 will give me the test results just like that providing I offer her a great bribe 3 will retire this year on condition that his nephew will be ready to take over for him 4 might listen to your lectures more attentively if you scare them well 5 Say you leave me alone, I will leave you 6 actually put the theory into practise should they manage to crowdfund their research project 7 If my wife is at home, she'll pick up the phone and fax me 8 The banking sector will recover once again given (that) the EU steps in and gives 9 will pitch in too on condition that she can come to your birthday party, Greg 10 won't be cancelled by the end of the season only if the ratings improve

Exercise 236:

1 The technicians will look into the matter right away provided you can sent them a few sample cases. 2 Provided there's no more crude oil available, how will humanity cope? 3 Will you learn to abide by such strict rules provided you are offered a good enough salary? 4 Pete would have helped Lilly with anything really provided she had given him one of those charming smiles of hers. 5 Provided the car breaks down one more time, I'll definitely get a new one. 6 You can take the kids to the zoo provided you take good care of them. 7 The saw isn't dangerous at all provided you use it carefully. 8 The study will offer reliable results provided the couples questioned answer the questions honestly. 9 Provided I have the house painted green, I will get a five-percent discount. 10 My dad won't be angry with you provided you tell him the truth. 11 Provided one understands the uniqueness of the particle, one can appreciate its beauty. 12 The CFO will come to the meeting provided you pick him up and drag him to the meeting room. 13 Provided there are no more complications, the highway will be finished by the end of the year. 14 I'd like to get the actor's autograph provided he's still at the shop. 15 Provided the sailors survive the harsh winter at sea, they will return home stronger than ever before.

Exercise 237:

1 The agents have learned everything from the suspect they wanted to know, **save that** he used to be linked to a dangerous terrorist network. 2 The marketing manager has already postponed the meeting, **save that** he hasn't notified us yet. 3 **Save that** I have never been to Switzerland, you theory sounds rather believable. 4 Little is known about the effects of smoking e-cigarettes, **save that** it's not nearly as dangerous as smoking the real thing. 5 Mr and Mrs White would like to go on holiday to Australia, **save that** they don't have enough money to pay for the lot. 6 Mr Burton's last will was found at last, **save that** it was not signed. 7 The interpreter wanted to help us, **save that** she doesn't speak French. 8 **Save that** I don't have a single clue about electronics, I'd say the gadget is broken pure and simple. 9 The manager was looking for his PA, **save that** she's already gone home. 10 I don't want to bother her

again, **save that** there's no one else around. 11 If the entrepreneur is really keen on buying some more shares, it's all right with me, **save that** they now cost 28 dollars more than before. 12 The famous singer is acting as though we've never met before, **save that** we went to the same school for four years. 13 My brother is quite a cool guy **save that** he doesn't drive an expensive car. 14 The officers have done a terrific job catching those armed robbers **save that** they forgot to read them their rights. 15 He must be at home **save that** he won't answer the phone.

Exercise 238:

1 I would have fixed the engine, **save that** he couldn't get the spare parts needed 2 I might go easier on the boys **save that** he wants them to be successful 3 I am rather uncomfortable, **save that** it's the only one in the office that's still free 4 I have no idea what Marc is doing all the time, **save that** he's not doing his job 5 I won't give any more performances **save that** they want to continue and train the youngsters 6 I play truant **save that** they're going away on holiday with their parents at the end of the school year 7 I have refused to take over her colleague's duties, **save that** she's the only qualified substitute 8 I ought to hire more staff for the winter season, **save that** there's not enough money to pay for their salaries 9 I am not likely to accept the terms and conditions dictated by the US **save that** they change their attitude towards the country's internal affairs 10 I would have interrupted the MEP **save that** his mic stopped working all of a sudden 11 I could give us a hand, **save that** she broke her leg last week so she won't be in

Exercise 239:

1 I will tell you their login data unless you promise not to misuse it 2 He has already left for Austria except she's left her ticket behind 3 I would have moved the furniture. Unfortunately, they were in a hurry 4 I file the order provided (that) the CFO agrees to it first 5 It was a marvellous afternoon apart from the fact that Sarah almost choked to death 6 I would have told the parents the truth but she's a kind-hearted person 7 I offered to help the lady with the bags. However, she declined 8 I respectfully agree, yet I do not believe there's any justice in this country left 9 I offered us some crisps but they were all spicy 10 I know very little about the terms of the contract apart from the fact that they are quite unfavourable to both the company and the workers

Exercise 240:

1 The police don't know where to look for the escaped prisoners, **save that** they might have been seen in a small town in Florida. 2 The bartenders do not have much work these days, **save that** they serve drinks a few drunken sailors. 3 There's no information about one David Charleston, **save that** he was born in Texas. 4 **Save that** the librarian has a lot of debts, her colleagues don't know a single thing about her. 5 This is the updated list of missing girls from our neighbourhood **save that** Laura Dawson is not there anymore. 6 I think Clara would like to change jobs, **save that** she's no idea what she'd like to do. 7 The priest will never change his habits, **save that** he might get a new outfit. 8 Pete would have asked Delilah for her hand in marriage, **save that** she wasn't interested in him at all. 9 The tourists would have come back to the hotel earlier, **save that** they weren't sure whether to turn left or right at the last crossing. 10 The company would gladly pay the bill, **save that** it doesn't have any money to do so. 11 Little is done about the river and its lack of fish, **save that** the mayor has promised to take steps to ensure the survival of the fish that still live in it. 12 Kate's parents have some influential friends, **save that** they won't help them if need be. 13 Nothing will be done about the rising number of cars and trucks in our city, **save that** the locals might launch a petition to ban trucks from the city center. 14 There's no evidence to suggest that the chemical company is responsible for the ecological disaster on the river, **save that** the oil must have come from a local firm. 15 The chair resembles the president, **save that** he's got a scar on his left cheek.

Exercise 241:

1 **Seeing that** there are still issues regarding the production process, we need to inform our marketing department of the new launch date. 2 The children shouldn't have any more chocolate before going to bed **seeing that** they can't really get to sleep afterwards. 3 It's going to be a hard sell **seeing that** your partners are not willing to negotiate much. 4 **Seeing that** he had no chance to win his darling's heart, the young professor turned his back on love for good. 5 The desks at the reception need to be replaced

asap **seeing that** they look like they were in use during WWII already. 6 You might want to check the cables before calling a technicians **seeing that** you've done some redecorating today. 7 **Seeing that** he was totally exhausted, Sarah let her husband sleep all day long. 8 The teacher won't let you leave early today **seeing that** you actually lied to her last time. 9 **Seeing that** the holiday season is about to start soon, the malls have already started to work on their special offers. 10 The gate shall remain closed **seeing that** the rebels are still trying to get in the city. 11 The machine guns will be delivered im April, **seeing that** the last shipment was cancelled. 12 **Seeing that** the refugee camp is overcrowded, you'll have to find some other place for this group. 13 The minister did not want to postpone the meeting any further **seeing that** it was high time something was done about the problem. 14 **Seeing that** the break is almost over, the students are returning to their classrooms. 15 The walls will be painted green **seeing that** nobody liked the yellow paint.

Exercise 242:

1 Seeing that Sarah would write the meeting minutes, I didn't even bother 2 won't sell his drawings yet seeing that his sons like them a lot 3 started shooting into the crowd seeing that police officers were closing in on them 4 Seeing that land prices are expected to go up soon again, the mayor started buying estates 5 won't have you as his partner seeing that you've already brought three hotels to the brink of bankruptcy hotels in a row 6 may of course come to the party seeing that you might turn down your invitation if he couldn't come along too 7 can't be right seeing that the target group provided quite a few negative answers in the questionnaire 8 won't return again seeing that it's already found another prey 9 wouldn't testify against the criminal seeing that the judge would have set him free anyway 10 Seeing that you're an alcoholic, you're not welcome

Exercise 243:

1 doesn't want to test our knowledge yet because we're still not prepared for the final exam 2 As the printer has been fixed a few times already, it might be high time to 3 doesn't work very hard anymore given (that) he'll be fired by the end of the year anyway 4 is to visit the US in the summer since they've already made some arrangements with their American friends 5 you drive after you've had six glasses of whiskey 6 Given that there are no more glasses in the cupboard, the PA has just gone 7 is likely to retire at the end of the year since he's already too tired to do his job properly 8 won't accept the job offer due to the fact that she'd have to start work at 7.00 am 9 Because the company would not be able to retain its market position for much longer, the CEO has made a firm decision to start 10 might sell his computer shares any time now owing to the fact that his investment is not likely to yield much profit in the future 11 As the submarine wouldn't be able to leave the port for another two days, the captain

Exercise 244:

1 You might want to start thinking about getting a new job, seeing that the company is going to lay off 500 staff this summer already. 2 Seeing that there were no police officers in sight, the boy snatched a cookie from the shelf and ran away quickly. 3 Well, I won't be bothering you any longer, seeing that you've got plenty of work. 4 Seeing the manager wasn't around, the staff took it easy for a change. 5 Seeing that there was no way out of the mess, the CEO took a gun out of his desk and shot himself in the head without hesitation. 6 Why don't you tag along and come to the concert with us, seeing that I have already paid for four tickets? 7 You may as well have the whole lobster, seeing that I've already paid for it. 8 The lorry driver wants to have his car checked before actually driving to the mountains, seeing that there's something wrong with the engine. 9 The girls should definitely come to the party on Saturday, seeing that it will be Mike's birthday. 10 The teacher will have a lot of work this year, seeing that she's got some nasty pupils in her class. 11 Seeing that the young have no respect for their elders, my grandfather doesn't want to make my friends' acquaintance. 12 The bank is not likely to lend you any more money, seeing that you've having difficulty paying your current debts. 13 You'll probably have to park a bit further from the shops, seeing that there's a new shop opening on the corner today. 14 Seeing the van skidded to a stop right in front of the bus, one of the passengers took out his mobile and called for help. 15 The hairdresser might have to sell his shop really soon, seeing that there's a new hair studio opening just across the street.

Exercise 245:

1 The ledger won't bother you again, **so that** you can finish the analysis asap. 2 The negotiations were postponed until Monday, **so that** all participants could study the documentation in more detail. 3 Lucy is thinking about getting a faster computer, **so that** she can run more advanced software at home too. 4 Your desk will be moved to the other office while you're away on holiday, **so that** we don't bother you while at work. 5 The secret agent informed his superior, **so that** the country is ready for the terrorist. 6 The mechanic has been doing overtime for the past six months, **so that** he can get himself a great bike. 7 The villagers want to have the dam built before the winter, **so that** they can be sure that their village won't get flooded just like last winter. 8 I suggest you get a faster Internet connection, **so that** you can surf all kinds of websites in no time. 9 The spy will be careful the whole time, **so that** he doesn't blow his cover. 10 We'll be in touch, **so that** we can confirm the details of the meeting. 11 The team leader has decided to produce new templates, **so that** the team may finally increase their productivity as well as quality. 12 The staff need to be more careful, **so that** similar mistakes can be avoided in the future. 13 You haven't been hired **so that** you can dismantle the organisation. 14 The vice-president will talk about the issue with the department head, **so that** he can communicate his vision directly to the person in charge.

Exercise 246:

1 must die so that the young may live 2 need to be laid off so that the company can keep it's growth rate stable 3 will have to do much better than this so that he impresses the CFO 4 must have done something really exceptional so that he got such an awesome promotion 5 will have to be sold asap so that you can keep your head above water, Daniel 6 has to be filed one more time so that you may receive the goods needed 7 should get a bit stronger so that they can carry such heavy weights 8 gave me the rent right away so that he didn't have to think about it next week 9 will shed some light on the matter so that we're not kept in the dark any longer 10 wrap up warm so that you keep healthy throughout this cool winter, darling

Exercise 247:

1 is going to buy him a gold watch in order to remember her (by it) 2 should remain calm so as not to do something stupid 3 the borders carefully and make sure that the illegal refugees don't get past you / the borders carefully to make sure that the illegal refugees don't get past you 4 the gun because I want to finish what you failed to do 5 will be reconstructed in order that it can remain operational 6 drop by on Saturday afternoon to help us move the big cupboard 7 is going to pay me back on Thursday in order that we're square again 8 is going to move to bigger premises so as to (be able to) host bigger feasts 9 is already waiting for your in order that you don't miss your train to Moscow 10 will clean up the mess in order that the cook can make dinner

Exercise 248:

1 Please, send me an email, so that I know that you've arrived safely. 2 I suggest you sell your share of the company, so that you can pay back your creditors. 3 The balloon will take off at the weekend, so that everybody can come and watch its first take-off. 4 The project was launched on Thursday, so that the programmers could still find out whether there were any glitches by then. 5 Let the baker alone, so that he can have some rest at last. 6 Everybody should learn to speak English well these days, so that they can make themselves understood in a foreign environment. 7 The customer returned the broken phone to the shop, so that it could be fixed. 8 Mike will give me a hand with the maths homework, so that we can go out in the evening. 9 The interpreter had to borrow her husband's car so that she got to the meeting on time. 10 The journalist will be waiting for the witness at the cafe, so that she can get an exclusive interview. 11 The defendant won't be released on bail, so that he cannot try and influence the witnesses. 12 The chimney sweeper has to climb all those tall buildings, so that he can clean their chimneys. 13 The acrobats always use a safety net, so that they don't hurt themselves or die even, if the performance goes wrong at some point. 14 Let's move the huge chair to the corner, so that there's more room in the middle. 15 How about taking a few days off, so that we can enjoy ourselves?

Exercise 249:

1 Please, find all integers **such that** $8x^2 - 2$ is prime. 2 Make sure to connect the sentences **such that**

they constitute a fine narrative. 3 Investigate the issues in more detail **such that** the COO is satisfied with our results. 4 Our staff's work should be **such that** what they do deserves praise and not further improvement or correction. 5 Take good care of the technical aspects of the project **such that** there are no complaints about the program. 6 The strongest belief will always win, but doubts can water down any belief **such that** it isn't very effective. (Anita Anderson) 7 West Ham United THE feel-good factor here is **such that** the club's managing director, Peter Storrie, has predicted a serious challenge. (Independent) 8 The heady lifestyles of the rich and famous are **such that** monogamy, after a while, is no longer an option. (Glasgow Herald) 9 Lately, Jane's childish and immature behaviour has been **such that** it required a face-to-face talk with the supervisor. 10 Each exercise should be carried out smoothly for the allotted time, **such that** some 15-20 repetitions are performed on each exercise. (Tony Lycholat)

Exercise 250:

1 changed Ms Huderton's medication **such that** she suffered a massive heart attack and died a week after seeing the doctor 2 **such that** they could not fall asleep 3 slipped on the wet floor and broke his leg **such that** he could not come to work for two whole months 4 to be a real number **such that** $8x^2 - 2$ is greater than 6 5 all the integers **such that** $20x^2 - 4$ is prime, please 6 is a sequence of numbers **such that** the difference of any two successive members of the sequence is a constant 7 was of a beauty **such that** we watched it all night long 8 to be a real number **such that** x^2 is negative 9 switched off the lights while his hand was wet **such that** he blew the fuse 10 gave bad advice to the client **such that** Mr Smith lost 100,000 dollars

Exercise 251:

1 The electrician put a defective light bulb in the lamp **such that** the electricity stopped working in the whole house. 2 Take x to be a real number **such that** x^2 is positive. 3 My friend gave me some strange medicine **such that** I spent the whole weekend vomiting. 4 Dalilah's voice is of sweetness and charm **such that** Pedr would like to listen to her all the time. 5 The two brothers were arguing violently **such that** the older suffered a heart attack. 6 The technicians received bigger monitors **such that** their work could be done faster and easier. 7 The financial advisor was stealing from the company **such that** she got fired last month. 8 Find all integers **such that** $15x^2 - 4$ is prime, please. 9 The doctor seems to have made a mistake during the operation **such that** the patient had to be operated again. 10 The priest said some really nasty things about one of his sheep **such that** he had to go and see the bishop about it.

Exercise 252:

1 Do you really believe the customers would have liked the tablet better **supposing (that)** it had better specs? 2 **Supposing (that)** you had managed to beat your opponent, what would you have done with the prize money? 3 The constructors wouldn't have come to the meeting **supposing (that)** you'd told them Mr Baker was coming as well. 4 **Supposing (that)** I had a million dollars, I might get myself a new house. 5 The mobile phone would be ok **supposing (that)** you hadn't dipped it into the pool last night. 6 **Supposing (that)** the mechanic had a closer look the brakes, do you think he could have seen the loose screw? 7 **Supposing (that)** you could live anywhere in the world, where would you like to spend the rest of your days? 8 I don't think the athlete could have wone the race **supposing (that)** he came in sixth only. 9 Some of our business partners might have signed the deal **supposing (that)** they had been offered better working conditions. 10 **Supposing (that)** your neighbours didn't have a dog, would you still be trying to find a new place to live? 11 What would he be doing right now **supposing (that)** the Chinese manufacturer hadn't given him this excellent job? 12 **Supposing (that)** we sold the cottage this year, could we afford to buy a small house in Venice? 13 The architect will keep to your project **supposing (that)** you pay him well. 14 **Supposing (that)** the detective had been wearing some sort of disguise, do you honestly believe the murderer would not have recognised him? 15 The ship might have sunk on its first voyage **supposing (that)** you hadn't done anything about the rear issues.

Exercise 253:

1 Supposing the harbour were further away, our properties would be worth much more than at present 2 might be earning a lot more money **supposing** he had studied harder while still at school 3 would have tortured the prisoner **supposing** he hadn't told them the whole truth 4 Supposing you were a

rich man, would you still care about your poor friends 5 would still be arguing with each other supposing the father hadn't interrupted them 6 Supposing the analyst hadn't read the report before, he wouldn't have 7 Supposing the basketball player wasn't aware of his potential, he wouldn't be putting so much effort into his 8 Supposing the paramedics had arrived five minutes later, would they still have been able to save 9 Supposing the survey had proven that the product has gone out of favour with the target group, would you have discontinued 10 Supposing the research team had unlimited resources at their disposal, would they be able to make the machine work

Exercise 254:

1 I wouldn't have missed the target provided the angle had been five more degrees to the left 2 would take part in the competition if it took place in Europe 3 On condition that the yacht hadn't sunk so fast, the sailors 4 Unless the director hadn't lied to us, we haven't got enough reason 5 Should the owner see no other way to keep the project going, some of the company's assets will have to be auctioned 6 Say the lights had gone out at midnight, the poker party would have come to a quick end 7 of the plant will go up if it opens a new section 8 might be a bit more difficult to operate provided it's the latest model 9 might be able to come to the party on Sunday if he's in town 10 be feeling so powerless now if the sensei had trained them better

Exercise 255:

1 Supposing the farmer had not lost half her crop, would she have been able to pay back her debts? 2 The electrician wouldn't have been electrocuted supposing he had told him the electricity was still on. 3 Supposing there are two correct answers in the quiz, what do you do then? 4 Supposing the karate master runs into a troublemaker at night, he'll give him the beating of his life. 5 Supposing your estate is worth more than two million dollars, you'd be a fool to sell it for 1.5 million. 6 Supposing a stranger asks you for some money in the street, will you give him some? 7 Supposing your son were the last man on the planet, I still wouldn't want him to keep me company. 8 The headmistress would sell her old car supposing she could afford to buy a new one. 9 Supposing you had lost all your money on the stock exchange, how would you have broken the news to your family? 10 Well, my niece wouldn't help him supposing he asked her for help. 11 Supposing our allies should turn against us, will we fight back or will we retreat? 12 Supposing he were a fireman in a small town, do you honestly believe he could earn your living just by putting out fire? 13 We can have a private match, of course, supposing there are no other players in the room at the time. 14 Supposing my mother had a better-paid full-time job, she wouldn't have to moonlight three times a week. 15 Supposing a wealthy country asked a poor country to lend their central bank a huge amount of money, so that its people could maintain their high standard of living, would the poor country agree and lend them the money?

Exercise 256:

1 **As** a man needs a woman's love, **so** a woman needs a man's love. 2 **As** the quality of goods drops, **so** the buyers' willingness to purchase such products decreases. 3 **As** the mayor has lost all his friends, **so** the president is about to lose his supporters. 4 **As** interest rates fall, **so** do the banks' profits. 5 **As** the pupils' attention faded, **so** did the teachers' resilience. 6 **As** the witnesses could not identify the arsonist, **so** the judge could not send the defendant to prison. 7 **As** the alien had to leave for his home planet, **so** the officers had to go their separate ways. 8 **As** you sow, **so** shall you reap. 9 **As** most of John's friends have moved to Italy, **so** his sister has just decided to relocate there. 10 **As** the surgeon failed to save the man's life, **so** the hospital failed to notify his family. 11 **As** the entrepreneur did not meet his end of the bargain, **so** the Chinese manufacturer did not deliver the goods. 12 **As** the workers do not get paid much, **so** they don't work very hard. 13 **As** the French like their wine, **so** the Germans like their beer. 14 **As** the British love soccer, **so** Americans love baseball. 15 **As** true patriots hate traitors, **so** traitors hate patriots for actually hating them.

Exercise 257:

1 **Just as** a man needs a woman's love, **so (too)** a woman needs a man's love. 2 **Just as** the quality of goods drops, **so (too)** the buyers' willingness to purchase such products decreases. 3 **Just as** the mayor has lost all his friends, **so (too)** the president is about to lose his supporters. 4 **Just as** interest rates fall, **so (too)** do the banks' profits. 5 **Just as** the pupils' attention faded, **so (too)** did the teachers' resilience.

6 **Just as** the witnesses could not identify the arsonist, **so (too)** the judge could not send the defendant to prison. 7 **Just as** the alien had to leave for his home planet, **so (too)** the officers had to go their separate ways. 8 **Just as** you sow, **so (too)** shall you reap. 9 **Just as** most of John's friends have moved to Italy, **so (too)** his sister has just decided to relocate there. 10 **Just as** the surgeon failed to save the man's life, **so (too)** the hospital failed to notify his family. 11 **Just as** the entrepreneur did not meet his end of the bargain, **so (too)** the Chinese manufacturer did not deliver the goods. 12 **Just as** the workers do not get paid much, **so (too)** they don't work very hard. 13 **Just as** the French like their wine, **so (too)** the Germans like their beer. 14 **Just as** the British love soccer, **so (too)** Americans love baseball. 15 **Just as** true patriots hate traitors, **so (too)** traitors hate patriots for actually hating them.

Exercise 258:

1 Just as Mike learnt to speak Spanish in less than a year, so too can he 2 Just as the CFO doesn't know anything about marketing, so too the marketing manager doesn't know anything 3 Just as the attorney general has not prepared the documents yet, so too the investigator has not finished 4 Just as the shop assistant doesn't earn a high salary, so too the shop owner does not 5 Just as you helped Freda, so too can you 6 Just as your eyes need rest to recuperate, so too your brain needs worthy stimuli that challenge your common sense 7 Just as you should charge your smartphone every day, so too should you clear its cache 8 Just as Dave's brother has to go to school on a daily basis, so too your parents have to go to work 9 Just as a pianist practises the piano all the time, so too a violinist needs to practise the violin 10 Just as the house burnt down, so too did your place, Charlie

Exercise 259:

1 Just as the Romans were famous for their exquisite culture, so too were the Greeks. 2 Just as some of the actors could not remember their lines, so too the main actress did not rehearse everything. 3 Just as my flat was sold without my consent, so too my garage got pulled down without me knowing anything about it. 4 Just as the tourists couldn't figure out the map, so too the guide could not figure out why the city slickers wanted to go on such a dangerous hike. 5 Just as the car skidded into a tree, so too the engine caught fire. 6 Just as Jane's mobile phone broke down on Monday, so too she was having some trouble with her tablet. 7 Just as the architect finished the plans, so too the construction workers got ready to lay the foundations. 8 Just as the vineyard cannot save the farm, so too the farmers cannot gather all the money to pay back their debts. 9 Just as the debt kept getting bigger and bigger, so too the creditors were growing more and more impatient. 10 Just as the former English teacher stopped caring about the people around him, so too he realised how meaningless his search for true love used to be.

Exercise 260:

1 The cuckoo clock does not work **as** reliably these days **as** it used to ten years ago. 2 The Spanish professor publishes **as** many papers nowadays **as** when he started doing the job. 3 My grandparents still come to visit us in town **as** often **as** they used to. 4 The meadow is not **as** sunny **as** it once was. 5 The local tattoo artist did not have **as** many customers when he started **as** he's got today. 6 The barn's not nearly **as** modern and fashionable **as** the painter wants it to be. 7 **As** much **as** I'd love to bust the crooked guy, there's not enough evidence to do so. 8 There were **as** few bystanders around **as** churchgoers at church on a Friday evening. 9 The fire is not **as** fierce **as** you wanted us to believe. 10 Not **as** much work gets done around here **as** some twenty years ago. 11 **As** hard **as** the students tried, they still could not pass the final exam. 12 **As** little **as** the GP knew about English, her daughter knew still less. 13 The Chinese minister doesn't have **as** reliable contacts **as** his Japanese colleague. 14 **As** much **as** he would like to have helped us, the young gentleman had his hands tied. 15 The French professor taught the students **as** much stuff **as** was possible within such short period of time as two months.

Exercise 261:

1 are not as dangerous during the day as during the night 2 As hard as the butcher tried to make his business a success, he failed 3 does not look as good today as it used to 4 are not as generous a folks as their predecessors 5 for the young teacher is not as patient as her older colleague 6 gives all the patients as black looks as ever 7 does not translate documents as precisely as she used to 8 does not seem as detailed as the first model we have had a look at 9 do not drive as slowly nowadays

as they used to 10 your wife cooks did not contain as much spice when I came to see you last as today

Exercise 262:

1 Although studying kanji may seem painstaking to you right now, you'll find there's no better feeling than actually 2 However silly the plan was, it worked out 3 were a total disappointment as they studied a lot less harder than they used to when I had them in their freshman classes 4 in Toronto are getting so cold as the ones in Montreal 5 Even though the girl looks sweet, she's as thick 6 tried to speak very loudly, but we still couldn't hear her 7 wouldn't eat from those plates though they were clean 8 The major spoke very slowly, yet the recruits still couldn't figure out 9 was being assembled extremely fast 10 work more carefully now than they did last month

Exercise 263:

1 The slope is not as slippery as it might have been had it snowed all night long. 2 As hard as the mate tried, he could not climb the mountain. 3 The cow is as good as any, neighbour. 4 The manager claims to know as many people as the president himself. 5 As long as you live under my roof, you're going to live by my rules, young lady. 6 As great as the disappointment was, the children will deal with it. 7 As much as we'd like to help you with the project, it's your responsibility, darling. 8 As charming as your smile is, it doesn't change a fact about my opinion about you. 9 The young skiing instructor spends as much time on the mountain as his father does in the office. 10 As icy as the water was, the kids wanted to go swimming right away. 11 As spacious and awesome as the penthouse is, the couple can't afford it. 12 As cunning as the negotiator may be, he won't be able to cheat Mr Dawson. 13 The pirates won't capture the Spanish ship as fast as they sail. 14 As hungry as the hermit was, he managed to resist his temptations. 15 Our son calls us as often as he can.

Exercise 264:

1 The bargains this year are not **so** great **as** they were last year. 2 The surfer hasn't been **so** quick this time **as** he was last week. 3 The local boat races are **so** boring **as** always. 4 The dressmaker does not make **so** much money these days **as** he used to some ten years ago. 5 The bounty hunter does not fight **so** violently or aggressively **as** she used to. 6 The carrots are not **so** tasty and juicy **as** they once was. 7 He is not **so** dumb and naïve an accountant **as** his predecessors. 8 The meadow doesn't seem **so** green **as** it was when I was a kid. 9 The soldier's pain was not **so** excruciating **as** that he couldn't withstand it. 10 The MASH choppers are not **so** safe and comfortable **as** the regular thing. 11 The guide's wife's not **so** smart and intelligent **as** her husband. 12 The detective doesn't seem to be **so** gullible and thick **as** his brother. 13 My journey to work takes **so** long **as** a trip to San Francisco. 14 The harbour looks **so** deserted today **as** a cinema on a Monday morning. 15 The bank robbers won't reveal your secret **so** long **as** they live.

Exercise 265:

1 are not so cold and chilly as they once were 2 are not nearly so hard to catch as a butterfly 3 is not so big-headed as your nephew 4 so valuable a fish in Japan as to be easily sold for \$ 200 5 are not so comfortable and spacious as the new ones 6 doesn't cost so much as the sofa, does it 7 doesn't seem to be so bad as her Spanish, does it 8 did not cost so much as his new stereo 9 refused to fork out so much money for a concert ticket as he earns in a whole week 10 so comfortable sitting in that big chair as sitting on this bar stool

Exercise 266:

1 is not as good as to attract the attention of the masses 2 fewer people at the hospital opening than was originally expected 3 does not speak as highly of Chuck as he used to when he joined the company 4 children read worse and less accurately than we did when we were their age 5 not as many visitors to the gallery as there were when it first opened 6 do not strike me as being as rich in character descriptions as they were when he started writing 7 of your last novel was less captivating than in your previous stories 8 has become as indifferent to other people's feelings and needs as to be completely oblivious to their sorrows and dreams 9 new convertible is faster than the old SUV 10 is more fluent in Japanese than in Chinese

Exercise 267:

1 The landlord can't know so many people as he claims to. 2 The soap opera must have got so bad as to lose almost half its viewers in a single month. 3 The water pipes must have been so damaged as to burst without any real reason. 4 Young people are often so idealistic as to sound almost unrealistic. 5 I've never met so vengeful and bitter a man as our CEO. 6 I guess there can only be so many people as you invited, Sarah. 7 I'd say your new computer is so good as they get these days. 8 The thesis does not sound so perfect as the student said it turned out to be. 9 Children shouldn't have so many cookies as they like. 10 Housing construction is not nearly so slow these days as it used to be in the past. 11 He was not so sober as to be able to drive home alone. 12 She's never been so kind-hearted an employer as to give her staff a day or two of extra holiday. 13 The young manager is not so stubborn as not to realise and admit her own mistakes. 14 This was so overwhelming a victory as to be broadcast live on all channels. 15 It wasn't so spectacular an event as to be remembered by many.

Exercise 268:

1 The gardener has never seen **such** a high hedge **as** mine. 2 **Such** a useless thingy **as** this tiny hammer has not been invented yet. 3 The former headmaster is well-known for **such** erratic behaviour **as** she's just described. 4 This was the first time the captain had faced **such** an overwhelming enemy **as** the pirate king. 5 **Such** tormented people **as** Mr and Mrs Jordan have not asked for the psychologist's help yet. 6 **Such** a nasty cold **as** Taki has ought to be cured by a lot of hot fluids and a few days of good old rest. 7 I can't figure out how **such** guillible people **as** your nephews could ever make so much money. 8 **Such** changes **as** the coach made last week are quite common before an important match. 9 The bus drivers have never seen **such** a long congestion **as** the one they're stuck in right now before. 10 Kate's parents are **such** lovely people **as** to fulfil their daughter's every wish. 11 **Such** bad experience **as** we made on our last trip to Korea are best forgotten at once. 12 The HR staff has never spoken to **such** a stupid person **as** the last applicant before. 13 Your father will give you **such** a good beating **as** you deserve. 14 **Such** cool weather **as** this is quite untypical of this season, actually. 15 You should never have submitted **such** an erroneous report **as** this to your supervisor, Carol.

Exercise 269:

1 can't help us with such little knowledge as he has 2 don't earn such a huge amount of money as the COO (does) 3 Such a lot of dubious business as the company does is hardly 4 Such a sonorous voice as the opera singer has might mean that she's one of the best singers 5 Such attentive students as Ms Rodrigues teaches might be considered 6 the zoologist has ever seen such a small insect as this 7 Such slow performance as the staff have been experiencing lately cannot be caused by a minor glitch in the system 8 Such heavy suitcases as Mr Taylor's are best carried 9 Such a heavy smoker as your brother may well suffer from loads of smoking-related diseases later on in life 10 Such horrible working conditions as these are hardly worth of somebody who's spent their whole life delivering high quality classes at university

Exercise 270:

All sentences are correct.

Exercise 271:

1 You'll never find such a sacred place as this temple. 2 The daredevil has never faced such a great challenge as the jump off a two hundred-storey building. 3 Such prestigious prizes as these are hardly awarded to fresh newcomers. 4 Such a kind person as our accountant should be the idol for our teens. 5 Such an awesome party as you threw last week is not nearly as common as you might think. 6 The toy is such a piece of work that it'll come apart as soon as you touch it. 7 Such a daunting task as sacking six hundred staff before Christmas is not mastered easily. 8 To break such a well-trained agent as Mr X takes a lot of hard work. 9 I haven't heard such swell news as yours in a long time. 10 It's impossible to get such white sheets as your wife's, you know. 11 Such corrupt government as ours deserves to be overthrown. 12 If such a nasty virus as *I love you* penetrates your computer's kernel, you might well lose all your data for good. 13 Such a dramatic change in behaviour as we've seen in your son recently should be looked into. 14 The gardener should be able to do something about such nasty weed as we have in our back garden. 15 Such a crappy copy machine as the one you've just bought is hardly worth

the money, Kate.

Exercise 272:

1 The matter at hand is **so** complicated (**that**) we may have a lot of difficulty figuring out how to solve it. 2 There were **so** many people at the club last night (**that**) the investigators may never find the killer. 3 The team have **so** little information about the new airborne virus (**that**) they cannot find its origin. 4 Just by looking through the report, I can see **so** many typos (**that**) I'd feel ashamed to have handed it to the manager. 5 The entrepreneur speaks **so** little French (**that**) she can't make herself understood in France at all. 6 The plane was **so** overloaded (**that**) it couldn't take off. 7 Cat has **so** much work (**that**) she can't join us for the movie tonight. 8 The patients seems **so** sick (**that**) they should be quarantined for sure. 9 The gold watch is **so** hot (**that**) it's almost smoking. 10 The software solution is **so** effective (**that**) there's no reason to search for a different program. 11 The tree is **so** high (**that**) you'd be almost 40 metres above the ground if you climbed to the top. 12 The young police officers are **so** well trained (**that**) they can deal with anything. 13 The old man's pain is **so** deep and excruciating (**that**) he can't have an hour's shut-eye without waking up bathed in sweat. 14 The crimes the general has committed are **so** grave and monstrous (**that**) he wouldn't be allowed out on bail at all. 15 Delilah is **so** incredible (**that**) Pete can't take his eyes off her.

Exercise 273:

1 so cold today (that) you could freeze your butt off if you stayed out for too long 2 is so poor (that) he should be sacked soon 3 has so much work (that) he definitely needs somebody to help him 4 is so toxic (that) if you breathe it in, you'll die instantly 5 is so old (that) you can't base your decisions on it anymore 6 can cook so well (that) he might come first if he entered the competition 7 is so wet (that) you can't wear it today, Carol 8 speaks so little Spanish (that) he wouldn't be able to order a coke if he had to do so in Spanish 9 has turned so dark (that) I almost thought a blizzard was approaching 10 was so awesome (that) the children want to go again tomorrow 11 is so big-headed (that) he won't let anyone give him any advice whatsoever

Exercise 274:

All sentences are correct.

Exercise 275:

1 There's so much data the program needs to process (that) the computer will be running slow for sure. 2 The researchers don't have so many resources at their disposal (that) could waste them on anything they like. 3 The painter doesn't paint so well (that) he could become famous one day. 4 The analyst says he's got so many great ideas (that) he could spend the whole day writing them down. 5 The lab has lost so many great staff (that) it'll be difficult for the teamlead to keep up the good work. 6 The survey was so messy (that) its results are not credible at all. 7 The cable's so long (that) it'll take at least two hours to find out where the problem is. 8 The applicant has so much talent (that) you could throw him into cold water and he'd start swimming like a fish. 9 The masseur has been waiting for this opportunity for so long (that) he'll do anything so as not to miss the event. 10 This is so complicated a matter (that) we need more time to figure out the details, Larry. 11 You're so stubborn (that) it almost pains me to think that you're my own flesh and blood. 12 The yacht was so old (that) it could only be used to sail around the coast. 13 The contestant's made so many mistakes already (that) he can't win the first prize anymore. 14 Martin's daughter is so lucky (that) she herself can't believe what has happened to her. 15 There's so many profiteers around today (that) you've got to be careful wherever you go, hon.

Exercise 276:

1 Helen's students have **such** insolent behaviour (**that**) I'd expel them from school right away. 2 This will be **such** a terrible hurricane (**that**) most people have bought supplies to last them for more than a week. 3 Your sister's **such** a busybody (**that**) you can't say anything in front of her or she'll tell everybody. 4 I'm afraid my students used to be **such** arrogant, ill-mannered and thick guys (**that**) I felt sick when around them. 5 The Dutch professor has **such** high standards (**that**) hardly anyone can measure up to them at all. 6 They are **such** famous songs (**that**) anybody knows the lyrics. 7 The whole project

documentation is **such** a mess (**that**) is able to figure out when the final phase was supposed to start. 8 Jim used to be **such** a sickly child (**that**) barely anyone believed he'd live long enough to celebrate his 18th birthday. 9 The tablet you bought at the market two months ago is **such** a piece of garbage (**that**) you can't get any work done on it at all. 10 Mr Rotery is **such** an angry man (**that**) he'd shout at you for no apparent reason at all. 11 Some of the people over there are **such** great artists (**that**) they might be as famous as Picasso one day. 12 It's **such** a long way (**that**) the pupils have to walk home from school that the teacher gives them a lift from time to time. 13 There are **such** tall trees in front of our house (**that**) you won't be able to see the mountains because of them. 14 Schools has become **such** an odious place recently (**that**) students don't want to go there anymore. 15 Mr Kensington's painting style is characteristic of **such** dark motives (**that**) you might even feel depressed at times.

Exercise 277:

1 is such a careless accountant (that) you can always find mistakes in her work 2 makes such a huge amount of money (that) he could pitch in and help us out with the project 3 is such a knowledgeable teacher (that) she could easily get a job at a private school or university 4 have such a good way with words (that) you might be mistaken for a professional speaker 5 is such a good pilot he was awarded a special prize last year 6 is such a wreck it won't be allowed to sail anymore 7 is such a provoking person (that) she always gets into a heap of trouble 8 is such a bad provost (that) he ought to be sacked soon 9 are such slow workers (that) they won't be able to get the job done by Friday 10 have such strange behaviour (that) you might want to keep an eye on them

Exercise 278:

All sentences are correct.

Exercise 279:

1 The storm is sure to have such devastating effects on our neighbourhood that we'll have to deal with the crisis on the national level. 2 The director has been running the hospital with the help of such crazy staff I'm surprised we don't get flooded with complaints every day. 3 The mayor's popularity is fading at such a rate that he might not stand a chance in the forthcoming election. 4 The business has taken off to such an extent that the company is likely to expand into new markets really soon. 5 This is such an unreliable car that you shouldn't drive it much or it'll break down really soon. 6 The plumbers have dealt with such horrific problems that you would not believe their stories. 7 The printers are selling at such high prices that it's not worth buying one at the time being. 8 My cousin is such a workaholic she always stays late at work, even on Fridays. 9 The students will never be able to speak Polish at such a high level that would make them actually master the fine areas of the language. 10 The pipes have corroded to such an extent the plumbers will have to change the whole system. 11 Sue's become such a forgetful person that she won't remember anything unless she's written it down. 12 Sam's party proved such a blast that all the guests left before midnight. 13 The new categories are such a chaos the staff won't be able to figure out who's who now. 14 This is such an efficient department all of the staff ought to get a pay rise soon. 15 The office is to be moved to such new premises that most staff will take an hour to get to work.

Exercise 280:

1 The company seems to be making **less** profit **than** two years ago. 2 Would you have thought any **less** of me **than** if I hadn't actually broken into the store? 3 The scout has shown he's got **less** stamina **than** anyone of us. 4 The boys sold **less** orange juice **than** the girls. 5 There will be **less** fighting in our area now **than** ever before. 6 The financial advisor seems to have **less** brains **than** a monkey. 7 You've got **less** time left **than** you might think, Sarah. 8 Mr Callan's associates shouldn't get **less** money **than** his brother-in-law. 9 There's **less** chewing gum in the cupboard now **than** half an hour ago. 10 No doubt there's **less** water in the oasis now **than** some five months ago. 11 Why is there much **less** wine in the bottle **than** there should be? 12 The bartender gave me **less** whiskey **than** last time. 13 The patient has **less** of a fever now **than** she did two days ago. 14 There was **less** free beer at the party **than** the guests had originally expected. 15 The staff are allowed **less** room for error these days **than** they were twenty years ago.

Exercise 281:

1 less light in the office now than during the summer 2 speaks less French than Spanish 3 work less hard than they used to some ten years ago 4 seems to be a bit less camera-shy than the young actress 5 contained less alcohol than his brother's 6 are less optimistic about the funding of their new project than their leader 7 is much less aggressive than the coach 8 is less luxurious than your villa 9 appeals to me less than the drawings 10 displays less action than the actor's fans are used to

Exercise 282:

1 is not as productive as marketing, Kate / is not so productive as marketing, Kate 2 son's Greek seems to have deteriorated (as compared to when I last met him) 3 don't get on as well as they used to / used to get on better when they were children than now 4 won't be so much candy for the little ones in the future as they were hoping for 5 hasn't got as much guts as the common soldiers he's commanding 6 haven't made nearly as much progress this year as they did last year 7 didn't prove nearly as productive as a women's talk at the hairdresser's 8 not as much commotion in the streets as in the mayor's office 9 was more milk in the barrel than in the jar 10 more smoke coming from the children's room than from the kitchen

Exercise 283:

1 No doubt there's less trouble in the US than in some African countries. 2 There seems to have been less unrest in the suburbs than in the city centre. 3 Obviously, this smartphone uses less energy than its predecessor. 4 The manager's got less time for our presentation than she thought. 5 The terrorist cell has become less active in the south than in the west. 6 The girl is less of a virgin than her boyfriend thought. 7 Individual figures are less important than overall performance. 8 Your brother is less of a pessimist than I once thought. 9 There was less oxygen in the room than the average for a room of that size. 10 Those teachers of yours speak less professionally than one might expect. 11 That trip to the mountains was less of a challenge than you made it sound. 12 The CFO is less of a financial expert than his successor. 13 There's less milk in the coffee than in the tea. 14 I guess there was less ice in the fridge than in the pool. 15 The shareholders have less money in their accounts now than they did three days ago.

Exercise 284:

1 It seems there's **more** trouble down at the harbour **than** we thought. 2 The customer support agents have been in **more** contact with our western branch **than** with the southern or eastern ones. 3 Mr Jones has **more** work now **than** he did two weeks ago. 4 The part-time workers have learnt **more** in the time **than** those full-time staff in half a year. 5 Are you sure this task is not **more** vital **than** to be handled by a mere assistant? 6 The chauffeur drives **more** carefully **than** his colleagues. 7 The sheep are **more** independent **than** the shepherd originally thought. 8 The slow performance plays **more** importance in our work **than** any other aspect of computer technology. 9 The old man's leg used to hurt **more** when it was going to rain **than** when the weather was fine. 10 The final chapter of the book proved **more** surprising **than** I thought. 11 The contest won't yield any **more** profit **than** it already has. 12 There's a lot **more** time to be spent on the project **than** you made us believe, Craig. 13 There are **more** benefits to this job **than** you might believe, Mr Anderson. 14 There were **more** guests at the party last weekend **than** we had invited. 15 The situation proved **more** ridiculous **than** any of us thought possible.

Exercise 285:

1 was credited more chips than he paid for 2 more people waiting outside in the street than in the corridor 3 earns more (money) than Clara herself 4 more staff coming to work in late afternoons than early in the morning 5 more mistakes in John's first essay than in his first one 6 had more assignments this time last year than now 7 more churchgoers at the casino opening than the priest had originally thought 8 there are more facilities in the capital than in the countryside 9 caught more fish than the manager 10 that there are more problems with the software than with the hardware we use

Exercise 286:

1 not as many sheep as cows grazing on the hills 2 fewer witnesses around during the attempted murder than last time 3 does not have so much talent as her brother 4 have found fewer disadvantages than advantages to the deal 5 seem to have less freedom at work than she does 6 Austria and Germany, there are other places Adrian wants to visit 7 didn't watch as / so many people at the party last night as at the hotel gathering 8 wasn't as / so lively and cheerful as last year's celebration 9 doesn't seem to be so smart as his younger brother 10 not nearly as / so many SUVs on our streets some thirty years ago as there are today

Exercise 287:

1 You've got more money flowing into your account every day than a successful politician in a month. 2 There were more fighters to take on the champ than one might have guessed. 3 Derek's wife used to work more hours when she was single than after she got married. 4 The evidence proves more people than just the Prime Minister have taken bribes over the past three months. 5 Are there more important things than clout and money? 6 The latest updates will fix more serious issues than just simple style problems. 7 The government say there will be more operators in our region after the election than now. 8 A war in Egypt could prove more dangerous than anything else to the president at this time. 9 There were some more pressing issues that ought to have been discussed than just climate change. 10 We had more results after a single week of research than you do after two whole months. 11 It is my belief that there are more bombs hidden in the area than the terrorist told us. 12 There's more to life than work, Lucas. 13 I speak more languages than just Spanish. 14 There are more obstacles to be overcome than the minor implementation issue. 15 Would you say your brother has more enemies than friends?

Exercise 288:

1 **No sooner** had the PA walked back in the office **than** the phone started ringing. 2 **No sooner** had the mechanic found a new job **than** the garage he was working for went bankrupt. 3 **No sooner** had John's sister fled the country **than** two FBI agents came looking for her. 4 **No sooner** had the door got stuck **than** the bank robbers were trying to get away. 5 **No sooner** had the traffic warden finished the ticket **than** the car owner ran to him pleading for mercy. 6 **No sooner** had the storm passed **than** the sun rose again. 7 **No sooner** had the security guard flushed the toilet **than** he heard the alarm. 8 **No sooner** had the racing driver hurt his leg **than** his mates got burned in a car accident on the track. 9 **No sooner** had the rock star sung his first great gig **than** he was offered more money for his work. 10 **No sooner** had I seen the stop sign **than** the ambulance suddenly braked in front of us. 11 **No sooner** had the shoe been stolen **than** I remembered my wife hid some money in it. 12 **No sooner** had the printer broken down **than** the manager needed to print his presentation for the CFO. 13 **No sooner** had the pickpocket been nabbed **than** his accomplice got killed in a shooting. 14 **No sooner** had the city slickers left the ranch **than** a twister came rolling on the whole place. 15 **No sooner** had Bradley's motorbike been stolen **than** he saved up enough to get himself a new one.

Exercise 289:

1 had Mr Mitchell fixed the leaks in the roof than he renovated the bathroom 2 had the gangsters hidden the money away than they dealt with the informant 3 had my dad bought the tickets than he got us some cool caps 4 had the private investigator got paid than he started investigating the crime 5 had the oil tycoon invested loads of money into a hardware manufacturer than he went bankrupt 6 had the prince lost his throne to a bastard than he got banished from the kingdom 7 had I managed to save my thesis than the whole system crashed 8 had the Turkish tourists caught the plane than it took off 9 had the tunnel been closed to all vehicles than there was an accident on the bridge 10 had the researchers completed the study than they published it

Exercise 290:

1 only after the agreement had been signed that one of the contracting parties learnt about the dubious practises of his new associates 2 fired the first shot before the guards reached for their guns 3 took up Japanese when he met a gorgeous Japanese girl 4 The moment (that) the gas exploded, the miners started running 5 After Jack lost a fortune on horse races, his wife 6 First, the boys started mowing the lawn, and then it 7 recognised her sister's murderer only to become his next victim 8

The plane took off only after the 9 was launched before the professor found a mistake in his calculation 10 Moments after the shop assistant closed the shop for the night a man ran towards her begging her to let him buy

Exercise 291:

1 No sooner had the smugglers sold their goods than their storage house was raided by FBI agents. 2 No sooner had the president stepped on the stage than a fatal shot was fired directly in his heart. 3 No sooner had the criminal been unmasked than the rich count died of a heart attack. 4 No sooner had the harvester broken down than the farmer's hands went on strike. 5 No sooner had the ship sunk than a small freighter came in sight. 6 No sooner had the CEO returned from his business trip to Berlin than the tax authorities froze all his assets. 7 No sooner had the technician fixed the broken pipe than he discovered a problem with the brake. 8 No sooner had the aircraft landed than the pilot suffered a heart attack. 9 No sooner had the smartphone crashed than the supervisor had to make an urgent call. 10 No sooner had the staff sent the email than the power in the whole building went out. 11 No sooner had he found out the truth than it was too late to do anything about the situation. 12 No sooner had the priest drunk some wine than he prayed to God. 13 No sooner had the school closed down for the holidays than the reconstruction work could begin. 14 No sooner had the banker been accused of fraud than he was taken into custody. 15 No sooner had the invoice been delivered than the manager announced there was no money to pay it.

Exercise 292:

1 **Barely** had the window been closed **when** one of our colleagues said he needed some fresh air and opened it again. 2 **Barely** had my cousin bought a lovely little cottage in the mountains **when** his son told him about some financial difficulties he was having. 3 **Barely** had I spoken to the manager **when** I learnt that he gave in his notice. 4 **Barely** had the train stopped **when** the jumper gave the loco a signal to continue the journey. 5 **Barely** had the premises been rented **when** the landlord increased the rent by five per cent. 6 **Barely** had the wall been painted blue **when** some of the staff protested against the choice of the colour. 7 **Barely** had Martin's phone started ringing **when** he realised that his battery was draining much faster than was usually the case. 8 **Barely** had the snail died **when** a frog came hopping dying in the very same spot as the snail. 9 **Barely** had the call center agent finished one call **when** the phone started ringing again. 10 **Barely** had the headmaster admitted a new student **when** he received a formal complaint from one of the other parents criticising his decision. 11 **Barely** had the water been contaminated **when** some tourists drank from it and died as a result. 12 **Barely** had the smog covered the city **when** the mayor put special measures in place. 13 **Barely** had the power gone out **when** some of my neighbours started panicking. 14 **Barely** had it stopped snowing **when** the kids ran out to build their first snowman this winter. 15 **Barely** had the water in the well frozen **when** the farmer had to find a different way to water her plants.

Exercise 293:

1 Barely had the president got out of the car when he was shot by a sharpshooter / The president had barely got out of the car when he was shot by a sharpshooter 2 had barely boarded the plane when he was arrested 3 Barely had the car stopped when two armed robbers got out / The car had barely stopped when two armed robbers got out 4 had barely gone off when the clerks ran out of the building frantically 5 Barely had the mouse stopped working when the staff asked / The mouse had barely stopped working when the staff asked 6 Barely had the first round of interviews been over when the HR head got in touch / The first round of interviews had barely been over when the HR head got in touch 7 Barely had the company launched the production of a new line of tablet computers when it had to close down several of its outlets / The company had barely launched the production of a new line of tablet computers when it had to close down several of its outlets 8 had barely been bought by a chemical company when it was converted into a storage facility 9 Barely had the management sold their mobile division to the software giant when they sacked / The management had barely sold their mobile division to the software giant when they sacked 10 Barely had the plane taken off when a number of armed terrorists seized control / The plane had barely taken off when a number of armed terrorists seized control

Exercise 294:

1 The moment (that) the department had run out of office supplies, the manager announced a number of important foreign associates 2 up and down the instant the telly had been on 3 ordered the soldiers to charge the enemy again shortly after the soldiers (had) recovered from the stress and strain of their last battle 4 The second (that) the mechanic had fixed the brakes, the owner came asking 5 Directly the blizzard had passed, the eager tourists wanted to 6 found out about his business partner's fraudulent activities as soon as the deal had been broken 7 When the exercise was over, some of the recruits had to be admitted to the infirmary with 8 until the conference had started that several members discovered their documentation was missing 9 Just as the doors had closed, the bus 10 ordered some more supplies the instant (that) the goods had been delivered

Exercise 295:

1 The troops had barely retreated when the enemy besieged the castle. 2 Barely had the up-and-coming cannonball perfected his act when he injured his spine and his career was over for good. 3 Barely had the tower been built when the general came to inspect it. 4 Barely had the witness testified against the drug dealer when he was found dead in a lone alley. 5 The car had barely been fixed when it started to show the first sign of trouble. 6 Barely had the frogs been moved far away from people's houses when a rare species of snails showed up in the very same location. 7 Barely had the templates been revised when the teamlead decided to make some additional changes. 8 The vintage cars had barely been put on display when a visitor to the show broke one of the windscreens. 9 Barely had the pickpockets been nabbed when the DA had to let them walk free again. 10 The casino had barely opened when it faced its first big challenge. 11 The concert had barely started when one of the fans fainted. 12 Barely had the moor dried out when a local company started to dump its toxic waste there. 13 The main road had barely been finished when the first accident happened. 14 Barely had the scaffolding been put around the old church when a churchgoer started asking what the men were doing there. 15 Barely had the gambler won a huge stake when the slot machine broke down.

Exercise 296:

1 **The** harder you practise, **the** better you get. 2 **The** greater the magician's powers become, **the** more spectacular his performances get. 3 Jason says **the** more troublesome the software becomes, **the** faster it will be replaced. 4 **The** cleaner the classrooms get, **the** more students will be eager to study with us. 5 **The** slower my daughter drives, **the** safer I'd feel. 6 **The** more money the debtor owes the bank, **the** sooner he might lose his business. 7 **The** sharper the watchers' eyes get, **the** more chances we've got to get to the witness. 8 **The** prettier Sarah's mother becomes, **the** more men she'll attract. 9 **The** looser the beggar's trousers are, **the** colder he feels. 10 **The** sweeter the pudding you make is, **the** better it'll sell. 11 **The** smarter the company technicians get, **the** more work will they do. 12 **The** greater the risk, **the** greater the prize. 13 **The** more the choir practises, **the** better it'll get at singing. 14 **The** hotter the weather around here gets, **the** more people will hit the beach. 15 **The** younger they are, **the** easier they are to teach new things.

Exercise 297:

1 The more you eat, the fatter 2 The more hours the manager works, the higher 3 The more research the paediatrician does, the more children might she 4 The higher they fly, the lower 5 The harder they study, the better exam results the students 6 The more you emphasise the important ideas, the more passionately will the audience respond 7 The more often you have your car checked, the more reliable 8 The more the chair speaks, the less the MPs are listening (to him) / ... will be listening (to him) 9 The faster you drive, the higher the chances (that) we'll have 10 The more time you spend with Hilda, the better

Exercise 298:

1 The longer you wait out in the cold, the higher the chances you get sick 2 The further he drove away from home, the more homesick he got 3 The more time he's been spending at work, the less contact he's had with his family 4 The more you trained, the faster you got really good 5 The stronger he became, the less he cared about the others 6 The weaker the child grows, the worse the chances for his survival are 7 The faster the interpreter spoke, the more attentive the audience

needed to be 8 The more I think about the case, the more I'm convinced (that) the suspect is the killer 9 The more often you practise the flute, the faster you('ll) improve 10 The more difficult the work, the worse the pay

Exercise 299:

1 The more colourful the book turns out to be in the end, the better it will sell. 2 The softer the sofa, the more cosy it'll be to sit on. 3 The rosier the naïve girl imagines her future to be, the more painful it might be for her to come to terms with the boring reality. 4 The faster the athlete runs, the higher her chances of winning the race. 5 The more careful you are while doing the research, the fewer mistakes you're likely to make. 6 The less your brother smokes, the better for his health. 7 The colder it got, the warmer the villagers had to wrap up. 8 The more versatile a writer is, the more popular he might get with his readership. 9 The louder my neighbours got, the more difficult it became for me to live next-door to them. 10 The sweeter Lilly's voice became, the harder it was for me to resist the gorgeous angel. 11 The harder you strive for perfection, the nearer you get to your goal. 12 The less the English teacher cared about the world, the more content he grew. 13 The more cosmopolitan cities and towns become, the more polluted they get. 14 The more time passed, the clearer it was that the informant wouldn't turn up after all. 15 The stiffer the baseballer's arm was getting, the more afraid he grew that he'd not be able to hit the ball.

Exercise 300:

1 **Whether** the postman delivers the letters today **or** tomorrow we'll get the post anyway. 2 **Whether** the printer works **or** not, the manager needs the presentation right now. 3 The PA will let you know **whether** we've made the deal **or** if you should get in touch with your US associate. 4 **Whether** the Chinese producer can deliver the goods now **or** in a week or two doesn't really matter. 5 **Whether** it works **or** not the project has to be finished by the end of the month. 6 The party will start on Monday **whether** you like it **or** not. 7 The police officer had to leave the force **whether** he wanted to **or** not. 8 **Whether** the power grid is strong enough to keep us online **or** not we need to have the computers up and running in no time. 9 **Whether** the sailors anchor in the harbour **or** remain at sea, they need to get the supplies asap. 10 **Whether** the mayor approves of our plan **or** disagrees with every single detail, we have to keep pushing, Dave. 11 The girls will be disappointed **whether** their father gets them dolls **or** a play station. 12 **Whether** the router works well **or** breaks down from time to time the bill for the Internet connection has to be paid. 13 **Whether** the level of blood pressure gets higher **or** stays low, he needs to take care of himself better. 14 The accountant gets worked up **whether** you do your job well **or** not. 15 Sarah's daughter has always managed to take care of herself **whether** she had a job **or** was pounding the pavement.

Exercise 301:

1 Whether you sell your options or keep them this will not affect your 2 decide whether they want to expel Mr Burns or not 3 Whether their clients sell or buy their shares, the brokers always 4 pay tax on the products whether you buy them in the Netherlands or China 5 Whether the delivery service gets the tools to us this week or next week we are going to start construction work 6 Whether we hurried or not we were still going to be late for the concert 7 Whether the defendant was guilty or innocent the judge wanted to put him 8 Whether you take the underground or the bus it will take you more than an hour 9 whether you like it or not 10 about the truth sooner or later whether you or I tell her.

Exercise 302:

1 Regardless of (the nature of) the circumstances, we will push on with the project 2 will have to sell her estate no matter if she likes it 3 Irrespective of the weather, the sportsmen will have to 4 Despite (the fact that there might be) an economic downturn, people 5 I don't care if there are some minor implementation issues or not the website has to be in perfect working order 6 may be a shortage of goods or not, but we cannot afford to pay the workers for simply standing around and doing nothing 7 going to close down regardless of what the president thinks of the idea 8 No matter if the plumbing gets fixed or not the block of flats is going to be pulled down 9 has to get passed asap irrespective of the Republicans' opinion about it 10 Regardless of whether the business

takes off or not, the bills will

Exercise 303:

1 Whether the parcel is wrapped or not it should be delivered any minute now. 2 Whether there is any money left or not we're going to have to pay for the rent, sweetheart. 3 I'm not really sure whether the cashier has locked up or not. 4 This is going to be a troublesome deal whether the price is right or not. 5 Whether the suspect comes clean or continues lying his boss will never see the inside of a prison. 6 A true friend would always help you whether you give him something in return or just say thanks. 7 The prison guard won't do anything to keep an eye on the witness whether you ask or pay him. 8 Whether I have seen or heard anything I'm certainly not going to testify in court. 9 Whether the story is true or a mere product of a little girl's imagination the police will have to investigate it. 10 Whether my bills are paid in advance or in arrears my creditors always get what I owe them. 11 The taxi driver will do his job whether he gets paid handsomely or just peanuts. 12 There's going to be a debate over whether the highway ought to be built this or next year. 13 Whether the manager likes us or not he's going to do business with us. 14 I suppose the terrorists have already fled the country whether the attack is a success or not. 15 Whether there's an explanation for John's erratic behaviour or not it certainly has had significant impact on the whole team.

Exercise 304:

1 **Even if** I knew where the alleged murderer is hiding, I wouldn't tell you, Sir. 2 **Even if** the weather turns bad again, the ship will have to set sail. 3 The dragon had to be defeated **even if** it meant that the brave knight would die in the process. 4 **Even if** the balloon crashes somewhere in the mountains, we will be able to track its exact location. 5 The computer screen always goes a bit dark after a few hours **even if** you don't make any changes to the settings. 6 The manager wants some of the tools exchanged **even if** they are still in perfect working order. 7 **Even if** there's no reason for worry, my mother always finds something to worry about. 8 The children will have to be inoculated against malaria **even if** they won't travel to South Africa. 9 I'll give you a call **even if** I arrive late at night. 10 **Even if** the investment turned sour, the rich investors would still be in possession of enough financial resources to cover their losses. 11 The biker wouldn't reveal his friends' secrets **even if** it meant trouble for him. 12 The children have to go to school **even if** it rains or snows. 13 The detective swears he's going to nab the criminal **even if** he has to look for him all over the world. 14 **Even if** the diamonds were still in the safe, somebody would have to be held accountable for the breach of security in the main building. 15 I will give her a hand **even if** she doesn't appreciate my work, George.

Exercise 305:

1 Even if the postman doesn't earn a lot of money, he's 2 Even if the chair usually works long hours, he wouldn't change his job for any other 3 will continue studying Chinese even if they may take years to learn it 4 will tell the investigator the truth even if he goes to prison eventually 5 is determined to prove his innocence even if he has to appeal to the highest court 6 will take place, even if the bride's father has to drag his daughter to the church 7 will go off in a few days even if you put it in the fridge 8 Even if Mr Mitchells doesn't want to sell his company, we will remain 9 Even if the plan doesn't work as well as we'd like it to, we have to 10 Even if the investment is not as lucrative as the last one, we'll still make

Exercise 306:

1 won't be fired although he may lose his clients' money on the stock exchange 2 will remain loyal to their commander even though he may be found guilty 3 may not be successful; however, the damage to the website will be done 4 will start as planned. Still, there are some minor inconsistencies in our intel 5 Disregarding the fact that the plane crash landed on a deserted island, the passengers 6 as the staff may work, they will not receive any bonuses this year 7 Although the lost necklace may not turn up, the owner will probably not 8 may be no news about your missing daughter, but the PA will still give you a call / may be no news about your missing daughter. Still, the PA will give you a call 9 may burn down, but the insurance company will pay for all the damage 10 may not perform the gig live despite the fact that he's not hoarse anymore

Exercise 307:

1 Even if our core system doesn't work properly, we still have to take good care of our customers. 2 I won't be able to give you a hand even if I'm in town then. 3 The bill won't get passed even if the chair believes it is a major piece of legislation. 4 There would still be car accidents even if people paid more attention to traffic. 5 The financial analyst will be sacked soon even if her results improve. 6 Even if the butcher doesn't pay me much for my work, I won't quit the job. 7 The book has to be finished by 9 June even if the author has to spend the whole week writing. 8 A tutor will always make his students study hard even if they are too lazy to do something on their own. 9 Even if you've forgotten how to do the job properly, others have not, Julia. 10 Even if the chances are slim, our team leader never gives up. 11 The troops will carry on fighting even if the enemy is far stronger than them. 12 Even if Diana's dreams don't come true right away, she's a bright and talented young girl who'll no doubt achieve the lot she wants sooner or later. 13 Even if the ship has sunk, its treasure could be saved. 14 The radiators will be exchanged on Friday even if you're not too happy about the date, Franklin. 15 Even if the dogs were left in kennels, they are well taken care of.

Exercise 308:

1 The supply chain tends to break down **every time (that)** the demand exceeds the supply. 2 **Every time (that)** the managing director is away on business, the staff leave work quite early. 3 The building construction seems to slow down **every time (that)** new material needs to be delivered. 4 Most chefs do their job perfectly **every time (that)** they are put under some pressure. 5 **Every time (that)** the hen lays eggs, the farmer comes and takes them away. 6 **Every time (that)** there's a problem with gas, the landlord calls his son-in-law who fixes the issue in no time. 7 Our train arrives late **every time (that)** the weather condition is not favourable. 8 The roads in our town are fixed **every time (that)** somebody famous decides to drop in for a visit. 9 Money-laundering schemes get uncovered by the police **every time (that)** they are investigated. 10 Teachers at my school get silly answers **every time (that)** they ask serious questions. 11 I swear a dog gets killed around here **every time (that)** a lorry passes by. 12 **Every time (that)** the astronomer looks at the stars, you can see that his dream has come true. 13 Dan has a glass of wine **every time (that)** he comes home from work. 14 My granddaughter used to work really hard **every time (that)** she was to take an important exam. 15 **Every time (that)** the phone rings, the PA picks it up and greets the person on the other side with a smile on her lips.

Exercise 309:

1 the drunkard out right away every time (that) he comes to the pub 2 Every time (that) the workers take a company holiday, the equipment 3 Every time (that) the buses are running late, the passengers 4 works on his small projects every time (that) he finds some spare time for himself 5 enjoy a free paid break every time (that) the phones are down 6 hand out cushions every time (that) a passenger wants to get some shuteye 7 scolds the cook severely every time (that) he burns the dinner 8 makes a great show every time (that) he's sober as a judge 9 Every time (that) it gets dark, those honest people living in our community fear to walk 10 practise their lines every time (that) they're not rehearsing the play as a group

Exercise 310:

1 When the delivery is made, somebody from our department has to 2 get cut the moment they get as high as two metres 3 As soon as the sun rises, the soldiers pick up their machine guns and 4 his baby sister fairy tales whenever she's too scared to go to bed alone 5 get pretty hot in a few minutes every time the window gets shut 6 Whenever the fleet goes to war, the flagship 7 The instant the siren goes, the villagers start running 8 puts two spoonfuls of sugar into the tea when she makes her husband a good-night tea 9 the consequences of your actions first whenever you pull the trigger 10 Whenever you want to cross the street, make sure there are no cars coming

Exercise 311:

1 Every time the cleaning lady cleans those huge panes, he takes a short break. 2 Every time the computer overheats, it shuts down automatically. 3 The judge contemplates about all the evidence presented in court every time he's supposed to decide whether the defendant is guilty or innocent. 4 Every time the tenants hear the planes take off, they shriek. 5 The sailors take a long holiday every

time they anchor in a harbour. 6 Most mountaineers carry huge backpacks every time they try to reach the peak of a high mountain. 7 Every time the poor children get presents, they say thank you to the lovely man or woman who's given them to them. 8 Every time the cable car stops, there's one or two people who get some sort of panic attack. 9 The tailor has to work long hours every time there's a fancy dress party in town. 10 Every time Jim's daughters go to the countryside, they come back home late. 11 Every time the child turns in, it washes its teeth beforehand. 12 Every time a NOC dies while performing his duty, a single star is put down in a book to remember him by. 13 The phone never stops ringing every time there's a special offer on. 14 The spire is looking more and more dangerous every time I pass by. 15 Every time the professor reads poems to her students, they listen attentively and take notes.

Exercise 312:

1 **If only** the referee had been paying more attention to the game. 2 **If only** my daughter would tell me about her plans. 3 **If only** the beer were here already. 4 **If only** the power cord hadn't broken down last night. 5 **If only** the water dispenser were still working. 6 **If only** you would listen to your parents. 7 **If only** the CEO hadn't forgotten the safe combination. 8 **If only** the businesspeople would finally close the deal. 9 **If only** the construction work progressed at a faster pace. 10 **If only** the rats would go away eventually. 11 **If only** the basement hadn't been flooded. 12 **If only** the teacher's students were at least a bit smarter. 13 **If only** the tower were taller. 14 **If only** the hitman had been paid more money. 15 **If only** our enemies weren't as strong.

Exercise 313:

1 If only the chief had told me about his plans 2 If only the prisoners were moving 3 If only the marriage counsellor would talk more openly 4 If only the new mobile phone had a 5 If only the chopper hadn't been blown 6 If only I had studied Spanish harder when I was still 7 If only your son won / would win the competition on Saturday 8 If only the CFO will listen to the analyst 9 If only my pitiful existence would finally come to 10 If only your supervisor will give you the pay rise

Exercise 314:

1 I wish the jeweller hadn't trusted his assistant 2 my brother weren't as gullible 3 I wish the temp worker hadn't deleted 4 I hope the astronauts would solve the issues as soon as they 5 the general will be willing to listen to your plan, Michael 6 I regret my grandfather selling / I regret (that) my grandfather had sold 7 I wish the door was locked 8 I hope you tell me sooner about your plans 9 I wish the surfer hadn't broken his leg 10 I regret the new staff picked up some more practical skills

Exercise 315:

1 If only the young motivated staff will be able to change all those complicated processes in our firm. 2 If only the general director gave us all a big Christmas bonus this year. 3 If only the professor didn't have to leave so early tonight. 4 If only the president's daughter had become my wife. 5 If only the cheetah had run slower. 6 If only the crippled yobs had been paying more attention while crossing the street all those years ago. 7 If only the construction workers had done a better job erecting the walls. 8 If only the priest could finish the sermon a bit earlier than he usually does. 9 If only the rocket hadn't broken into a zillion tiny pieces on entry into Earth's atmosphere. 10 If only the factory would make a lot more money next year. 11 If only the walls were painted green and not yellow. 12 If only the storm had already passed. 13 If only the wedding was being held in a nicer church. 14 If only the conspirators hadn't leaked the news to the press last month. 15 If only I wasn't wearing these scruffy clothes now.

Exercise 316:

1 **The minute** that door opens, I want you to start clapping your hands, children. 2 **The minute (that)** the sacrifice is made, the gods will spare our beloved daughter. 3 The lawn is to be mowed **the minute (that)** the sun goes up. 4 The bikers will set off on their trip **the minute (that)** they've had breakfast. 5 The cat will catch the cunning mouse **the minute (that)** it gets hungry. 6 **The minute (that)** the police arrived, the bank robbers grabbed their guns and started shooting at them. 7 **The minute (that)** you've told the kidnappers where the money is hidden, the hostages will be killed. 8 The pancakes will be on the table **the minute (that)** Father comes through that door. 9 **The minute (that)** the MEPs saw their

Spanish colleague walk in the room, they went silent and started staring at him. 10 The geese shall be slaughtered **the minute (that)** they are fat enough to be sold at a high price. 11 **The minute (that)** the DJ has turned down the music, the clubgoers stopped dancing altogether. 12 The raging commander shot the sergeant **the minute (that)** he stepped in to his office. 13 The drunkards gave the young man the beating of his life **the minute (that)** they left the pub. 14 The CEO will be with you **the minute (that)** she's finished her call. 15 **The minute (that)** the plane touched down, two armed police officers came on board and arrested the Palestinian rebel.

Exercise 317:

1 entered the shop the minute the shop assistant was going to lock the front door 2 were frozen the minute the FTA learned about some suspicious transactions made with a number of African firms 3 rushed to the scene as soon as they heard about the fire 4 The minute the passengers went through the check-in, they boarded 5 The minute (s)he visited Spain and Italy, the English singer decided to visit 6 asked for a signature to confirm the delivery the minute the desks had been delivered 7 shall be rebooted the minute the head technician has backed up the files 8 will give us a call the minute she arrives in Scotland 9 was announced on TV the minute the deal had been signed 10 to send us an email the minute you receive the payment confirmation

Exercise 318:

1 fled the club in a hurry the instant he felt there was something wrong 2 will brief us on the topic in more detail as soon as he's returned from Bosnia 3 The moment a hired gun loses control over themselves, you ought to 4 resigned from office the second he was accused of having embezzled a large number of national funds 5 Just as the mother heard about her son's untimely death, she collapsed and never regained 6 had to perform an emergency operation the instant he arrived at the hospital 7 Shortly after the manager looked into her colleague's eyes, she knew she would never be able to persuade him 8 The moment the police started searching the premises, they found 9 over all the farmer's assets just as he couldn't pay back his debts 10 will call a press conference as soon as he's got something important to tell the people

Exercise 319:

1 The minute the manager was not looking, the secretary sneaked out of the office and went shopping. 2 The neighbour's dog starts barking really loud the minute the postman comes. 3 The minute the cats jumped out of the window, their keeper rushed to see whether they were still alright. 4 The minute the government had increased the VAT, protesters from all over the country went to the streets. 5 The clerk will give you a call the minute we hear something new, James. 6 The minute the storm passed, the sun went up again. 7 The supervisor will have a word with the temp staff the minute she's in. 8 The minute the payment was completed, the player got the chips credited to her account. 9 The technician fixed my computer the minute he found out what was wrong with it. 10 The minute the birthday party was over, the guests started leaving. 11 The minute the raven had flown away, the bystanders crossed themselves. 12 The delivery will be made the minute the goods are in stock. 13 The minute the wealthy boy ran out of money, his friends left him and his girlfriend ran away with his best friend. 14 The gangsters broke into the house the minute they knew a police officer was their new neighbour. 15 The minute he saw danger, Lucas always fled to safety.

Exercise 320:

1 The syringe ought to be thrown away **the moment (that)** it has been used. 2 The astronauts stepped out of the capsule **the moment (that)** the control centre gave them the green light. 3 The novelist will publish the short story **the moment (that)** he's finally written the last chapter. 4 **The moment (that)** the tower found out about the technical issues, it was already too late to abort the landing. 5 The wine was sold **the moment (that)** the producer opened his stand. 6 **The moment (that)** the lantern was lit, the guests started clapping their hands. 7 **The moment (that)** the new regulation was published, every member of our team had to read it carefully. 8 The jumper started to check the passengers' tickets **the moment (that)** the train had left the station. 9 **The moment (that)** the janitor's friends arrived at the party, the other guests started to leave suddenly. 10 The bonuses will be paid out **the moment (that)** the CEO has signed the cheques. 11 **The moment (that)** the new hardware arrives, I want you to take

everything to our command centre and unpack the lot. 12 **The moment (that)** the singer left the stage, his fans started shouting out loud for him to come back. 13 The new headset will be fixed **the moment (that)** our technician returns from Sidney. 14 The driver made a pitstop **the moment (that)** he realised he was running low on gas. 15 Trevor's nephew might want to sell his old mobile phone **the moment (that)** a better one is around.

Exercise 321:

1 I will begin the moment the priest has greeted the special guests 2 was praised the moment he'd slain the beast 3 might move houses the moment they've found a better place to live 4 will file another order the moment the supplies get depleted 5 surrounded the building the moment the agency closed down 6 signed the agreement the moment he talked to his financial advisor 7 specifically pointed out the colours used the moment he started presenting his latest work 8 dialled 911 the moment he saw the car accident 9 started the moment the band had introduced their new vocalist 10 called their loved ones to say goodbye the moment the shooting began

Exercise 322:

1 closed down as soon as a chain opened its store next door 2 outside started chattering the instant the sun went up 3 will explode immediately after the comet hits its surface 4 were discovered the second the chemical reaction occurred 5 brought his students back to the hotel the minute he spotted the avalanche 6 gave me a call shortly after she found the book I needed 7 will be renovated when the mayor has found enough funds to cover the costs of the repairs 8 lost all his friends after he quit his job 9 blew shut just as the young officer was bringing in those heavy baskets 10 started playing the wrong tune as soon as the wedding started

Exercise 323:

1 The moment the landlord started collecting the rent, the tenants started to evade him. 2 The moment the car broke down in the middle of the highway, the driver called for help. 3 Jane's puppy got sick the moment it smelt the dinner. 4 The moment the tourist returned home from holiday, she told her friends all about the wonderful experiences she made in Sweden. 5 The caretaker had a look at the plumbing the moment he fixed the lock. 6 The vet performed the operation the moment the sick cat was brought in. 7 The moment the door gets opened, you will be able to get inside again. 8 The power grid might get overloaded the moment everybody switches on their air conditioning. 9 The moment he saw the blood on the table, the father knew there was something terribly wrong. 10 The committee will have more questions the moment the members have studied the contract and the supplements. 11 The moment the entrepreneur has paid his taxes, his accounts will be defrozen. 12 The moment the race is over, the drivers will go their separate ways. 13 The department head will inform the staff the moment he's learned any news. 14 Some warm blankets were handed out the moment the scouts arrived at the camp. 15 The moment the dentist has repaired my false teeth, I will be able to eat all kinds of food again.

Exercise 324:

1 The mountain rescue service staff made their way to the mountain top **the instant (that)** they learnt about the young boy's disappearance. 2 The chopper went down **the instant (that)** the shelling began. 3 The beauty contest ended **the instant (that)** one of the jury took out a gun and started shooting into the crowd. 4 **The instant (that)** the police had arrived at the crime scene, they started looking for the murder weapon. 5 Jo will take over for Mr Simmons **the instant (that)** she's come back from Greece. 6 The lift got stuck **the instant (that)** it reached the tenth floor. 7 One of the masked robbers was recognised by his family **the instant (that)** the CTV images were broadcast on the night news. 8 **The instant (that)** the video was uploaded to YouTube, it was viewed by about six hundred people. 9 **The instant (that)** the witness had spoken to the investigators, she was shot dead in front of the precinct. 10 The supermarket got held up **the instant (that)** it opened on Thursday morning. 11 The MPs want to reduce government spending by 2.1 per cent **the instant (that)** the economy starts to recuperate. 12 The school went to a lockdown **the instant (that)** the shooting began. 13 **The instant (that)** the show got on the road, people started to cheer for the artists. 14 Mother will talk to you **the instant (that)** she comes home from work. 15 **The instant (that)** the news about the CEO's terminal cancer became

public knowledge, everybody started to pity the poor guy.

Exercise 325:

1 I started flooding the store the instant it opened for business 2 got sold out in less than an hour the instant it came out 3 you everything I learnt the instant we meet again, Sarah 4 The instant the burning bus crashed into a tree, it came to a sudden halt and the passengers started jumping out of the windows and ran away 5 could not carry on with his work the instant the harvesters were damaged in a fire 6 The instant the car manufacturer started cooperating with Marx & Co Ltd, 7 can be sold at a high price the instant it pays most of its debts 8 to look down on her former friends the instant she got promoted 9 will lose its market value the instant it gets wet in the approaching storm 10 things would never be the same again between the two of us the instant I told my co-worker she was retarded

Exercise 326:

1 to sell the estate as soon as you've gained ownership of the lot 2 The second the gas worker lit his cigarette, the whole place burst into flames 3 may be renewed when the supplier needs more spare parts 4 The moment the landlord tells the chambermaids to clean the chandeliers, they 5 When you overdress, you're bound to get 6 The minute I saw that young girl over there will become a famous fashion model 7 As soon as the CFO has approved our budget the conference hall will be refurbished 8 After the parrot flew out of its cage, it made its way straight to the window and 9 was stolen from the police station immediately after the officers left it unguarded 10 Shortly after the judge pronounced the defendant guilty, she was

Exercise 327:

1 The instant the block of flats is pulled down, the tenants will be homeless. 2 The instant the little girl shut her eyes, she fell asleep. 3 The hunter shot the deer the instant he filed the first shot. 4 The instant the tanker sank, a huge oil spill formed near the coast. 5 The gangsters' hideaway was swarming with FBI agents the instant they forced the witness to tell them about the location. 6 The interrogator will talk to the prisoner the instant he's done with this one. 7 The instant the alien aircraft landed in front of our facility, security officers surrounded the UFO. 8 Your memory might be erased for good the instant you drink a very strong alcoholic drink. 9 The mouse stopped working the instant the PA was going to show us the latest concept of mass production in our new factory. 10 The instant the president decided to invade the neighbouring country, he signed his death warrant. 11 The instant the soup got cold, the cook put it into a microwave oven and heated it up a bit. 12 The whole area needs to be deforested the instant the road has been built. 13 The instant the lectures are over, the students will be asked to sit for a brief exam. 14 The painter's works might be sold at a high price the instant he dies. 15 The instant the background singers left the stage, the vocalist was left all alone out there.

Exercise 328:

1 The killer's objective changed **the second (that)** he learnt he wouldn't be paid for his work. 2 Jack's poems became famous **the second (that)** he published his first one online. 3 **The second (that)** I've turned my back on the class, the children started talking to each other. 4 The theatre shall be moved to a different location **the second (that)** suitable premises have been found. 5 The power cord needs to be swapped **the second (that)** we receive new supplies. 6 The pen ran out of ink **the second (that)** my supervisor wanted to jot something down. 7 You will receive the envelope **the second (that)** it arrives at the reception. 8 **The second (that)** the robbers broke into the facility, a loud alarm went off. 9 Kate would like to move to London **the second (that)** she's finished her university studies. 10 **The second (that)** the attorney general is done with the defendant, he'll be no more than a discredited former big shot. 11 The dolphin swam away to freedom **the second (that)** he broke loose. 12 The sun started to warm the earth **the second (that)** it went up again. 13 I suppose my luggage got lost **the second (that)** I handed it over to a guy at the airport. 14 **The second (that)** the mayor picked up the phone, a bomb in his car went off. 15 **The second (that)** the deal is off, our biggest competitor will be able to make the deal himself.

Exercise 329:

1 suffered a massive heart attack the second the pilots landed the aircraft 2 The second you see Mr Lawrence, tell him that I'll be waiting for him 3 to inform our technician the second you shut down the mainframe computer 4 will start coming into the church the second the priest unlocks the door 5 will improve dramatically the second the parade is over 6 will have a word with us the second the negotiation is over 7 ordered some more paper the second the staff ran out of it 8 The second the uprising was foiled, the main revolutionaries 9 will be assessed one more time the second the chair is back from the business trip 10 will start the second the CEO has given his end-of-the-year speech

Exercise 330:

1 fled to a nearby military facility when the outpost was bombarded 2 hid in their shelters as soon as the enemy shelling began 3 Shortly after the earthquake started, the ceiling 4 The moment the old geezer bent down to pick up the penny, his back gave a queer sound and he could not 5 locked up immediately after the last guests left 6 burst into the medieval town the instant the horn sounded 7 will be explored as soon as the archaeologists put enough money together to fund their trip 8 was discovered just as the tomb was opened 9 were in uproar the moment the governor increased the people's taxes 10 The minute the inspector went over the evidence, he knew a woman must have committed

Exercise 331:

1 The second the kindergarten was closed down due to health issues, the parents had nowhere to put their children during the day. 2 The second you make such a grave mistake again, you will get sacked for sure. 3 The well must have been contaminated the second some of the toxic water was poured into it by accident. 4 The generator broke down the second the surgeons were in the middle of a difficult operation. 5 The second the turnip was big enough to make a record, the farmer took some photos and sent them to a special committee. 6 The second the coffee was ready, the family sat down at the kitchen table and enjoyed their free time. 7 The sharpshooter started running away from the crime scene the second he fired the fatal shot. 8 The church will be renovated the second the priest finds somebody generous enough to pay the bill. 9 The general will be exonerated the second the colonel has testified on his behalf. 10 We will have more than enough free time the second we get fired. 11 The second the pipe burst, a huge amount of water started flooding the kitchen. 12 The second the tree was cut down, the construction work could begin. 13 The vet will inform the pet owners the second the operation is over. 14 The plane had to make an emergency landing the second one of its engines caught fire. 15 The second little Anna has finished her dinner, she's to go to bed at once.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

GREENBAUM, Sidney, QUIRK, Randolph. (1992) *A Student's Grammar of the English Language*. London : Longman.

SWAN, Michael. (1996) *Practical English Usage*. Oxford : Oxford University Press.

SWAN, Michael, WALTER, Catherine. (2011) *Oxford English Grammar Course (Advanced)*. Oxford : Oxford University Press.

CAMBRIDGE DICTIONARIES ONLINE. (2013) [online]. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press 2013. Available on the Internet: <>

MACMILLAN DICTIONARY. (2013) [online]. London : Macmillan Publishers Limited 2009-2013. Available on the Internet: <<http://www.macmillandictionary.com/>>

MERRIAM-WEBSTER ONLINE DICTIONARY. (2013) [online]. Springfield, USA : Merriam-Webster, Incorporated, 2013. Available on the Internet: <<http://www.merriamwebster.com/dictionary/communicate>>

BASIC BOOKS. (2013) [online]. *The Associated Press Stylebook and Briefing on Media Law 2013*. Basic Books, 2013. Available on the Internet: <<https://www.apstylebook.com/>>

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO. (2010) [online]. *The Chicago Manual of Style*. 16th edition. Chicago : The University of Chicago. Available on the Internet: <<http://www.chicagomanualofstyle.org/home.html>>